

Bit by Bit
الاسم عبد الرحمن تامر
المدرسة
الصف الثاني الإعدادي
المادة E
موقع
التفوق
Altfwok.com
QR CODES
listen to
Vocabulary
& Texts
NEW
Hello!
2023
الصف الثاني الإعدادي
الفصل الدراسي الثاني
SECOND TERM
التعليم العام والأزهري
2nd PREP
دار غزة
ghazzahouse@gmail.com

Bit by Bit

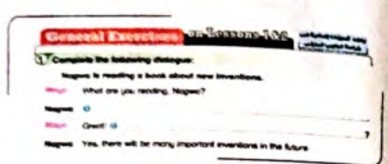
New Hello!

Prep. 2 Second Term

QR codes
Vocabulary & Texts



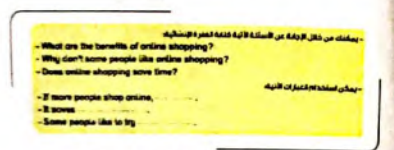
عرض مرادفات ومضادات الكلمات



تمرينات عامة على كل درسين في الوحدة



تقسيم التمرينات إلى جزئين لإعطاء الطالب فرصة الإجابة فى المنزل



اسئلة وعبارات مساعدة لحل سؤال الفقرات الانشائية ورسائل البريد الإلكتروني



تمرينات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف على كل وحدة



مراجعة عامة على كل وحدة



تجميع الفقرات الإنشائية ورسائل البريد الإلكتروني الواردة في كل وحدة



كراسة خاصة بتسميع المفردات وتمرينات واجب منزل إضافية مع امتحان كامل علي كل وحدتين

Contents



National Centre For Examinations & Educational Evaluation (NCEEE) Test Development Dep.

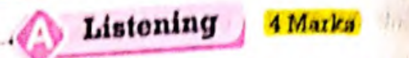
ELT Counsellor's ...

Specifications for Second Year Preparatory (2nd term) English Examination (2022 - 2023)

مواصفات امتحان اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الثاني الإعدادي

(الفصل الدراسي الثاني) للعام الدراسي ٢٠٢٢ / ٢٠٢٣

(Time: 2 Hours) (24 Marks)



A Listening — 4 Marks

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 Marks)

Students listen to a text from (30-35) words. Topics should be related to the Set Books. Students listen and answer **FOUR (4)** multiple choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each. **(One mark each)**

B Language Functions — 2.5 Marks

2 Complete the following dialogue:

A dialogue of **TEN (10)** exchanges with **FIVE (5)** deletions (3 responses & 2 stimuli) is provided. The students are asked to complete the deletions completely without providing them with any part of the answers. The situation should be provided and clear. The first sentence is given in full. **(Half a mark each)**

C Reading Comprehension — 4.5 Marks

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

An unseen text of about **ONE HUNDRED** and **TWENTY-FIVE (125)** words is provided. This can be a short story, a factual text, a timetable or a letter. Most lexical items and all structures in the text should be from the Set Books. The students are required to answer **THREE (3)** multiple-choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each. **(Half a mark each)** and **THREE (3)** open-ended questions **(One mark each)**

These questions should test the following reading comprehension skills:

- **Giving the main idea** (1 question)
- **Extracting information** (2 questions)
- **Understanding reference** (1 question)
- **Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context** (1 question)
- **Critical thinking skill** (1 question)

D Vocabulary & Structure — 7 Marks

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (5 Marks)

TEN (10) multiple-choice items (7 Vocabulary & 3 Structures) based on the Set Books are provided. Students are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given. **(Half a mark each)**

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: (2 Marks)

FOUR (4) structure sentences are provided. Students are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets. The given words(s) in brackets could be verbs, adjectives, adverbs... etc. related to what students have studied. **(Half a mark each)**

E Writing — 6 Marks

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on....: (6 Marks)

Students are asked to write a paragraph from **EIGHTY-FIVE (85)** to **NINETY-FIVE (95)** words on a specific topic related to the Set Books.

(One mark for organization-One mark for relevance of ideas- One mark for choice of vocabulary - One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation - One mark for grammar)

OR

Write an email of about NINETY (90) words on: (6 Marks)

Students are asked to write an email from **EIGHTY-FIVE (85)** to **NINETY-FIVE (95)** words on a specific topic related to the Set Books. Students must write who the email is to and from, as well as the subject of the email. Names and addresses are provided.

(One mark for organization - One mark for relevance of ideas - One mark for choice of vocabulary - One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation - One mark for grammar)



Objectives

Reading:

A magazine article about online shopping; *The Time Machine*, a poster about the dangers of technology

Writing:

A reply to an online message; a formal email about a problem with a delivery

Listening:

A discussion about new inventions; people's problems with technology and suggested solutions

Speaking:

Giving opinions about inventions and technology; a debate

Language:

if/when + *should* for advice

Life Skills:

Critical thinking: technological awareness

Lessons 1 & 2

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات في كراسة التسميع

Key Vocabulary

استمع الى المفردات

headphones	سماعات الرأس (جمع دائمًا)	speed	سرعة
motorbike	دراجة نارية (موتوسيكل)	electricity	الكهرباء
solar panels	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية	app (application)	تطبيق (على الهاتف أو الكمبيوتر)
helicopter	طائرة مروحية (هليكوبتر)		

Useful Phrases

have money	يملك مالًا	spend money	ينفق مالًا
have a choice	لديه اختيار	spend time	يقضي وقت
have time	لديه وقت	waste money	يهدر (يضيع) المال
save money	يدّخر المال	waste time	يهدر (يضيع) الوقت
save time	يوفر الوقت	wait for a delivery	ينتظر توصيل (طلب)

Verbs & Nouns

correct (ed)	يصحح - يصوب	correction	تصحيح - تصويب
invent (ed)	يخترع	invention	اختراع
predict (ed)	يتنبأ	prediction	تنبؤ
translate (d)	يترجم	translation	ترجمة

Vocabulary

half-motorbike	نصف خصائص دراجة نارية	for	مع ، مؤيد له
half-helicopter	نصف خصائص طائرة مروحية	against	ضد ، معارض له
choice	اختيار	maybe	ربما
French	اللغة الفرنسية	the latest	الأحدث
shopping online	التسوق عبر الانترنت	article	مقالة (في جريدة)
pollution	التلوث	either...or....	إما ... أو ...
resources	مصادر	benefits	فوائد
businesses	أعمال تجارية	both	كلاً من
wing	جناح	cooler	أكثر برودة
firstly	أولاً	free time	وقت فراغ
secondly	ثانيًا	hope (d)	يأمل
flying motorbike	دراجة نارية طائرة	push (ed)	يدفع (للأمام)
friendly	ودود	prefer (red)	يفضل
technology	التكنولوجيا		



Unit 7 Technology and the future

Words & Meanings

Word	Arabic	Meaning
helicopter	طائرة مروحية	a form of transport that flies using long, thin parts on top of it that turn round and round very quickly
translate (d)	يترجم	change words into a different language
motorbike	دراجة نارية	a form of transport[1] with two wheels[2] and an engine[3]
app	تطبيق	a small computer program that you can use on a mobile phone or other electronic device[4]
speed	سرعة	how fast something moves
headphones	سماعات الرأس	a piece of equipment that you wear over your ears so that you can listen to music without anyone else hearing it

Arabic Meanings
1- مواصلات
2- عجلات
3- محرك
4- جهاز اليكترونى

Expressions & Prepositions

Expressions		Prepositions	
make electricity	يولد كهرباء	pass exams	يجتاز الامتحانات
make you warmer	تجعلك أكثر دفئًا	translate from...into...	يترجم من ... إلى ....
look online	يبحث على الإنترنت	push ... into the air	يدفع ... فى الهواء
wear headphones	يرتدى سماعات الرأس	drive on glass	يقود (سيارة) على الزجاج
get hotter	يزداد سخونة/حرارة	on a motorbike	على دراجة نارية
get home	يصل للمنزل	agree / disagree with	يتفق/يختلف مع
do the shopping	يقوم بالتسوق	arrive in	يصل إلى (بلد)
go shopping	يذهب للتسوق	in a few minutes	فى خلال دقائق قليلة
go down a road	يسير على طريق	at the speed of..	فى سرعة ..
change roads into ...	يحول الطرق إلى ...	at the same time	فى نفس الوقت
shop online	يتسوق عبر الإنترنت	think of	يفكر فى

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
useful	مفيد	helpful	useless	غير مفيد
famous	مشهور	popular	unknown	غير معروف
agree / for	يوافق - مؤيد	accept	disagree / against	لا يوافق - معارض
friendly	ودود	kind	unfriendly	غير ودود
strong	قوى	powerful	weak	ضعيف
real	حقيقى	true	unreal	غير حقيقى

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
buy	يشترى	bought	bought
spend	يقضى - ينفق	spent	spent
drive	يقود (سيارة مثلاً)	drove	driven
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn
fly	يطير	flew	flown

Language Notes

1) spend / waste

- تستخدم الأفعال spend / waste كما يلى:

spend يقضى / waste يضيع + (time) + V-ing.

Ex. I don't want to spend lots of time travelling to the shops.
Ex. I waste no time playing video games.

spend ينفق / waste يهدر + (money) + on + V-ing. / noun

Ex. He spent much money on (buying) clothes.
Ex. Don't waste your money on (buying) sweets.

2) prefer

- يمكن أن يلى الفعل (prefer) الفعل فى المصدر مسبوقاً بـ (to) :

Ex. I prefer to wear that jacket.

- كما يمكن أن يستخدم كما يلى:

prefer + V-ing. / Noun + to + V-ing. / Noun

Ex. I prefer playing football to playing tennis.
Ex. I prefer football to tennis.

3) hope

- يستخدم الفعل (hope) بمعنى (يأمل) كما يلى:

1- hope + فاعل + مضارع بسيط

Ex. We hope she passes the exam.

2- hope + فاعل + will + inf.

Ex. We hope she will pass the exam.

3- hope + to + inf.

Ex. I hope to get high marks.

Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Amr spends too much time ...... computer games.
   a) play b) to play c) plays d) playing
2. I prefer ...... TV to going to the cinema.
   a) watching b) watches c) watch d) to watching
3. Omar is hoping ...... English at university.
   a) studying b) studies c) to study d) will study



استمع إلى النصوص

❶ This clever jacket uses an app[1] to make you warmer when the weather is cold.

❷ When these headphones[2] hear another language, they can translate[3] it into your language.

❸ Change roads into solar panels[4]! This invention uses strong glass that you can drive on and make electricity[5] at the same time.

❹ Is it a motorbike[6]? Is it a helicopter[7]? No, this invention is half-motorbike and half-helicopter! It can push you into the air at the speed[8] of a fast car!

Arabic Meaning

١- تطبيق
٢- سماعات الرأس
٣- يترجم
٤- ألواح طاقة شمسية
٥- الكهرباء
٦- دراجة نارية
٧- طائرة مروحية
٨- سرعة







Say it correctly tran**s**late — ينطق حرف (s) في هذه الكلمة مثل نطق صوت (z) أو (s).

SB Page (4)

Shopping online - Yes or No?

Inju - I love online shopping!

Shopping online[1] is great! Firstly, it saves[2] me time. I don't want to spend lots of time travelling to the shops. I can stay at home and buy the things I want in a few minutes. Secondly, I have more choice[3] online. Also, if more people shop online, there will be fewer cars on the road[4] and less pollution[5]! I will do all my shopping online when I am older.

Baher - I prefer going to real shops in my city

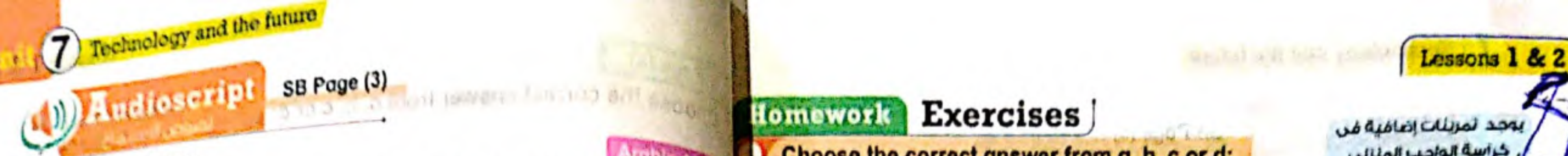


Every time I buy clothes online, the thing that I buy is wrong! At a shop, I can see what I am buying and I can try[6] it first. Also, I don't like to waste[7] time waiting for a delivery[8] - I want things now! If everyone shops online, the shops in our towns and cities will close. If they close, then lots of other businesses[9] like cafés will close, too.

١- التسوق عبر الانترنت
٢- يوفر
٣- إختيار
٤- طريق
٥- تلوث
٦- يقيس - يجرب
٧- يضيع
٨- توصيل
٩- اعمال تجارية

WB Page (71)

Mother : Ahmed, your plane will arrive in England at 11 o'clock.
Ahmed : Who will meet me at the airport if the plane's late?
Mother : Uncle Sami will wait for you, don't worry!
Ahmed : What clothes will I wear if it's cold?
Mother : You have a big coat, but it will be warm inside!
Ahmed : Who will I talk to if I don't know anyone at the school?
Mother : There will be lots of new students, they'll be very friendly.
Ahmed : What will the teacher say if I don't understand the lesson?
Mother : He or she will help you to understand.
Ahmed : What will I eat if I don't like the food?
Mother : Aunt Judy will cook Egyptian food, but you should try English food, too!



1. Narrator : Hatem

Hatem: Wow! That looks so cool[1]! I'm not sure it's very useful though[2]. It won't be able to fly very high, will it?

2. Narrator : Manal

Manal: I think lots of people will want to buy one of these; they'll be very useful for travelling[3]. It won't help people to speak other languages though, will it? It's only good for listening.

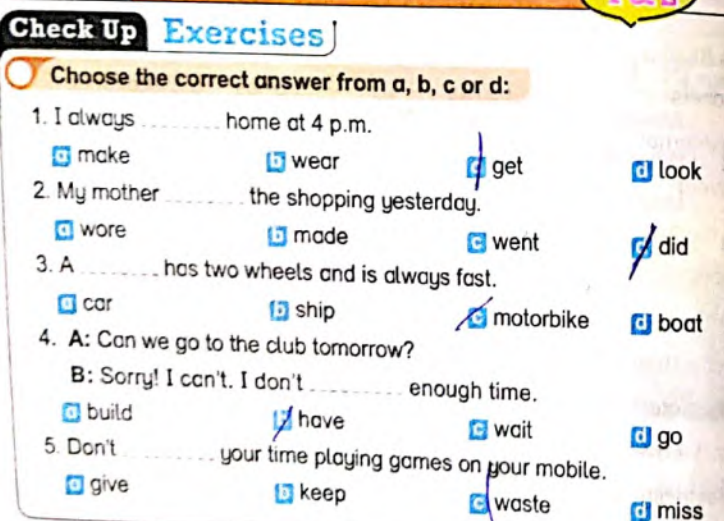
3. Narrator : Tarek

Tarek: I think this is a good idea for people in cold places. It won't be very useful for me though! Maybe[5] they'll make one to make people feel cooler! That would be good here in the summer!

4. Narrator : Sawsan

Sawsan: I think that is an amazing invention[6]. I hope they'll build lots of these in Egypt. We have lots of sun and we could make lots of electricity.

Arabic Meaning



Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I always .... home at 4 p.m.
   a make b wear c get d look
2. My mother .... the shopping yesterday.
   a wore b made c went d did
3. A .... has two wheels and is always fast.
   a car b ship c motorbike d boat
4. A: Can we go to the club tomorrow?
   B: Sorry! I can't. I don't .... enough time.
   a build b have c wait d go
5. Don't .... your time playing games on your mobile.
   a give b keep c waste d miss

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

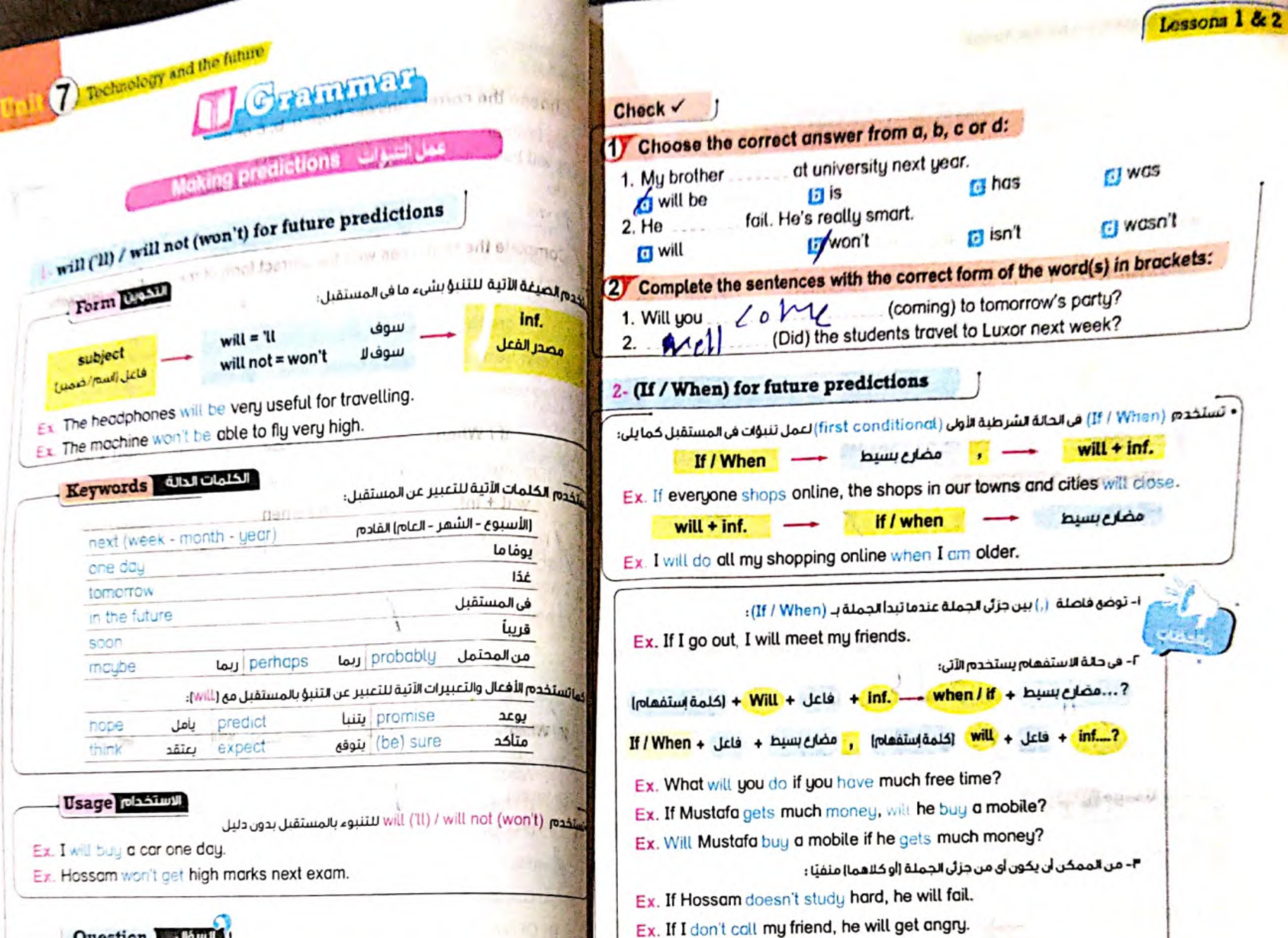
يوجد تمرينات إضافية في كراسة الواجب المنزلي

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. Do you think that it is easy to .... from Arabic to English? المنوفية - السادات 2022 WB
   a translate b move c find d stay
2. The road is not big enough for cars, but you can go down it on a .... WB
   a lorry b ship c rocket d motorbike
3. .... are like planes, but they do not have wings! البحيرة - وادي النطرون 2022 WB
   a Cars b Cameras c Helicopters d Mobiles
4. Mona always wears .... on the bus because she loves listening to music. البحيرة - وادي النطرون 2022 WB
   a mobiles b headphones c dresses d tablets
5. There's a/an .... on this phone which tells me the weather in my city. القليوبية - طوخ 2022 WB
   a app b screen c battery d charger
6. I want to .... shopping on foot. القليوبية - قها 2022
   a have b go c pass d visit

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. This factory uses solar .... to produce electricity.
   a panels b canals c turbines d controls
8. The internet is a useful ....
   a invent b invention c predict d prediction
9. Ola always .... her money on buying dresses.
   a waits b has c makes d spends
10. A: Do you think scientists can .... the future?
    B: Of course not.
    a translate b translation c predict d prediction
11. Don't leave the lights on, it wastes ....
    a electricity b water c time d wind



Grammar

Making predictions عمل التنبؤات

1- will ('ll) / will not (won't) for future predictions

Form التكوين

تستخدم الصيغة الآتية للتنبؤ بشيء ما في المستقبل:

subject فاعل (اسم / ضمير) → will = 'll سوف / will not = won't لا سوف → inf. مصدر الفعل

Ex. The headphones will be very useful for travelling.

Ex. The machine won't be able to fly very high.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

تستخدم الكلمات الآتية للتعبير عن المستقبل:

next (week - month - year)	(الأسبوع - الشهر - العام) القادم
one day	يومًا ما
tomorrow	غدًا
in the future	في المستقبل
soon	قريبًا
maybe ربما / perhaps ربما / probably	من المحتمل

كما تستخدم الأفعال والتعبيرات الآتية للتعبير عن التنبؤ بالمستقبل مع (will):

hope يأمل	predict يتنبأ	promise يوعد
think يعتقد	expect يتوقع	(be) sure متأكد

Usage الاستخدام

تستخدم will ('ll) / will not (won't) للتنبوء بالمستقبل بدون دليل

Ex. I will buy a car one day.

Ex. Hossam won't get high marks next exam.

Question السؤال

(كلمة استفهام) Will + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل...?

Ex. When will you meet your friends? (سؤال بكلمة استفهام)

Ex. Will trains change in the future? (سؤال بهل ....؟)

- Yes, they will. - No, they won't.

Check ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My brother .... at university next year.
   a will be b is c has d was
2. He .... fail. He's really smart.
   a will b won't c isn't d wasn't

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Will you come .... (coming) to tomorrow's party?
2. Will .... (Did) the students travel to Luxor next week?

2- (If / When) for future predictions

• تستخدم (If / When) في الحالة الشرطية الأولى (first conditional) لعمل تنبؤات في المستقبل كما يلي:

If / When → مضارع بسيط , → will + inf.

Ex. If everyone shops online, the shops in our towns and cities will close.

will + inf. → if / when → مضارع بسيط

Ex. I will do all my shopping online when I am older.

لاحظ

١- توضع فاصلة (,) بين جزئي الجملة عندما تبدأ الجملة بـ (If / When):

Ex. If I go out, I will meet my friends.

٢- في حالة الاستفهام يستخدم الآتي:

(كلمة استفهام) + Will + فاعل + inf. — when / if + مضارع بسيط...?

If / When + فاعل + مضارع بسيط , (كلمة استفهام) will + فاعل + inf....?

Ex. What will you do if you have much free time?

Ex. If Mustafa gets much money, will he buy a mobile?

Ex. Will Mustafa buy a mobile if he gets much money?

٣- من الممكن أن يكون أي من جزئي الجملة (أو كلاهما) منفيًا:

Ex. If Hossam doesn't study hard, he will fail.

Ex. If I don't call my friend, he will get angry.

Ex. If Naglaa doesn't study hard, she won't succeed.

٤- نستخدم المضارع البسيط وليس (will + inf.) في فعل الشرط بعد (If / When).

Ex. If Ramy helps his dad, they will finish on time.

Ex. ~~If Ramy will help his dad, they will finish on time.~~ (X) (الجملة خطأ)

Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My friends and I .... to Alex soon.
   a) is travelling b) travelled c) travels d) will travel
2. That boy .... a famous architect in the future.
   a) is b) will be c) did d) was
3. Mona .... her aunt if she has enough free time.
   a) will visit b) visited c) would visit d) is visited
4. Kamal will arrive on time if he .... about the meeting.
   a) will know b) knew c) knows d) knowing
5. When mum goes to the market, she .... me a jacket.
   a) was getting b) got c) getting d) will get

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Hassan will be sad if he gets .... (got) low marks.
2. What will .... (would) you do when you meet Ali?
3. He will feel tired if he doesn't .... (didn't) sleep well tomorrow.

Homework Exercises

تمرينات إضافية في كراسة الواجب المنزلي

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. When Huda visits Cairo, she .... some new shoes. SB
   a) would buy b) buying c) will buy d) bought
2. I think travelling in time .... impossible. WB
   a) be b) would be c) were d) will be

... order.

3. Hassan won't use the internet to buy food when he .... SB البحيرة - وادي النطرون 2022
   a) is b) was c) be d) are
4. If I .... everything online, I won't be able to go shopping with my friends. SB
   a) would buy b) buy c) will buy d) bought
5. .... you visit Aswan, will you visit the High Dam? القليوبية - طوخ 2022
   a) Where b) While c) If d) As
6. I think there .... no illnesses in the future. WB
   a) will be b) be c) won't be d) was
7. If you go to the club this afternoon, you .... Hossam because he is in Aswan. سوهاج - أخميم 2022
   a) should see b) won't see c) will see d) don't see

Bit by Bit Exercises

8. I will travel abroad when I .... my exams.
   a) will finish b) finishing c) finish d) finishes
9. If Omar trains hard, he .... next week's match.
   a) wins b) doesn't win c) won't win d) will win
10. My father .... me a new mobile next month.
    a) will buy b) would buy c) buys d) bought
11. They .... a nice time if they go to Al-Azhar Park.
    a) had b) will have c) having d) has
12. When Amir .... to America, he will buy a modern car.
    a) travels b) travel c) travelling d) travelled

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I won't .... (not watch) TV tonight if I am busy. البحيرة - التحرير 2022
2. I think I will speak .... (speak) English well next year.
3. He will feel .... (feel) warmer when he wears that jacket.
4. If Ali comes first, he will be .... (be) very happy. البحيرة 2022
5. How will .... (did) technology help us to travel in the future?

Speaking

1 Talking about new inventions — التحديث عن الاختراعات الجديدة

لنسأل ونجيب عن ما نأمله في المستقبل بخصوص الاختراعات الجديدة فنقول:

A: What invention do you hope we will see in the future?
ما الاختراع الذي تأمل أن نراه مستقبلاً؟

B: I hope...... will be invented soon. أتمنى أن (اسم الاختراع) سوف يتم اختراعه قريبا.

Ex. I hope the flying motorbike will be invented soon.

A: Do you agree that........ will / won't be very useful in Egypt?
هل توافق أن (اسم الاختراع) سوف يكون/سوف لا يكون مفيدا في مصر؟

B: I agree that.......... will / won't be useful in Egypt!
أوافق أن (اسم الاختراع) سوف يكون/سوف لا يكون مفيداً في مصر.

Ex. I agree that the jacket won't be very useful in Egypt.

2 Predicting the future — عمل تنبؤات في المستقبل

- يمكن عمل تنبؤات مستقبلية باستخدام If + present simple → will + inf. كالآتي:

- If I help my mother at the weekend, she will have more free time.
لو أساعد أمي في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع، سوف يكون لديها وقت فراغ أكثر.
- If I finish my homework early, I'll play video games.
لو انتهى من واجبي المنزلي مبكراً، سوف ألعب ألعاب الفيديو.
- If I pass my exams, I'll be happy. لو اجتاز امتحاناتي، سأكون سعيدًا.
- If I find a snake in my house, I will be frightened.
لو أجد ثعبانًا في منزلي، سأكون خائفاً.

General Exercises on Lessons 1&2

يوجد تمرينات إضافية في كراسة الواجب المنزلي

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Nagwa is reading a book about new inventions.

Maya : What are you reading, Nagwa?

Nagwa : 1 ....

Maya : Great! 2 ....?

Nagwa : Yes, there will be many important inventions in the future.

Maya : 3 ....?

Nagwa : They will invent the flying motorbike soon.

Maya : Do you agree that it will be useful in Egypt?

Nagwa : 4 ....

Maya : Can I borrow this book after you finish reading it?

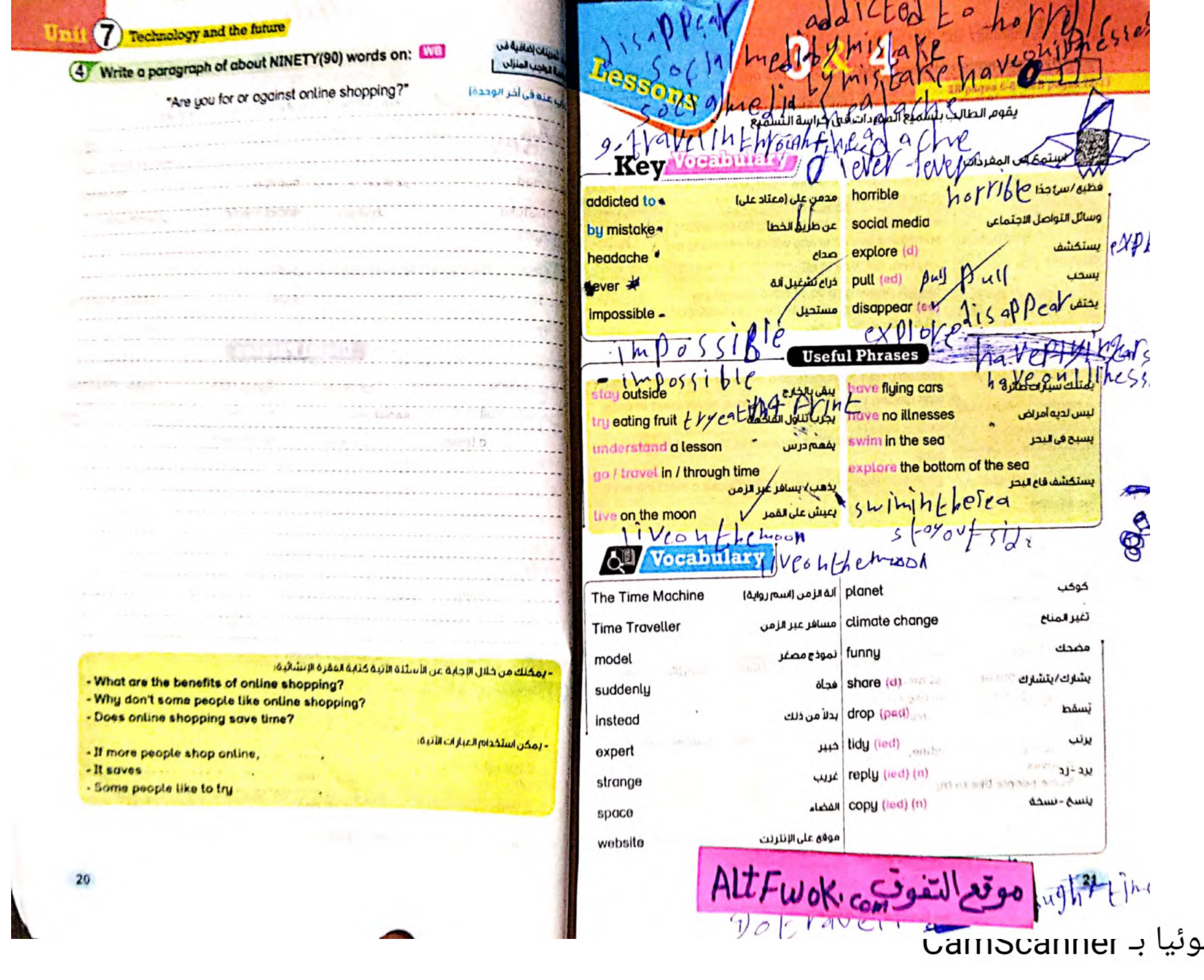
Nagwa : 5 ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There will .... electric cars in the future. (القليوبية - طوخ 2022)
   a be b are c being d been
2. Do you think that we will .... a car that doesn't make any pollution? (WB)
   a invention b predict c prediction d invent
3. I asked my aunt to .... a French internet article into Arabic. (WB)
   a build b check c translate d damage
4. When Dina .... home, her aunt will meet her.
   a come b comes c came d coming
5. .... I have enough free time, I will go out with my friends.
   a If b What c How d Do
6. My mother always .... the shopping on Fridays.
   a does b goes c makes d looks

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She .... (won't) succeed in the next exam. She's really clever.
2. What will Ahmed .... (doing) if he knows the truth?
3. If they .... (not work) hard, the manager will punish them.
4. If Sara .... (have) much work, she won't watch TV.



4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on: WB

تدريبات إضافية في الواجب المنزلي

"Are you for or against online shopping?"

يجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:
- What are the benefits of online shopping?
- Why don't some people like online shopping?
- Does online shopping save time?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- If more people shop online, ...
- It saves ....
- Some people like to try ....

Lessons 3 & 4

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات في كراسة التسميع

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

addicted to	مدمن على (معتاد على)	horrible	فظيع / سيئ جدًا
by mistake	عن طريق الخطأ	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
headache	صداع	explore (d)	يستكشف
lever	ذراع تشغيل آلة	pull (ed)	يسحب
impossible	مستحيل	disappear (ed)	يختفي

Useful Phrases

stay outside	يبقى بالخارج	have flying cars	يمتلك سيارات طائرة
try eating fruit	يجرب تناول الفاكهة	have no illnesses	ليس لديه أمراض
understand a lesson	يفهم درس	swim in the sea	يسبح في البحر
go / travel in / through time	يذهب / يسافر عبر الزمن	explore the bottom of the sea	يستكشف قاع البحر
live on the moon	يعيش على القمر		

Vocabulary

The Time Machine	آلة الزمن (اسم رواية)	planet	كوكب
Time Traveller	مسافر عبر الزمن	climate change	تغير المناخ
model	نموذج مصغر	funny	مضحك
suddenly	فجأة	share (d)	يشارك / يتشارك
instead	بدلاً من ذلك	drop (ped)	يُسقط
expert	خبير	tidy (ied)	يرتب
strange	غريب	reply (ied) (n)	يرد - رد
space	الفضاء	copy (ied) (n)	ينسخ - نسخة
website	موقع على الإنترنت		

Words & Meanings

social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	- websites and apps that allow[1] people to talk to each oth… on the internet - websites and computer programs that allow people … communicate and share information on the internet usi… a computer or mobile phone
by mistake	عن طريق الخطأ	- without planning[2] or wanting to do something - something you do or say without intending to
horrible	فظيع/سيء جدًا	very bad, not nice at all
addicted to	مدمن على	- always needing to do or have something - liking something so much that you want to do or have it all the time
pull	يسحب	hold something and move it towards you
disappear	يختفي	suddenly go somewhere and become impossible to find
explore	يستكشف	look around a place where you have never been in order to find out what is there
impossible	مستحيل	if an action or event[3] is impossible, it cannot happen or b… done
lever	ذراع تشغيل آلة	a handle[4] that you push or pull to make a machine work
headache	صداع	a pain[5] inside your head

Arabic Mea…

Expressions & Prepositions

sound like	يبدو مثل	ready to use	جاهزة للإستخدام
have a headache	يعاني من صداع	take the road south	يستقل الطريق جنوباً
have a break	يأخذ راحة	on the internet	في الإنترنت
make friends	يصادق - يكوّن صداقات	on social media	على مواقع التواصل
feel tired / worried	يشعر بالتعب/بالقلق	turn... off	يُغلق
pull a lever	يسحب ذراع آلة	good at	جيد في
share a photo	يشارك صورة	for a long time	لمدة طويلة
give advice	يعطي نصيحة	worried about	قلق على
a piece of technology	أحد أشكال التكنولوجيا	take ... away	يأخذ... بعيدًا
drop rubbish	يلقي القمامة	believe in	يؤمن بـ
start a machine	يشغل آلة	come out	يظهر/يَبرُز (الشمس مثلاً)

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
impossible	مستحيل	no way	possible	ممكن
pull	يسحب	grab	push	يدفع للأمام
disappear	يختفي	hide	appear	يظهر
turn.. off	يغلق جهاز	switch off	turn.. on	يشغل جهاز

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
cost	يكلف	cost	cost
hurt	يؤذي - يؤلم	hurt	hurt
build	يبني/ينشئ	built	built
send	يرسل	sent	sent
understand	يفهم	understood	understood

Language Notes

1) Gerund (V-ing)

- من الممكن أن يستخدم (V-ing) كفاعل للجملة:

Ex. Playing video games is my hobby.

Ex. Travelling has many benefits.

2) stop

- stop + V-ing يتوقف عن شيء كان يفعله

Ex. You should stop playing too much.

Ex. When dad arrived, we stopped talking.

- stop + to + inf. يتوقف لكي...

Ex. On my way home, I stopped to buy some bread.

3) take

- يستخدم الفعل (take) بمعنى (يستغرق) كما يلي:

take + مدة + to + inf.

Ex. The machine took (me) two years to build.

- لاحظ أنه يمكن وضع المفعول به بعد الفعل take

4) allow / let

- allow (ed) + مفعول + to + inf. يسمح

Ex. Social media allows people to communicate.

- let (let - let) + مفعول + inf يسمح

Ex. My dad didn't let me go out last night.

- Let's + inf. هيا بنا

Ex. Let's go for a walk.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... movies online really wastes my time.
   a Watch b Watching c To watching d Watches
2. You should stop .... at me like this.
   a shouted b to shout c shouting d to shouting
3. It took Hagar three hours .... her homework.
   a finish b finishes c finished d to finish
4. My teacher didn't .... me to eat in class.
   a allow b laugh c let d work



SB Page (6)

استمع إلى النصوص

Shady	Hala	Randa	Adam
			

1. Narrator : Shady
   Shady : I'm not sleeping very well at the moment. I usually watch some videos on the internet before I go to sleep but sometimes I watch them for a few hours and then I can't sleep. My head often hurts lots in the morning, too.

2. Narrator : Hala
   Hala : I found this great online game but I didn't know that when I got new things on it, it costs[1] real money! I hope[2] my parents aren't going to be angry when I tell them how much money I spent ...

Arabic Meaning
١- يكلف
٢- يأمل

3. Narrator : Randa
   Randa : I love social media, I love watching videos online and I love talking to my friends on my phone. But now I feel worried[3] if I don't have my phone or I can't check it. I think it is starting to become[4] a problem.

4. Narrator : Adam
   Adam : My friends and I like to put funny[5] pictures online but when I share[6] a photo, everyone says my clothes are not cool or my hair looks strange[7]. It makes me feel sad.

٣- قلق
٤- يصبح
٥- مضحك
٦- يشارك
٧- غريب

SB Page (6)

Narrator : One
Woman : Shady, watching videos before bed is not a good idea. You should try not to take your phone into your bedroom at night.



Narrator : Two
Woman : Hala, you need to talk to your parents. They should check that you can't buy anything when you play games online.

Narrator : Three
Woman : Randa, it is important not to become addicted to technology. If you feel you can't live without your phone you should try taking a break every day for an hour or more.





Narrator : Four
Woman : Oh Adam, they don't sound like good friends! Talk to them in real life and tell them how it makes you feel. If they don't change, maybe you should find some new friends.



SB P. (7)

My parents say that I spend too much time online, but playing video games is my hobby and I am very good at them! I love playing games with my friends but my parents say they will take my computer away if I don't stop playing on it so much. What should I do?

SB Page (8)

The Time Machine by H. G. Wells

London, England, 1895

A group of friends meet for dinner at the Time Traveller's house. After dinner, the Time Traveller asks his friends if they think that it is possible[1] to travel through time.

"It's impossible[2]!" they reply[3], "We can only travel through space, not time."

The Time Traveller shows them a small model[4] of a machine that he has in his hand.

"This is a copy of a machine that I believe[5] can go through time. It took me two years to build," he tells them. The friends laugh.

"Pull[6] this lever[7]," he tells one of them.

They feel some wind and then the machine suddenly disappears[8]!

"Where is it?" the other men ask.

"The model machine is in the future," the Time Traveller says. "Would you like to see the real machine?" he asks.

He takes them to another room. Inside the room is another, bigger machine. It is not finished.

"In this machine," he says "I will explore[9] the past and the future!"

Arabic Meaning

١- ممكن
٢- مستحيل
٣- يرد
٤- نموذج مصغر
٥- يعتقد
٦- يسحب
٧- ذراع آلة
٨- يختفى
٩- يستكشف

Say it correctly

- lever — ينطق الجزء الملون من هذه الكلمة مثل نطق كلمة (leave)

Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It is .... for us to breathe underwater.
   a possible b probable c usual d impossible
2. Mum had a bad .... and couldn't go out.
   a muscle b head c headache d eye
3. Some divers will .... the bottom of this sea tomorrow.
   a explore b damage c invent d make
4. The sun .... behind a cloud.
   a made b bought c disappeared d worked
5. I watched an interesting film .... the internet last week.
   a of b on c out d to

Homework Exercises

يوجد تمرينات إضافية فى كراسة الواجب المنزلى

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. That new hotel looks .... I really don't like it. WB
   a nice b wonderful c horrible d fantastic
2. If you don't .... the lesson, you should tell the teacher. WB
   a swim b visit c try d understand
3. You shouldn't .... in the sea if it is very cold. WB
   a run b swim c visit d understand
4. The tourists took the road south by ...., but they wanted to go north. WB
   a correction b lever c mistake d right
5. Our friends sent us some photos on .... WB
   a social media b battery c keyboard d mouse
6. The best way to .... the countryside is on foot. البحيرة - وادى النطرون 2022
   a invent b explore c communicate d make
7. I can't find my earphones; they suddenly .... القليوبية - قها 2022
   a believed b listened c appeared d disappeared

Bit By Bit Exercises

8. You shouldn't .... friends with bad people.
   a do b take c make d hurt
9. When you are .... to something, you always need to do it.
   a addicted b kind c polite d rude
10. When the man pulled the ...., the machine started to work.
    a leg b lever c lung d lesson





1 Grammar

(If / When + should / shouldn't) to give advice

نستخدم (If / When + should / shouldn't) لتقديم النصح بمعنى اذا/ عندما... ينبغي/ لا ينبغي أن

If / When → مضارع بسيط → **should / shouldn't + inf.**

Ex. You should check that you can't buy anything when you play games online.

Ex. If they don't get good marks, maybe they should study harder.

Ex. If it is very rainy, you shouldn't go out.

ملاحظات

١- إذا بدأنا الجملة بـ If / When لابد من وضع comma (,) قبل بداية الجملة الثانية.

Ex. If you have a problem, you should tell your parents.

Ex. You should tell your parents if you have a problem.

٢- في حالة الاستفهام نستخدم الأسلوب الآتي:

[كلمة إستفهام] Should فاعل inf. if / when مضارع بسيط ...?

Ex. What should I do if I don't find my mobile?

Ex. Should we go out if we have enough time?

٣- من الممكن أن يكون أيا من جزئي الجملة (أو كلاهما) في حالة النفي:

Ex. If you don't find your books, you should tell your parents.

Ex. If you don't feel well, you shouldn't go out.

٤- إذا دلت الجملة على الاستمرارية من الممكن أن يأتي بعد (If / When) زمن المضارع المستمر بدلاً من المضارع البسيط:

Ex. If you are sitting at the computer for a long time, you should have a break.

Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Where should I go if I .... to buy a new car?
   a) was wanting b) wants c) want d) wanting
2. You shouldn't stay up late if you .... to get up early.
   a) needing b) needed c) needs d) need

3. When you .... some problems, you should tell your dad.
   a) find b) finds c) found d) finding

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If you feel tired, you .... (shouldn't) go to bed.
2. When you have an exam, you should .... (relaxing).
3. If you .... (needs) to be fit, you should do exercises.

Homework Exercises

يوجد تمرينات إضافية في كراسة الواجب المنزلي

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. When you go to bed, you .... turn your phone off. SB
   a) won't b) will c) should d) have
2. You should tell a parent or teacher if you .... worried about something. SB
   a) felt b) will feel c) are felt d) feel
3. If she has a headache, she .... see a doctor. البحيرة - التحرير 2022
   a) have b) should c) is d) was
4. .... you have a problem, you should tell your parents. القليوبية - قها 2022
   a) If b) But c) What d) During

Bit by Bit Exercises

5. What .... I do if I need to make friends online?
   a) am b) not c) should d) was
6. If you need to stay healthy, you .... go to the gym.
   a) not b) should c) shouldn't d) have
7. I should read books if I .... free time.
   a) had b) has c) will have d) have
8. If you meet Mr Hamdy, you .... tell him about the accident.
   a) shouldn't b) are c) not d) aren't

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If we want to stop climate change, we should .... (stopped) cutting down trees.
2. You .... (shall) come to stay with me when you're bored. البحيرة - وادى النطرون 2022
3. When you have much homework, you .... (shouldn't) finish it first.
4. You should .... (is) careful when you use the internet.

Speaking

Talking about technology التحدث عن التكنولوجيا

للسؤال والإجابة عن أنواع التكنولوجيا التى تستخدمها نقول:

A: What types of technology do you use every day?
ما هى أنواع التكنولوجيا التى تستخدمها كل يوم؟

B: I think I am addicted to.......... أعتقد أننى مدمن لاستخدام.........

A: What do you use them for? فيما تستخدمهم؟

B: I spend hours watching / playing.......... أقضى ساعات أشاهد/ ألعب.........

A: Do you have any problems with technology?
هل تعانى من مشكلات مع استخدام التكنولوجيا؟

B: I think I'm addicted to my phone! أعتقد أننى مدمن لهاتفى!

- I spent lots of money in an online game by mistake.
أنفقت كثيراً من المال فى لعبة على الإنترنت عن طريق الخطأ.

General Exercises on Lessons 3&4

1 Complete the following dialogue:

A teacher is talking to Ramy about using mobile phones.

Teacher : What types of technology do you use every day?
Ramy : 1 ....
Teacher : What do you use your phone for?
Ramy : 2 ....
Teacher : 3 ....?
Ramy : I check social media once an hour.
Teacher : 4 ....?
Ramy : Yes, I have some problems.
Teacher : How does watching videos online make you feel?
Ramy : 5 ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Most young people are .... to mobile phones. البحيرة - 2022
   a) addicted b) interested c) worried d) amazed
2. My head hurts, I have a ....
   a) backache b) headache c) stomachache d) toothache
3. If it rains, you .... take your umbrella. الجيزة - شمال الجيزة 2022
   a) should b) shouldn't c) mustn't d) need
4. You shouldn't watch videos on the internet if your head .... SB
   a) will hurt b) hurting c) hurts d) would hurt
5. If you .... someone, you shouldn't make friends with them online. SB
   a) didn't know b) don't know c) not know d) won't know
6. If you see people being horrible online, you .... tell your parents. SB
   a) should b) won't c) are d) shouldn't

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. When you .... (had) much money, you should travel abroad.
2. What .... (would) I do when I meet the manager?
3. You should visit your grandparents when you .... (had) enough time.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on:

"How do you think life will change in the future?"

....
....
....
....
....
....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:
- What do you think will happen in the future?
- Do you think we will travel in time?
- Do you think we will live on the moon?
- Do you think we will have flying cars?
- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- In the future, I think ....
- I think we will travel ....
- I don't think we'll live ....
- I think we'll have ....

Lessons 5,6&7

SB pages 9-11 WB pages 74-76

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات فى كراسة التسميع

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

enough	كافٍ	video games	ألعاب الفيديو
outside	بالخارج	order (ed)	يطلب/ يأمر

Useful Phrases

- watch videos online — يشاهد فيديوهات عبر الإنترنت
- check social media — يتفحص وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
- get enough sleep — يحصل على قدر نوم كافٍ
- spend (time) on screens — يقضي (وقت) أمام شاشات
- have eye problems — يعاني من مشاكل فى البصر
- spend hours playing — يقضي ساعات فى اللعب

Vocabulary

debate	مناظرة/ جدال	surname	لقب (اسم العائلة)
exercise	تمارين رياضية	though	بالرغم من ذلك
screen	شاشة	idea	فكرة
view	رأى / وجهة نظر	wheel	عجلة
faithfully / sincerely	بإخلاص	transport	النقل
hearing	حاسة السمع	regards	تحيات
dangers	مخاطر	damage (d)	يتلف
robot	إنسان آلى	improve (d)	يُحسّن
clear	واضح	text (ed)	يرسل رسالة نصيّة
ear problems	مشاكل سمعية	wish (ed) (n)	يتمنى/ امنية

Words & Meanings

			Arabic Meaning
order	يطلب	ask someone to make, supply [1], or deliver [2] food or an object	١- يمد ٢- يوصل

Expressions & Prepositions

give ... headaches	تسبب صداع لـ..	stay healthy	يبقى بصحة جيدة
get a headache	يصاب بصداع	once an hour	مرة فى الساعة
order ... on a website	يطلب ... من على موقع	go on wheels	يسير على عجلات
go online	يدخل على الانترنت	go on holiday	يذهب لقضاء إجازة
stop ... sleeping	يمنع ... من النوم	bad for	ضار بـ
the reason why	السبب الذى من أجله	late into the night	فى وقت متأخر ليلاً
children aged 6	اطفال أعمارهم ٦ سنوات	In my view / opinion	فى رأيى
look forward to + V-ing. / n	يتطلع إلى	from my point of view	من وجهة نظرى

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
outside	بالخارج	outdoors	inside	بالداخل
online	عبر الإنترنت	on the internet	offline	بدون الإنترنت
positive	إيجابى	useful	negative	سلبى
clear	واضح	obvious	unclear	غير واضح

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
teach	يعلّم	taught	taught
become	يصبح	became	become
ride	يركب (دراجة ... الخ)	rode	ridden

Language Notes

1) enough

- تستخدم (enough) بمعنى (كافٍ/بدرجة كافية) كما يلى:

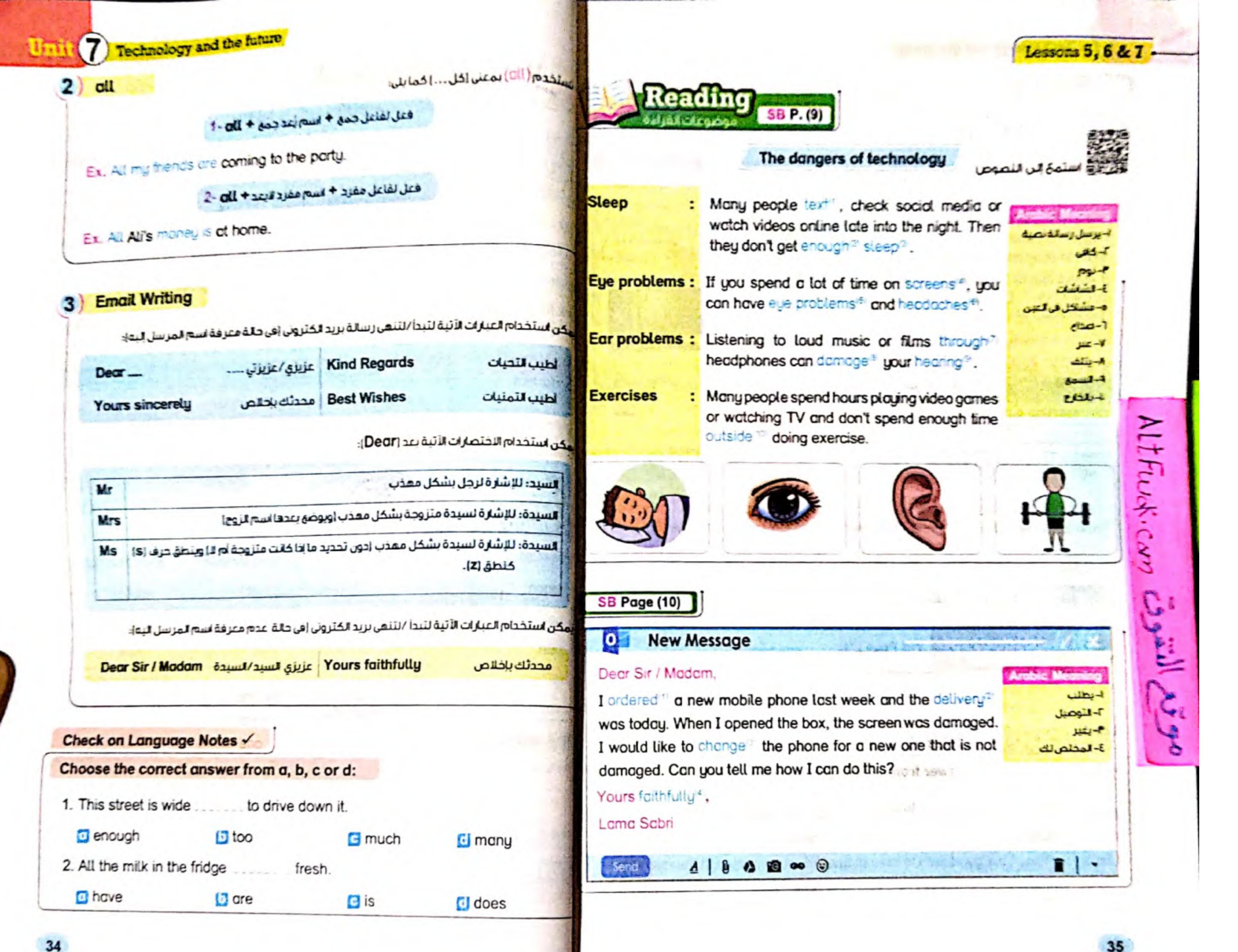
صفة/حال + enough + to + inf.

Ex. Sami was clever enough to get high marks.

Ex. Sami answered cleverly enough to get high marks.

- من الممكن أن يلى (enough) اسم:

Ex. We don't have enough money to buy a car.



2) all

يستخدم (all) بمعنى (كل...) كما يلي:

1- all + اسم بعد جمع + فعل لفاعل جمع

Ex. All my friends are coming to the party.

2- all + اسم مفرد لا يعد + فعل لفاعل مفرد

Ex. All Ali's money is at home.

3) Email Writing

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية لتبدأ/لتنهي رسالة بريد الكتروني (في حالة معرفة اسم المرسل إليه):

Dear ...	عزيزي/عزيزتي	Kind Regards	لطيب التحيات
Yours sincerely	محدثك بإخلاص	Best Wishes	لطيب التمنيات

يمكن استخدام الاختصارات الآتية بعد (Dear):

Mr	السيد: للإشارة لرجل بشكل مهذب
Mrs	السيدة: للإشارة لسيدة متزوجة بشكل مهذب (ويوضع بعدها اسم الزوج)
Ms	السيدة: للإشارة لسيدة بشكل مهذب (دون تحديد ما إذا كانت متزوجة أم لا) وينطق حرف (s) كنطق (z).

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية لتبدأ/لتنهي بريد الكتروني (في حالة عدم معرفة اسم المرسل إليه):

Dear Sir / Madam	عزيزي السيد/السيدة	Yours faithfully	محدثك بإخلاص

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This street is wide .... to drive down it.
   a) enough b) too c) much d) many
2. All the milk in the fridge .... fresh.
   a) have b) are c) is d) does

Reading
موضوعات القراءة — SB P. (9)

The dangers of technology

استمع إلى النصوص

Sleep: Many people text[1], check social media or watch videos online late into the night. Then they don't get enough[2] sleep[3].

Eye problems: If you spend a lot of time on screens[4], you can have eye problems[5] and headaches[6].

Ear problems: Listening to loud music or films through[7] headphones can damage[8] your hearing[9].

Exercises: Many people spend hours playing video games or watching TV and don't spend enough time outside[10] doing exercise.

Arabic Meaning
1- يرسل رسالة نصية
2- كافي
3- نوم
4- الشاشات
5- مشاكل في العين
6- صداع
7- عبر
8- يتلف
9- السمع
10- بالخارج

SB Page (10)

New Message

Dear Sir / Madam,

I ordered[1] a new mobile phone last week and the delivery[2] was today. When I opened the box, the screen was damaged. I would like to change[3] the phone for a new one that is not damaged. Can you tell me how I can do this?

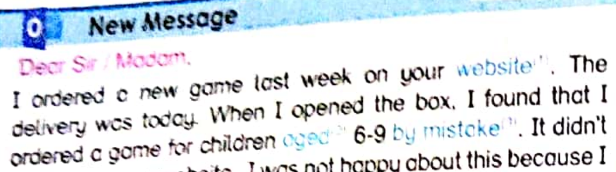
Yours faithfully[4],

Lama Sabri

Send

Arabic Meaning
1- يطلب
2- التوصيل
3- يغير
4- المخلص لك

WB Page (75)



New Message

Dear Sir / Madam,

I ordered a new game last week on your website[1]. The delivery was today. When I opened the box, I found that I ordered a game for children aged[2] 6-9 by mistake[3]. It didn't say this on your website. I was not happy about this because I want to play the game with my friends, and we are all 13 or 14. I would like to change the game for a new one that is for the correct age[4]. Can you tell me how I can do this?

I look forward to[5] hearing from you.

Yours faithfully,

Haytham Shabana






Arabic Meaning

١- موقع على الإنترنت
٢- بالغ من العمر
٣- بالخطأ
٤- العمر المناسب
٥- يتطلع إلى

WB Page (75)

New Message

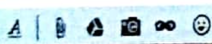
Hi Fatma,

The jacket I ordered online arrived today, but it is the wrong colour! I ordered a blue jacket and this one is red. I'm going to ask them how to change it!

See you soon,

Love Maya






Audioscript WB Page (74)

نصوص الاستماع

Hanan: Do you think that all computer games are bad for you, Lama?

Lama: From my point of view[1], not all computer games are bad. Some of them can help you to learn things.

Hanan: I agree. If you don't play computer games all the time, it shouldn't be a problem[2].

Lama: It's not a good idea to play games late at night though[3].

Hanan: I agree. In my opinion[4] playing games late at night stops you sleeping

Lama: Yes, it's a good idea to only play quiet, calm games in the evening.

Hanan: If you only play games that teach[5] you things in the evening, it should be fine.

Arabic Meaning

١- من وجهة نظرى
٢- مشكلة
٣- بالرغم من ذلك
٤- فى رأيى
٥- يعلم

Videoscript SB Page (9)

arrator:

What do you use when you want to find out the time? Do you use a watch[1]... or do you use a clock[2]?

These clocks either use numbers to tell the time... or they use hands[3]. These hands show hours, minutes[4] and seconds[5].

But how did people know the time in the past? In Ancient Egypt, people used sundials[6]. Sundials use the position of the sun to tell the time.

Then, in the year 1524, a scientist[7] from Damascus[8] called Taqi al-Din invented a watch that looked like the watches of today. It had three hands to show hours, minutes and seconds. It was also small, so people could carry it with them.

But watches today don't only tell you the time. Some watches will say that you should do exercise if you are sitting at a computer for a long time! And some have apps, such as maps[9] that will give you directions[10] if you are lost.

What will the watches of the future be like? Some will be like modern mobile phones. If someone calls you, you will be able to see them on a special video screen. And some will look after your health. They will tell you what medicine you should take if you are ill, or that you should see a doctor.

Arabic Meaning

١- ساعة يد
٢- ساعة حائط
٣- عقارب الساعة
٤- دقائق
٥- ثواني
٦- ساعات شمسية
٧- عالم
٨- مدينة دمشق
٩- خرائط
١٠- إتجاهات

Exercises on Lessons 5, 6 & 7



Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When I got up, it was still dark ....
   a) countryside b) side c) abroad d) outside
2. The room was large .... for all the students.
   a) too b) so c) enough d) such
3. I .... a jacket online and the delivery was yesterday.
   a) ordered b) wore c) tried d) gave
4. It's my habit to .... social media to get the latest news.
   a) choose b) damage c) break d) check

يوجد تمرينات إضافية في كراسة الواجب المنزلي

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

الدقهلية - السادات 2022

1. I look forward to .... from my friend.
   a hear b hearing c hears d heard
2. .... my point of view, too much technology can give you headaches.
   a From b In c By d On
3. Technology can be bad .... your health.
   a at b to c for d about

Bit by Bit Exercises

4. A bike has two ....
   a wheels b engines c machines d tools
5. This video game is useful for children .... nine.
   a age b ages c ageing d aged
6. Salah spends a lot of time watching videos ....
   a online b lines c outline d line
7. You should .... enough sleep. You look really tired.
   a check b get c spend d watch

Speaking

1 Giving positive opinions إعطاء آراء إيجابية

- لإعطاء آراء إيجابية بخصوص شيء يمكن أن تستخدم:

- ......is a good idea. .... هي/هو فكرة جيدة.

Ex. Using technology to help you exercise is a good idea

- If you use ... well, it should help you + inf. .....
  لو تستخدم ... جيدًا ينبغي أن يساعدك أن ....

Ex. If you use technology well, it should help you become healthier.

- If you don't become addicted to ..., you will be fine.
  لو لم تصبح مدمنًا على ..... سوف تكون بخير.

Ex. If you don't become addicted to technology, you will be fine.

2 Giving negative opinions إعطاء آراء سلبية

- لإعطاء آراء سلبية بخصوص شيء يمكن أن تستخدم:

- It isn't a good idea to + inf. ليست فكرة جيدة أن ....

Ex. It isn't a good idea to spend too much time watching TV.

- From my point of view, ...can + inf. .... من وجهة نظري .... يمكنه أن ....

Ex. From my point of view, too much technology can give you headaches.

- In my opinion, ...is / can be bad for ... في رأيي ..... يمكن أن يكون ضار لـ .....

Ex. In my opinion, all technology is bad for your health.

General Exercises on Lessons 5, 6&7

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mustafa and Muhammad are talking about technology.

Mustafa : What do you think of technology?

Muhammad : ❶ ....

Mustafa : ❷ ....

Muhammad : Because too much technology can give you headaches.

Mustafa : ❸ ....

Muhammad : Yes, it can waste our time.

Mustafa : Can technology be positive?

Muhammad : ❹ ....

Mustafa : How can I use it well?

Muhammad : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mahmoud can have eye problems because he .... a lot of time on screens.
   a spends b checks c hears d listens
2. A: Why do the children spend a lot of time .... ?
   B: They are playing basketball.
   a seaside b countryside c side d outside
3. I'd like to change this broken mobile phone .... a new one.
   a in b of c for d off
4. When I work on my computer for a long time, I .... a headache.
   a make b give c take d get
5. We didn't know the reason .... the manager was angry yesterday.
   a for b why c what d which

Excel Yourself

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b c or d:

1. If you have a problem, ... your parents about it.
   a will tell b should tell c tell d tells
2. Hossam will get good marks if he .... good memory.
   a has b have c is having d had
3. If everyone .... online, shops will close.
   a shop b shopped c shops d shopping

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Should I call you when we .... (were) home?
2. Where should I travel if I .... (be) older?

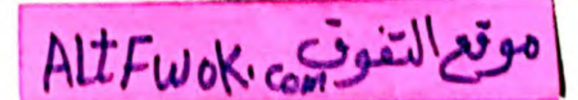
Review on unit 7

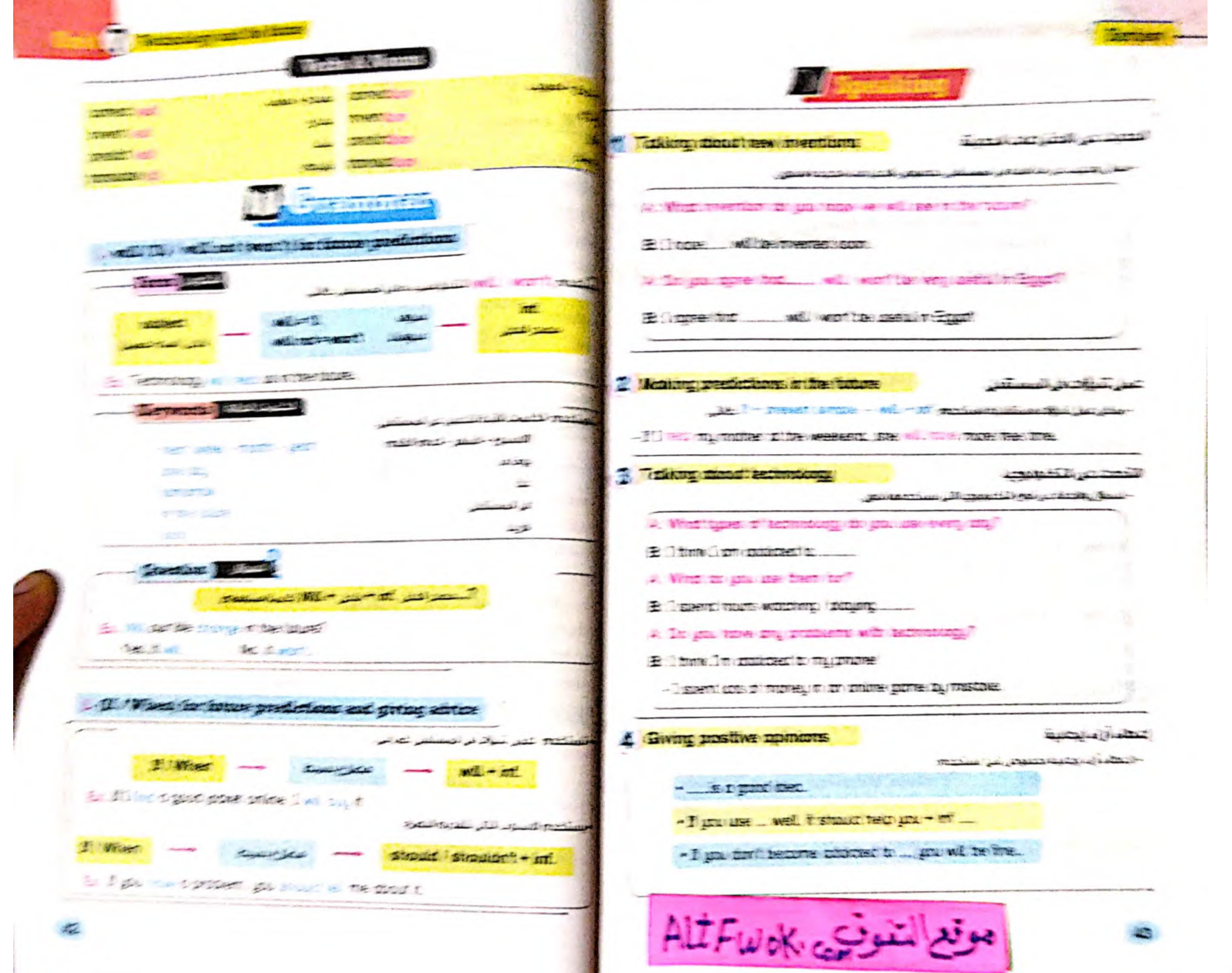
Key Vocabulary

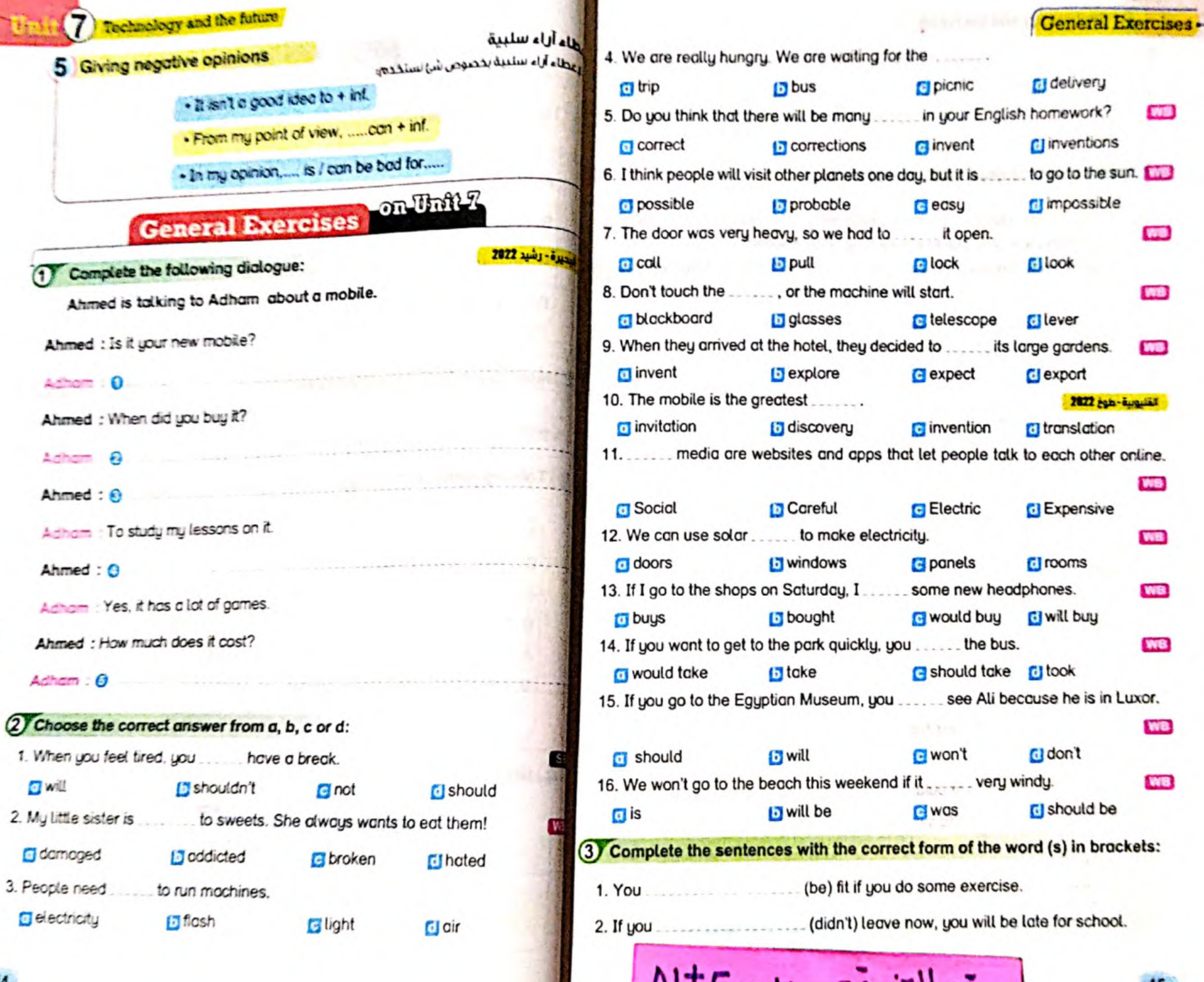
headphones	سماعات الرأس (جمع دائماً)	speed	سرعة
motorbike	دراجة نارية (موتوسيكل)	electricity	الكهرباء
solar panels	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية	app (application)	تطبيق (على الهاتف أو الكمبيوتر)
helicopter	طائرة مروحية (هليكوبتر)	horrible	فظيع / سئ جدًا
addicted to	مدمن على (معتاد على)	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
by mistake	عن طريق الخطأ	video games	ألعاب الفيديو
headache	صداع	explore (d)	يستكشف
lever	ذراع تشغيل آلة	pull (ed)	يسحب
impossible	مستحيل	disappear (ed)	يختفي
enough	كافى	order (ed)	يطلب / يأمر
outside	بالخارج		

Useful Phrases

have money	يملك مالاً	spend money	ينفق مالاً
have a choice	لديه اختيار	spend time	يقضي وقت
have time	لديه وقت	waste money	يهدر (يضيع) المال
save money	يدخر المال	waste time	يهدر (يضيع) الوقت
save time	يوفر الوقت	wait for a delivery	ينتظر توصيل (طلب)
stay outside	يبقى بالخارج	live on the moon	يعيش على القمر
try eating fruit	يجرب تناول الفاكهة	have flying cars	يمتلك سيارات طائرة
understand a lesson	يفهم درس	have no illnesses	ليس لديه أمراض
go / travel in / through time	يذهب / يسافر عبر الزمن	explore the bottom of the sea	يستكشف قاع البحر
watch videos online	يشاهد فيديوهات عبر الإنترنت	spend (time) on screens	يقضي (وقت) أمام شاشات
check social media	يتفحص وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	have eye problems	يعاني من مشاكل في البصر
get enough sleep	يحصل على قدر نوم كافى	spend hours playing	يقضي ساعات في اللعب




If / When for future predictions and giving advice
If / When
will + inf.
should / shouldn't + inf.
1 Talking about new inventions
2 Making predictions in the future
3 Talking about technology
A: What types of technology do you use every day?
B: I think I am addicted to ......
A: What do you use them for?
B: I spend hours watching / playing ......
A: Do you have any problems with technology?
B: I think I'm addicted to my phone!
4 Giving positive opinions
- ...... is a good idea.
- If you use ... well, it should teach you + inf ...
- If you don't become addicted to ... you will be fine.
AltFwok. موقع التفوق



5 Giving negative opinions

طاء آراء سلبية

عطاء آراء سلبية بخصوص شئ تستخدمه

- It isn't a good idea to + inf.
- From my point of view, ...can + inf.
- In my opinion,..... is / can be bad for.....

General Exercises on Unit 7

البحيرة - رشيد 2022

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed is talking to Adham about a mobile.

Ahmed : Is it your new mobile?

Adham : ❶ ....

Ahmed : When did you buy it?

Adham : ❷ ....

Ahmed : ❸ ....

Adham : To study my lessons on it.

Ahmed : ❹ ....

Adham : Yes, it has a lot of games.

Ahmed : How much does it cost?

Adham : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When you feel tired, you .... have a break.

   a will b shouldn't c not d should

2. My little sister is .... to sweets. She always wants to eat them! WB

   a damaged b addicted c broken d hated

3. People need .... to run machines.

   a electricity b flash c light d air

4. We are really hungry. We are waiting for the ....

   a trip b bus c picnic d delivery

5. Do you think that there will be many .... in your English homework? WB

   a correct b corrections c invent d inventions

6. I think people will visit other planets one day, but it is .... to go to the sun. WB

   a possible b probable c easy d impossible

7. The door was very heavy, so we had to .... it open. WB

   a call b pull c lock d look

8. Don't touch the ...., or the machine will start. WB

   a blackboard b glasses c telescope d lever

9. When they arrived at the hotel, they decided to .... its large gardens. WB

   a invent b explore c expect d export

10. The mobile is the greatest .... القليوبية - طوخ 2022

    a invitation b discovery c invention d translation

11. .... media are websites and apps that let people talk to each other online. WB

    a Social b Careful c Electric d Expensive

12. We can use solar .... to make electricity. WB

    a doors b windows c panels d rooms

13. If I go to the shops on Saturday, I .... some new headphones. WB

    a buys b bought c would buy d will buy

14. If you want to get to the park quickly, you .... the bus. WB

    a would take b take c should take d took

15. If you go to the Egyptian Museum, you .... see Ali because he is in Luxor. WB

    a should b will c won't d don't

16. We won't go to the beach this weekend if it .... very windy. WB

    a is b will be c was d should be

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. You .... (be) fit if you do some exercise.
2. If you .... (didn't) leave now, you will be late for school.

3. I .... (punish) Sameh when I meet him tomorrow.

4. Hala will feel happy when she .... (visit) her grandparents.

5. The world .... (be) different in the future.

4 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

to your friend Fatma telling her about a problem you had with an online delivery

- Your friend's email address is fatma77@gmail.com.
- Your name is Mariam and your email address is mariam80@hotmail.co

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الالكتروني:

- Why do you write this email?
- When was the delivery?
- What did you order?
- What was the problem?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I'm writing to tell you about ....
- I ordered ....
- The delivery was ....
- I'm still waiting for ....

Azhar Exercises

تمرينات الأزهر الشريف

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. It's important not to become addicted to ....
a speed b video games c technology d social media

2. Try taking a .... every day for an hour or more.
a break b headache c game d time

2 Supply the missing parts in the following mini-dialogues:

1- Adel : Do you agree that flying cars will be very useful in Egypt?
Basem : ....

2- Tamer : ....?
Hend : If I finish my homework early, I'll play video games.

3- Amr : What types of technology do you use every day?
Ramy : ....

4- Elham : ....?
Faten : From my point of view, technology can be bad for your health.

3 Write a paragraph of FIVE(5) sentences on:

"Life in the future"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What do you think life will be like in the future?
- What will people be more addicted to?
- What will modern devices help people to do?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Life in the future will be ....
- People will be more addicted to ....
- Modern devices will help people to ....

Paragraphs & Emails

Paragraphs

1- Are you for or against online shopping?

Shopping online is great! Firstly, it saves time. Most people don't want to spend much time travelling to the shops. They can stay at home and buy the things they want in a few minutes. Secondly, they have more choices online. Also, if more people shop online, there will be fewer cars on roads and less pollution! However, some people don't like online shopping. They like to try the things they are buying first. Also, they don't like to waste time waiting for a delivery.

2- How do you think life will change in the future?

What will happen in the future? This is a question most of us ask. For me, I think travelling in time will be impossible. I don't think we will live on the moon. It's impossible. I think we'll have flying cars. I hope we will have no illnesses. I think scientists will explore the bottom of the sea. They may discover new animals and new kinds of fish. I think life in the future is still a secret.

3- Life in the future (Azhar)

Technology changes the world. People will use social media more than they do today. They will be able to travel in time by using time machines. They will have flying cars. They will live on the moon.

4- Positive and negative sides of using technology

Using technology has become important in our life. Most of our activities need technology. Using technology is sometimes positive. It saves effort and time. The negative side of using technology is that it sometimes wastes our money and time. Playing computer games is an example of that. But should schools use computer games in the classroom? I think it'll be positive if it is related to teaching children. They will be more interested and excited, but this should be controlled well.

Emails

- A problem you had with an online delivery

From : mariam08@hotmail.com.
To : fatma77@gmail.com.
Subject : A problem with an online delivery

Dear Fatma,

I am writing to tell you about a problem I had with an online delivery. You know I like online shopping. It saves me time. I ordered a new laptop computer three weeks ago. The delivery was yesterday but I am still waiting. I need to get it as soon as possible. I emailed the seller and he/she replied that he/she would send it as soon as possible.

Yours faithfully,
Mariam

Unit 7 Test



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال فى آخر الكتاب

1. Online shopping is ....!
   a bad b light c great d heavy
2. Online shopping saves the speaker's ....
   a time b money c water d gas
3. The speaker doesn't want to spend lots of time .... to the shops.
   a walking b running c travelling d flying
4. The speaker can stay at .... and buy the things he/she wants in a few minutes.
   a farm b zoo c school d home

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

A presenter is talking to Mustafa about technology.

Presenter : What do you think of technology?
Mustafa : 1 ....
Presenter : 2 ....?
Mustafa : Because people can spend much time on online games!
Presenter : 3 ....?
Mustafa : Yes, I do. I like playing games with my friends.
Presenter : What else do people do on the internet?
Mustafa : 4 ....
Presenter : Thank you for this information.
Mustafa : 5 ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

James and Tom are scientists from England. They came to Egypt by plane [illegible] stayed at the Sheraton in Cairo for four days. In Cairo, they went to Cairo University [illegible] meet some scientists. The two scientists talked about their new invention. It was [illegible] changing roads into solar panels! The invention used strong glass that people [illegible] drive on and make electricity at the same time. The scientists at Cairo University [illegible] the idea very much. They thought it was great.

James and Tom visited the Egyptian Museum, the Cairo Tower and the Pyramids [illegible] They also went shopping at Khan Al-Khalili. They bought some nice presents for [illegible] friends. Then, they went to Luxor and Aswan where they spent three days.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage?
....
2. What was James and Tom's invention about?
....
3. What do you think of the invention?
....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. James and Tom spent .... in Cairo.
   a) a week   b) three days   c) four days   d) two days
5. James and Tom are from ....
   a) Egypt   b) England   c) the USA   d) Turkey
6. The invention would help people get ....
   a) air   b) food   c) water   d) energy

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Scientists think this medicine .... useful for Coronavirus. (2022 - [illegible])
   a) should   b) are   c) will be   d) were
2. .... it be cold if I travel to England?
   a) Will   b) Does   c) Is   d) Was
3. When you .... online games, you should check that you can't buy anything [illegible]
   a) played   b) plays   c) playing   d) play
4. Do you .... that the weather will get hotter in the future?
   a) predict   b) prediction   c) invent   d) invention
5. It was cloudy this morning, but the clouds soon .... when the sun came out.
   a) appeared   b) disappeared   c) hurt   d) damaged
6. This email is in Spanish. Could you .... it for me? (2022 - البحيرة)
   a) test   b) say   c) waste   d) translate
7. I asked my teacher for help because I couldn't .... a new lesson.
   a) stay   b) visit   c) understand   d) try
8. The tourists .... the Pyramids if they are in Cairo for the first time.
   a) would visit   b) are visited   c) visited   d) should visit
9. You shouldn't .... outside for too long if it is very hot in the desert.
   a) visit   b) stay   c) swim   d) predict
10. People who are addicted to eating sweets should .... eating fruit instead.
   a) try   b) stop   c) buy   d) sell

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. This machine won't .... (being) able to fly very high. SB
2. If you .... (not do) exercise, you won't stay healthy.
3. I won't watch TV tonight if I .... (went) out. SB
4. If I buy everything online, I .... (not be able to) go shopping with my friends. SB

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on: WB (أجاب عنه قبل الامتحان)

"Positive and negative sides of using technology"

....
....
....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:
- **What do you think of technology?**
- **What positive and negative sides of technology are?**
- **Do you think schools should use computer games in the classroom?**
- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- **Technology is** ....
- **The positive / negative sides of technology are** ....



Objectives

Reading
Texts about what people eat; a healthy food quiz; a recipe; an article about unusual food; an article about a healthy island

Writing
An email about a favourite snack; a paragraph about a country's diet; a paragraph about sleep

Listening
A discussion about favourite snacks; a conversation at dinner; teenagers sharing their worries about food and health

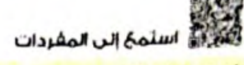
Speaking
Describing food; offering, accepting and refusing food politely; giving advice about being healthy

Language
a lot, a little and a few

Life Skills
Self-management



Key Vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات

...ll	ممتلئ (شبعان)	allergic to	لديه حساسية من
...ack	وجبة خفيفة	energy	طاقة
...st food	الوجبات السريعة		

Food and Snacks

...afel	الفلافل	rojak	الروجاك (وجبة فواكة شعبية بماليزيا)
...va beans	فول أخضر	sfenj	السفنج (فطائر حلوة شعبية بالمغرب)
...cken	لحم الدجاج/دجاجة	hawawshi	حواوشي (أكلة مصرية)
...zza	بيتزا	samosa	السمبوسة (وجبة حارة شعبية بالهند)
...ts	مكسرات	chips	رقائق بطاطس مقلية
...sta	مكرونة	olives	زيتون
...ices	توابل - بهارات	rice pudding	أرز باللبن
...termelon	بطيخ	chocolate	شيكولاته
...apes	عنب	vegetable	خضار

Food Adjectives

...licious	لذيذ	spicy	متبل (كثير التوابل)/حار
...icy	كثير العصارة	sweet	حلو المذاق
...lty	مالح	popular	شائع - محبوب

Vocabulary

...hirsty	عطشان	athletics team	فريق ألعاب القوى
...Which ...?	أي...؟/أيهما...؟	practice	تدريب
...ost	معظم	teenager	مراهق (شخص عمره من ١٣ الى ١٩ سنة)
...owever	بالرغم من ذلك	plate	طبق
...pe = kind	نوع	power	قوة/طاقة
...etball	لعبة كرة الشبكة	fat	دهن
...areful	حريص	oven	فرن
...ashing up	غسيل الأطباق	describe (d)	يصف
...ucky	محظوظ	invite (d)	يدعو (المناسبة)
...quash	لعبة الإسكواش	taste (d) (n)	يتذوق - مذاق
...eft (adj)	متبقى		



Words & Meanings

Word	Meaning	Arabic Meaning
allergic لديه حساسية	- having a condition[1] that makes you feel ill after you eat, breathe or touch something	[illegible] / حالة / محتويا على
energy طاقة	- something that gives you the power[2] to do things - the ability to do a lot of work or activity without becoming tire[d]	[illegible]
fast food وجبات سريعة	- food that is quick and easy to buy or cook - food that can be served very quickly in a café or restaura[nt] because it is already prepared	[illegible]
juicy كثير العصارة	full of juice	
salty مالح	tasting of salt or containing[3] a lot of salt	
spicy متبل/حار	containing the tastes from spices	



Expressions & Prepositions

Expressions		Prepositions	
go running	يمارس رياضة الجرى	on the way home	[في] الطريق للمنزل
get home	يصل المنزل	(be) on a team	[ي]كون عضو فى فريق
get ill	يمرض	food with a good taste	[ط]عام ذو مذاق جيد
give energy	يعطى طاقة	eat .... with	[ي]تناول ... مع ....
do the washing up	يغسل الأطباق	eat ... for breakfast	[ي]تناول ... على الإفطار
have a rest	يستريح	thanks for	[ش]كراً على
make falafel	يطهو فلافل [طعمية]	invite ... to ...	[ي]دعو ... على ...
		put ... on ...	[يض]يف ... إلى ... (اكلة)

Word / Meaning / Opposite

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
lucky	محظوظ	fortunate	unlucky	[غير] محظوظ
popular	شائع - محبوب	famous	unpopular	[غير] محبوب
delicious	لذيذ	tasty	terrible	[illegible]

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
put	يضع	put	put
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten



Language Notes

1) However

تستخدم (However) للربط بين فكرتين/جملتين متناقضتين:

Ex. Omar is short. However, he is good at basketball.

2) so / because

تستخدم (so) للربط بين جملتين لتوضيح نتيجة حدث معين كما يلى:

السبب → so → النتيجة

Ex. I don't like nuts, so I won't eat that cake.

تستخدم (because) للربط بين جملتين لتوضيح سبب حدث معين كما يلى:

النتيجة → because → السبب

Ex. Nada was sad because she failed her exam.

3) Verbs + مفعول + to + inf.

بعض الأفعال مثل (ask - advise - tell) يمكن أن يتبعها مفعول ثم (to + inf.)

Ex. Ahmed asked me to describe my favourite snack.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He was really ill. ...., he went to school.
   a) So b) As c) Because d) However
2. He put on weight, ... he decided to join a sports centre.
   a) so b) because c) to d) for
3. Magid felt happy .... he passed his exams with high marks.
   a) so b) because c) to d) at
4. My father advised me .... hard.
   a) study b) studying c) to study d) studied

Audioscript SB Page (13)

استمع إلى النصوص

Speaker 1:

Sfenj[1] is a kind of cake from Morocco[2]. It has lots of sugar and fat[3] in it and very sweet, so it is not very healthy, but I love it! We sometimes eat sfenj for breakfast and sometimes as a snack[4] with some tea or a cup of coffee.

Speaker 2:

In many places, people use fava beans[5] to make falafel. They are the best! Falafel is really delicious[6] and it is very popular[7] in Egypt.

Speaker 3:

In Britain[8], we often buy chips from a fish and chip shop[9]. People often put some salt on their chips. I don't put any salt on mine because I don't like salty food. It is not very healthy.

Speaker 4

You can buy samosas[10] on the street everywhere in India[11]. Samosas have spicy[12] vegetables inside them. People often eat samosas for a snack. I love to eat them with some hot tea.

Speaker 5:

Rojak[13] is a fruit snack you can buy in the street in Malaysia[14] and people also make it at home. Rojak is very sweet[15] and juicy[16]. People use different spices in different parts of the country, but it's alwa delicious.

Arabic Meaning

[illegible] إسفنج (فطائر مغربية)
[illegible] دولة المغرب
[illegible] دهن
[illegible] وجبة خفيفة
[illegible] فول أخضر
[illegible] لذيذ
[illegible] محبوب/شائع
[illegible] بريطانيا
[illegible] محل سمك ومقرمشات
[illegible] السمبوسة (وجبة هندية)
[illegible] دولة الهند
[illegible] متبل/حار
[illegible] الروجاك (طبق من ماليزيا)
[illegible] دولة ماليزيا
[illegible] حلو الطعم
[illegible] كثير العصارة







SB Page (15)

Grandmother : Would you like some more chicken[1], Amal?
Amal : Yes, please, just a little.
Grandmother : And would you like some more beans, too?
Amal : Yes, thank you, grandmother ... stop, that's enough[2]! I mustn't eat too much.
Huda : Do you like chicken, Amal?
Amal : Yes, I love grandmother's spicy chicken. It's the best!
Huda : Thank you, grandmother, that was a delicious dinner[3]!
Grandmother : Would you girls like some more rice pudding[4]?
Huda : No, thank you, I'm really full[5].
Grandmother : What about you, Amal?
Amal : Thank you, but I really couldn't. Why don't you have a rest[6] now, grandmother? Huda and I can take the plates[7] to the kitchen and we'll do the washing up[8].

Arabic Meaning

١- لحم الدجاج
٢- كاف
٣- عشاء
٤- أرز باللبن
٥- ممتلئ (شبعان)
٦- راحة
٧- أطباق
٨- غسيل الأطباق

WB Page (78)

Grandma : Would you like some cake, Leila?
Leila : Yes, please, just a little. I mustn't eat too much.
Grandma : Would you like a cup of tea with the cake?
Leila : Thank you, I like tea.
Grandma : Do you like sugar in your tea?
Leila : Yes, please, but that's enough. I only like a little sugar.
Grandma : Here you are, tea with cake!





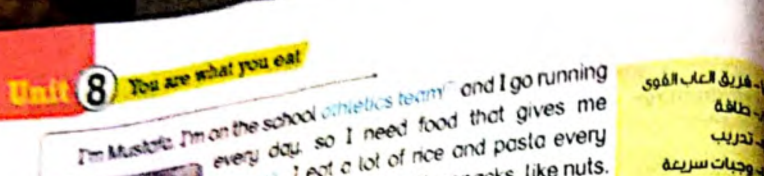
What I eat

My name's Imad. I am allergic to[1] nuts[2], so I must be careful[3] what I eat. If I eat something with nuts in it, I will get ill! For most of the time, this is not a problem. However[4], I like sweet things, and there are a few types[5] of cake that have nuts in them, so I can't eat those.

I'm lucky[6] because my mother makes me many different, delicious things to eat at home. She says I should eat more vegetables and salad. I have a lot of fruit, and that's healthy!

Arabic Meaning

١- لديه حساسية
٢- مكسرات
٣- حريص
٤- بالرغم من ذلك
٥- أنواع
٦- محظوظ



Unit 8 You are what you eat

I'm Mustafa. I'm on the school athletics team[1] and I go running every day, so I need food that gives me energy[2]. I eat a lot of rice and pasta every day. I also eat a few healthy snacks, like nuts. After athletics practice[3], my friends and I sometimes get some fast food[4], like pizzas, on the way home, but I try not to eat too much!

١- فريق ألعاب القوى
٢- طاقة
٣- تدريب
٤- وجبات سريعة

WB Page (77)

New Message

Hi Tom,

How are you? Thanks for your last email. You asked me to describe[1] my favourite snack. I love hawawshi[2] and I often have it when I get home from school. It is easy to make. First, you need some nice bread[3]. Then you put some meat and vegetables inside the bread. You can put some salt on it, too. I don't like to have any salt, though, because it is not very healthy. Now you cook it in the oven[4]. It is delicious! Do you have any favourite snacks? Describe them to me in your next[5] email!

Best wishes

Osama

Arabic Meaning

١- يصف
٢- حواوشي
٣- خبز
٤- فرن
٥- قادم

WB Page (78)

Judy plays squash[1] every week and needs to be healthy, so what does she eat? She is allergic to nuts, so she doesn't eat any cakes because they sometimes have nuts in them. She eats a lot of fish because it helps to make her strong. A few hours before a netball game[2], she always eats some fish with a lot of pasta, because this gives her energy. When she is playing netball, she drinks a little water. Then, after the game, she eats a few sweets. She does not have many because she knows they are not very good for her.

Arabic Meaning

١- لعبة الاسكواش
٢- لعبة كرة الشبكة

Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I met three of my friends .... my way home.
   a at b from c of d on
2. Carrots and potatoes are ....
   a fruit b nuts c vegetables d meat
3. We use .... to give food a special taste.
   a spices b stars c skies d spaces
4. That piece of meat is really .... I can't eat it.
   a delicious b salty c popular d fast
5. I'm .... to sweets, so I never eat them.
   a kind b polite c allergic d hungry

Homework Exercises

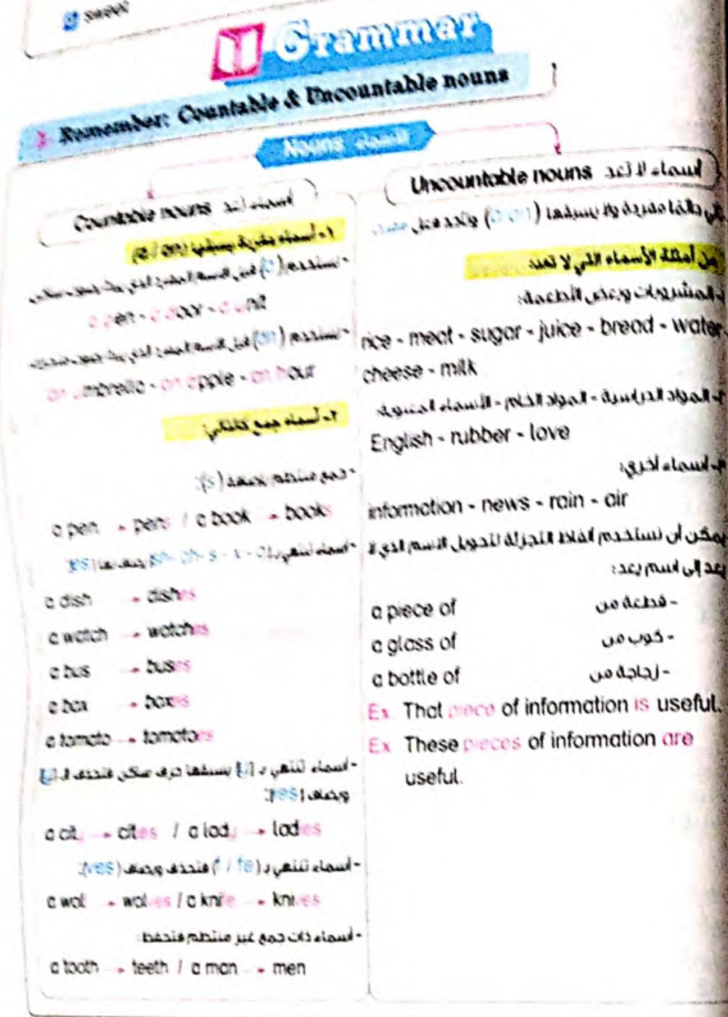
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. The water in the sea is .... SB
   a sweet b spicy c juicy d salty
2. .... is an example of fast food. WB
   a Cheese b Pasta c Pizza d Cake
3. Sfenj has lots of fat and sugar in it and it is very .... SB
   a high b sweet c salty d short
4. Falafel is really .... and it is very popular in Egypt. SB
   a horrible b terrible c bad d delicious
5. Many people are allergic to ...., so they don't eat cakes. WB
   a pizzas b nuts c salad d salt
6. Oranges and watermelons are .... البحيرة - التحرير 2022
   a juicy b hot c spicy d salty

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. .... food is prepared quickly and is usually unhealthy.
   a Helpful b Fast c Slow d Famous
8. I always eat fish with pasta because this gives me ....
   a sugar b snow c sweet d energy



9. You should put the bread in a hot .... for 5 minutes.
a oven b fridge c screen d laptop

10. Noha likes .... foods, so she adds much pepper to her food.
a sweet b spicy c salty d full

1 Grammar

Remember: Countable & Uncountable nouns

Nouns الأسماء

Countable nouns أسماء تعد

1- أسماء مفردة يسبقها (a / an)

- نستخدم (a) قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بحرف ساكن

a pen - a door - a unit

- نستخدم (an) قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بحرف متحرك

an umbrella - an apple - an hour

2- أسماء جمع قانوني

- جمع منتظم بإضافة (s)

a pen → pens / a book → books

- أسماء تنتهي بـ (ch - sh - s - x - o) … (es)

a dish → dishes
a watch → watches
a bus → buses
a box → boxes
a tomato → tomatoes

- أسماء تنتهي بـ (y) يسبقها حرف ساكن فتحذف الـ y وتضاف (ies)

a city → cities / a lady → ladies

- أسماء تنتهي بـ (f / fe) فتحذف وتضاف (ves)

a wolf → wolves / a knife → knives

- أسماء ذات جمع غير منتظم شاذة

a tooth → teeth / a man → men

Uncountable nouns أسماء لا تعد

هي دائما مفردة ولا يسبقها (a / an) …

من أمثلة الأسماء التي لا تعد:

1- المشروبات وبعض الأطعمة

rice - meat - sugar - juice - bread - water - cheese - milk

2- المواد الدراسية - المواد الخام - الأسماء المعنوية

English - rubber - love

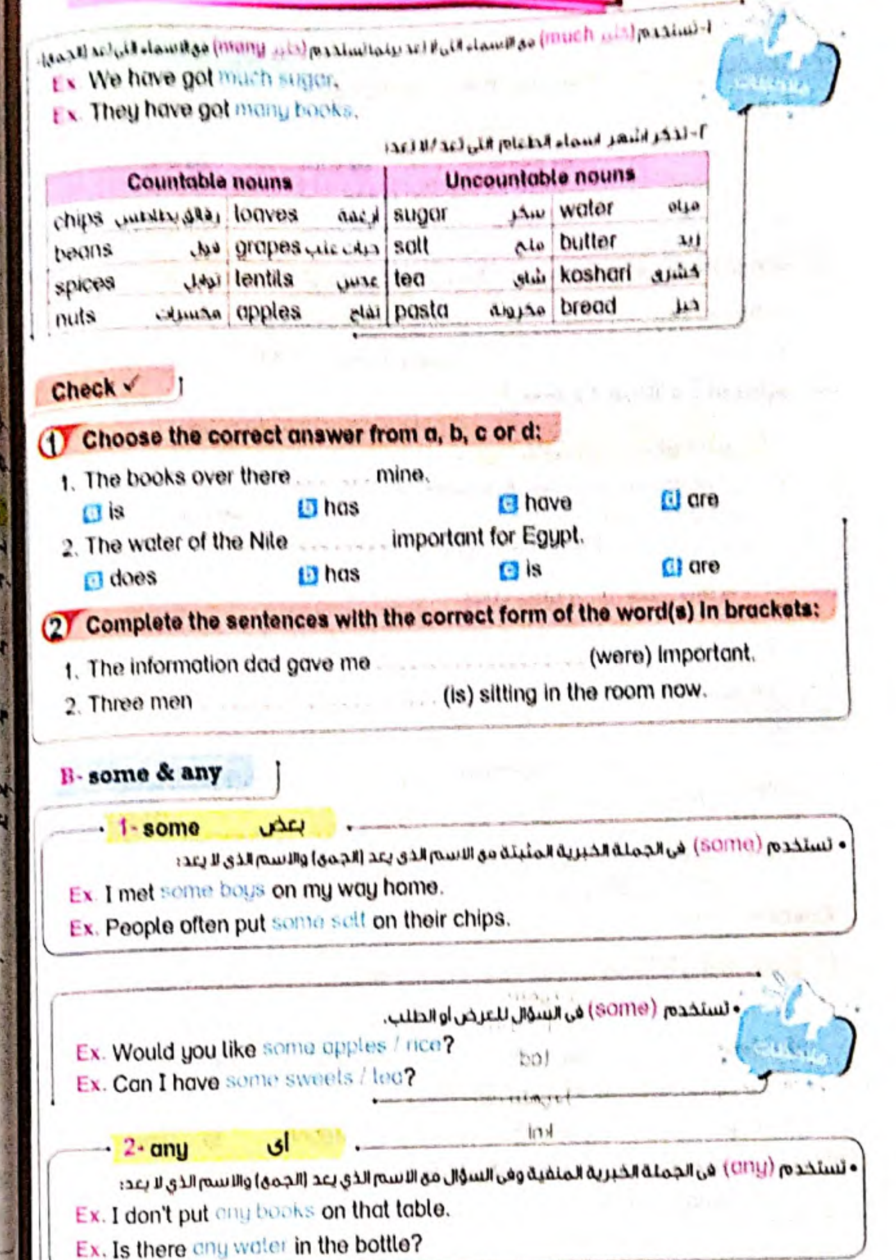
3- أسماء أخرى

information - news - rain - air

يمكن أن نستخدم ألفاظ التجزئة لتحويل الاسم الذي لا يعد إلى اسم يعد:

a piece of - قطعة من
a glass of - كوب من
a bottle of - زجاجة من

Ex. That piece of information is useful.
Ex. These pieces of information are useful.



1- نستخدم (much كثير) مع الأسماء التي لا تعد بينما نستخدم (many كثير) مع الأسماء التي تعد الجمع.

Ex. We have got much sugar.
Ex. They have got many books.

2- تذكر أشهر أسماء الطعام التي تعد / لا تعد:

Countable nouns		Uncountable nouns	
chips رقائق بطاطس	loaves أرغفة	sugar سكر	water مياه
beans فول	grapes حبات عنب	salt ملح	butter زبد
spices توابل	lentils عدس	tea شاي	koshari كشري
nuts مكسرات	apples تفاح	pasta مكرونة	bread خبز

Check ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The books over there .... mine.
a is b has c have d are

2. The water of the Nile .... important for Egypt.
a does b has c is d are

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The information dad gave me .... (were) important.
2. Three men .... (is) sitting in the room now.

B- some & any

1- some بعض

• تستخدم (some) في الجملة الخبرية المثبتة مع الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع) والاسم الذي لا يعد:

Ex. I met some boys on my way home.
Ex. People often put some salt on their chips.

• تستخدم (some) في السؤال للعرض أو الطلب.

Ex. Would you like some apples / rice?
Ex. Can I have some sweets / tea?

2- any أي

• تستخدم (any) في الجملة الخبرية المنفية وفي السؤال مع الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع) والاسم الذي لا يعد:

Ex. I don't put any books on that table.
Ex. Is there any water in the bottle?

Check ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I really don't have .... money now.
   a some b many c a lot d any
2. Dad bought .... meat on his way home.
   a any b some c a lot d many

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Is there .... (some) sugar in the fridge?
2. We have .... (any) bread in the kitchen.

C- a lot of / a little / a few

1- a lot of كثيراً من

تستخدم (a lot of) غالباً في الجملة المثبتة مع الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع) ومع الاسم الذي لا يعد:

Ex. I have got a lot of oranges.

Ex. They eat a lot of rice and pasta.

2- a few قليل / a little قليل

تستخدم (a few) مع الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع):

تستخدم (a little) مع الاسم الذي لا يعد:

Ex. I eat a few snacks.

Ex. We have a little salad.

ملاحظات

١- تستخدم كلاً من (a few / a little) بمعنى (قليل ولكنه يكفي):

Ex. We have a little milk. It's enough for us all.

٢- تستخدم كلاً من (few / little) بمعنى (قليل ولا يكفي):

Ex. We have little milk. You must go and buy some more.

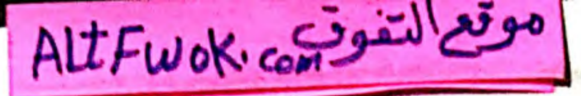
Check ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... boys liked eating pasta.
   a A few b A lot c Much d Any
2. A: Did you have any sugar? B: Yes, I had ....
   a many b a little c a lot of d a few

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. This book will take you .... (a few) time to read.
2. .... (A little) students in my school visited London.



D- like / would like

• يستخدم الفعل (like) للتعبير عما نفضله أو نحبه:

like + n./ v-ing / to + inf.

Ex. I like orange juice but I don't like tea.

Ex. He likes to have (having) fava beans for breakfast.

• تستخدم (would like) لتقديم العروض ولطلب الاشياء:

would like + n. / to + inf.

Ex. What would you like for breakfast? (To make offers)

- I'd like (to have) some beans, please. (To ask for things)

• تستخدم كلاهما في السؤال كما يلي:

Do / Does + subject + like + n / v-ing / to + inf.....?

Ex. Do you like (drinking) orange juice?

Ex. Does your dad like to walk to work?

Would + subject + like + n / to + inf....?

Ex. Would you like (to have) some water?

ملاحظات

1- I like tea, but I don't like coffee.

• استخدمنا الفعل (like) هنا لأن الجملة تعبر عن شئ نفضله بشكل عام [لا يمكن استخدام (would like) هنا].

2- A: Would you like a sandwich? B: No, thank you.

• استخدمنا (Would .... like) هنا لان الجملة تعبر عن تقديم عرض في موقف محدد وليس كلام عام عن التفضيل.

Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mustafa always eats .... healthy snacks.
   a a lot b a few c much d a little
2. I don't have .... books.
   a much b lots c some d any
3. Samir is a good athlete, so he eats .... fast food.
   a a few b few c a little d much
4. We have a lot of cheese. Would you like ....?
   a some b a few c a lot of d many

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. There's .... (a few) juice in the glass.
2. There aren't .... (some) students in the classroom.
3. I ate .... (a little) sandwiches. They were really delicious.

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. I'm not very hungry, but I'd like .... olives, please.
   a a lot b a little c any d a few
2. My grandmother spends .... time cooking in the kitchen.
   a a lot of b a few c lots d many
3. Has samosa got .... sugar or salt in it?
   a some b any c a lot d many
   (... - طوخ 2022)
4. Let's not go to the beach. There's .... rain today.
   a too many b a few c too much d not enough
   (... السادات - 2022)
5. Would you like .... cold orange juice?
   a a few b lots c few d some
   (... - التحرير 2022)
6. He put .... salt on the chips.
   a a few b a little c any d lots

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. A: "There are a few oranges left. .... you like some?" B: "Yes, please."
   a Had b Were c Would d Are
8. Would you like .... chips?
   a some b little c a lot d an
9. There was .... cheese in the kitchen when dad asked to eat.
   a a few b any c a lot d a little
10. There isn't .... milk in the fridge. Could you go and buy some?
    a some b many c any d a few
11. I have a .... money.
    a some b lot of c many d any

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The road is very busy. There are .... (much) cars.
   (القليوبية - طوخ 2022)
2. A:" .... (Would) you like coffee?" B: "No, I don't. I prefer tea." SB
3. There is only .... (a few) food in the kitchen.
4. There aren't .... (some) vegetables in the fridge.

Speaking

1 Talking about your favourite food الحديث عن طعامك المفضل

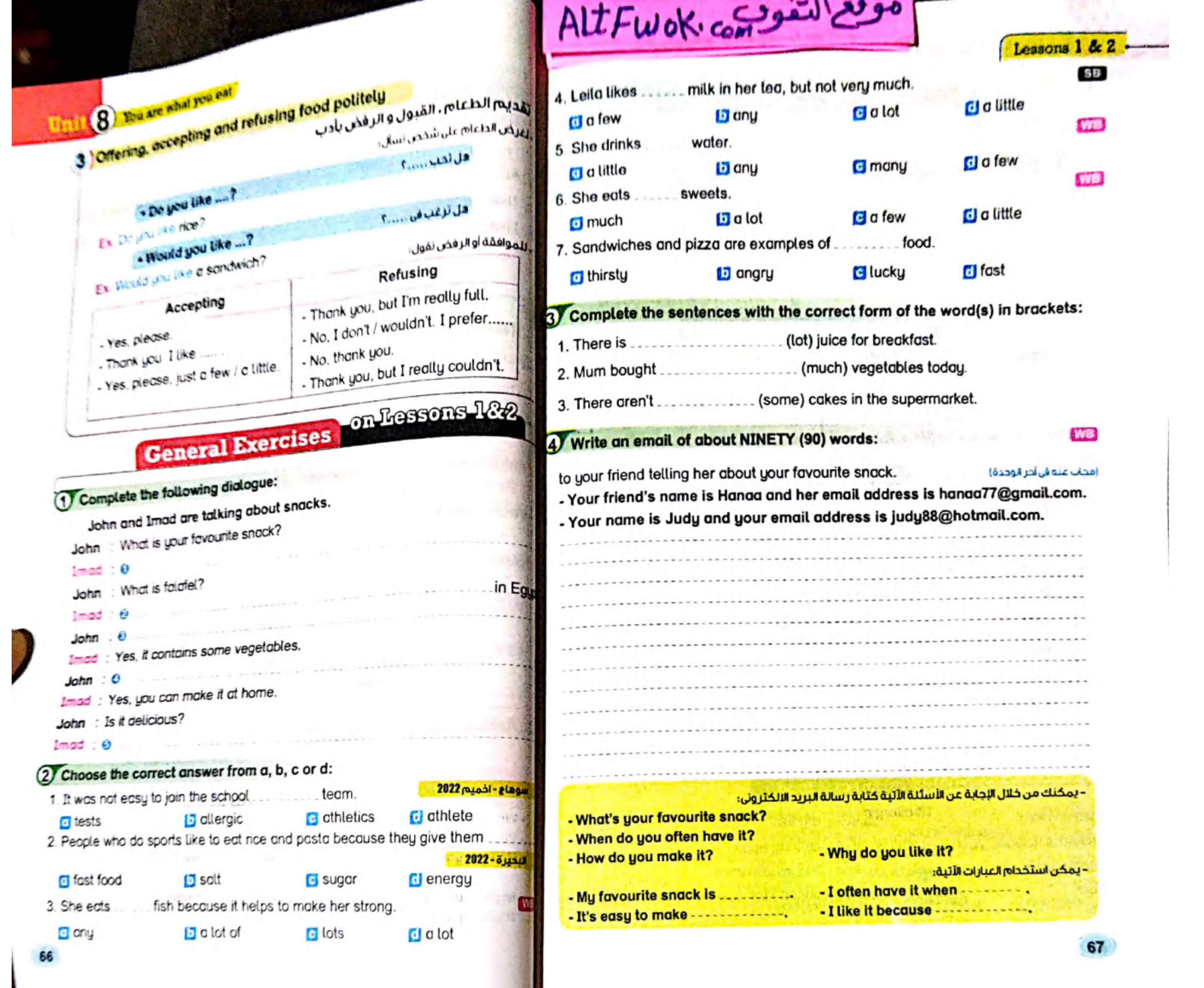
- نسأل ونجيب عن طعامك المفضل كالآتي:

Question	Answer
A: What's your favourite juicy fruit? ما هي فاكهتك المفضلة المليئة بالعصارة؟	B: ...... is my favourite juicy fruit. ...... هي فاكهتي المفضلة المليئة بالعصارة.
A: Which is your favourite snack? أي الوجبات الخفيفة المفضلة لك؟	B: ...... is my favourite snack. ...... هي وجبتي الخفيفة المفضلة.
A: Is your favourite snack juicy, spicy or sweet? هل وجبتك الخفيفة المفضلة مليئة بالعصارة أم حارة أم حلوة الطعم؟	B: My favourite snack is ...... وجبتي الخفيفة......
A: Is it healthy or unhealthy? هل هي صحية أم غير صحية؟	B: It is healthy / unhealthy. إنها صحية / غير صحية.
A: Has it got any sugar or salt in it? هل مضاف إليها أي سكر أو ملح؟	B: Yes, it has. - No, it hasn't.

2 Asking and answering about what you like and dislike

السؤال والاجابة عما تحب وما لا تحب.

Question	Answer
A: What would you like for breakfast? ماذا تحب على الإفطار؟	B: I'd like some beans, please. أود تناول بعض الفول من فضلك.
A: Would you like some tea? هل ترغب في بعض الشاي؟	B: Yes, please. نعم، من فضلك.



3 Offering, accepting and refusing food politely

تقديم الطعام ، القبول و الرفض بأدب

لعرض الطعام على شخص نسأل:

- **Do you like ....?** هل تحب .....؟

Ex. Do you like rice?

- **Would you like ...?** هل ترغب في .....؟

Ex. Would you like a sandwich?

للموافقة أو الرفض نقول:

Accepting	Refusing
- Yes, please.	- Thank you, but I'm really full.
- Thank you. I like	- No, I don't / wouldn't. I prefer......
- Yes, please, just a few / a little.	- No, thank you.
	- Thank you, but I really couldn't.

General Exercises on Lessons 1&2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

John and Imad are talking about snacks.

John : What is your favourite snack?

Imad : ❶ ....

John : What is falafel?

Imad : ❷ .... in Egy...

John : ❸ ....

Imad : Yes, it contains some vegetables.

John : ❹ ....

Imad : Yes, you can make it at home.

John : Is it delicious?

Imad : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It was not easy to join the school .... team. (سوهاج - اخميم 2022)
   a tests b allergic c athletics d athlete
2. People who do sports like to eat rice and pasta because they give them .... (البحيرة - 2022)
   a fast food b salt c sugar d energy
3. She eats .... fish because it helps to make her strong. (WB)
   a any b a lot of c lots d a lot

4. Leila likes ...... milk in her tea, but not very much. (SB)
   a a few b any c a lot d a little
5. She drinks .... water. (WB)
   a a little b any c many d a few
6. She eats .... sweets. (WB)
   a much b a lot c a few d a little
7. Sandwiches and pizza are examples of .... food.
   a thirsty b angry c lucky d fast

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. There is .... (lot) juice for breakfast.
2. Mum bought .... (much) vegetables today.
3. There aren't .... (some) cakes in the supermarket.

4 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words: (WB)

to your friend telling her about your favourite snack. (مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

- **Your friend's name is Hanaa and her email address is hanaa77@gmail.com.**
- **Your name is Judy and your email address is judy88@hotmail.com.**

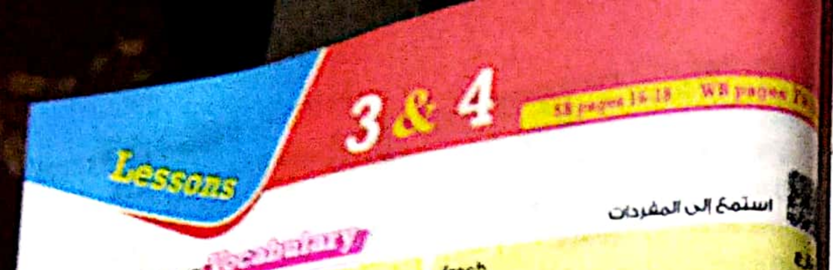
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الالكترونى:

- **What's your favourite snack?**
- **When do you often have it?**
- **How do you make it?**
- **Why do you like it?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **My favourite snack is ....**
- **I often have it when ....**
- **It's easy to make ....**
- **I like it because ....**



استمع الى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

dairy products	منتجات الألبان	fresh	
bone	عظمة	unusual	غير معتاد
protein	بروتين	butter	
delicious	لذيذ	sense	

Verbs for senses & Organs

Verb		Organ		Verb		Organ	
hear	يسمع	ear	الأذن	taste (d)	يتذوق	tongue	اللسان
see	يرى	eye	العين	smell	يشم	nose	الأنف
touch (ed)	يلمس	hand	اليد				

Cooking verbs & nouns

beat	يخفق/يضرب	(eggs - butter - milk)
chop (ped)	يقطع	(meat - vegetables - tomatoes)
fry (ied)	يقلي	(eggs - chicken)
pour (ed)	يصب	(water - tea - juice)
heat (ed)	يسخن	(beans - soup)
wash (ed)	يغسل	(beans - vegetables)
serve (d)	يقدم «طعام/شراب»	(food - lunch)
boil (ed)	يغلي/يسلق	(water - eggs)
add (ed)	يضيف	(salt - sugar)

Special food

fried chicken	دجاج مقلي	dry fish	سمك مجفف
omelette	أومليت (أكلة تحتوي على البيض وإضافات)	century eggs	بيض القرن (أكلة صينية)
champorado	الشامبرادو (أرز بالشيكولاتة)	foul mudammas	فول مدمس
tuyo	تويو (سمك مملح صغير)	durian fruit	فاكهة الدوريان (في منطقة جنوب آسيا)

Vocabulary

quiz	اختبار قصير	instructions	تعليمات
piece	قطعة	fork	شوكة
humans	البشر	soup	حساء (شوربة)
fridge	ثلاجة	square	مربع
dining room	غرفة الطعام	soft	لين (طري)
chopped	مقطع	recipe	وصفة طهي/طريقة للطبخ
bowl	سلطانية	call (ed)	يسمي
frying pan	مقلاة (طاسة القلي)		

Words & Meanings

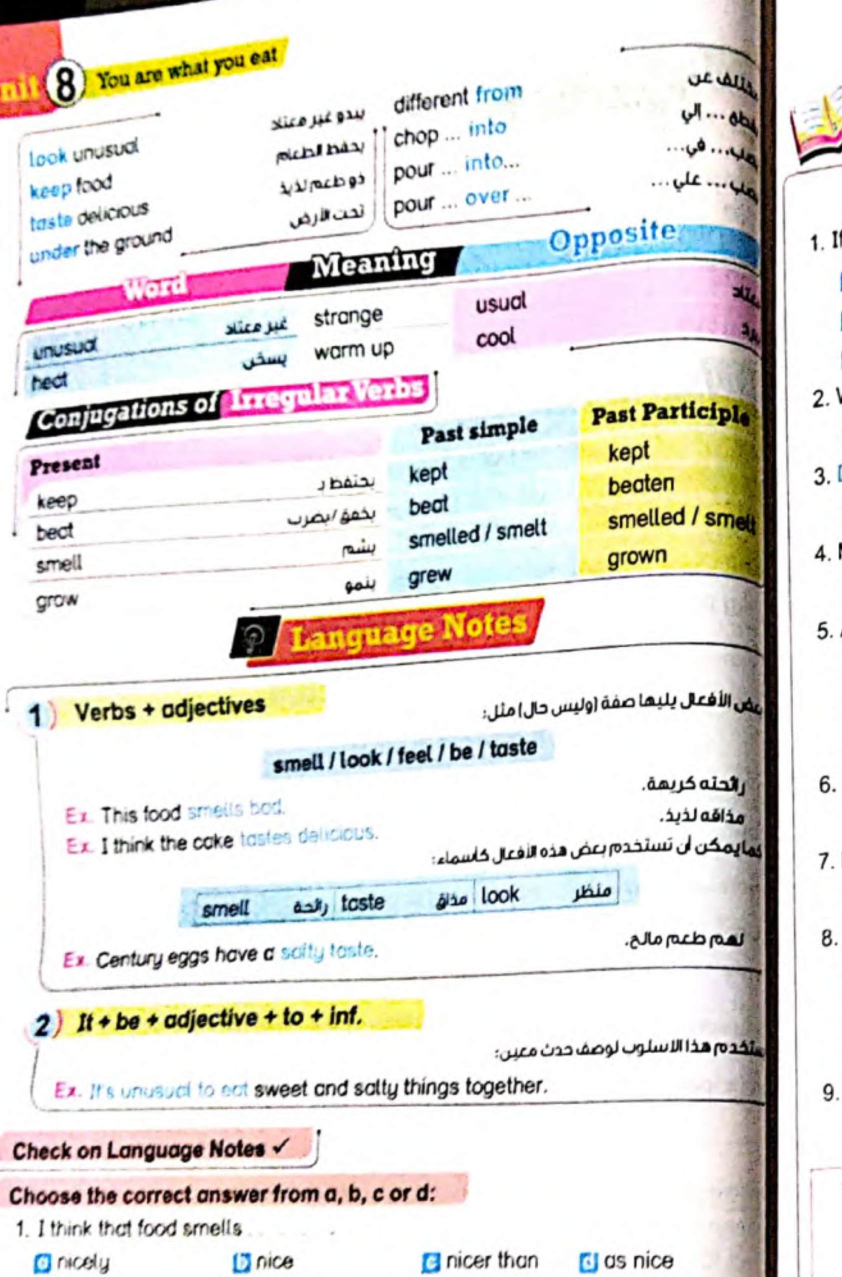
beat	يخفق	mix food quickly using a fork, wooden spoon[1], etc.
bone	عظمة	one of the hard parts of the skeleton[2] inside a person or animal
chop	يقطع	cut something into small pieces
dairy products	منتجات الألبان	things that you can eat which are made from the milk of a cow, such as cheese and butter
protein	بروتين	- one of the many things found in food such as meat, cheese, fish, or eggs, that is necessary for the body to grow and be strong
fry	يقلي	cook something in hot oil or fat
pour	يصب	make a liquid[3] flow[4] out of or into something such as a cup or bowl
serve	يقدم «طعام/شراب»	provide[5] food or drinks
smell	يشم	know what something is using your nose
taste	يتذوق	know what something is when you put it in your mouth
unusual	غير معتاد	different from others of the same type in a way that is surprising[6] or interesting
delicious	لذيذ	very nice to eat

Arabic Meaning

١- ملعقة خشبية
٢- هيكل عظمي
٣- سائل
٤- ينساب/يتدفق
٥- يزود بـ/يقدم
٦- مدهش/مفاجئ

Expressions & Prepositions

smell terrible	ذو رائحة فظيعة	serve ... with	يقدم ... مع ...
sleep well	ينام جيدًا	beat ... with	يخفق ... مع .../باستخدام ...
feel full	يشعر بالشبع	add ... to ...	يضيف ... إلى ...
have strong bones	لديه عظام قوية	take ... out of ...	يُخرج ... من ....
have a taste	له طعم	on the inside / outside	في الداخل/الخارج



Unit 8 You are what you eat

look unusual	يبدو غير معتاد	different from	يختلف عن
keep food	يحفظ الطعام	chop ... into	يقطع ... إلى
taste delicious	ذو طعم لذيذ	pour ... into...	يصب ... في ...
under the ground	تحت الأرض	pour ... over ...	يصب ... على ...

Word	Meaning		Opposite
unusual	غير معتاد	strange	usual
heat	يسخن	warm up	cool

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
keep	يحتفظ	kept	kept
beat	يهزم / يضرب	beat	beaten
smell	يشم	smelled / smelt	smelled / smelt
grow	ينمو	grew	grown

Language Notes

1) Verbs + adjectives

بعض الأفعال يليها صفة (وليس حال) مثل:

smell / look / feel / be / taste

Ex. This food smells bad. الرائحة كريهة.

Ex. I think the cake tastes delicious. مذاقه لذيذ.

كما يمكن أن تستخدم بعض هذه الأفعال كأسماء:

smell	رائحة	taste	مذاق	look	منظر

Ex. Century eggs have a salty taste. لهم طعم مالح.

2) It + be + adjective + to + inf.

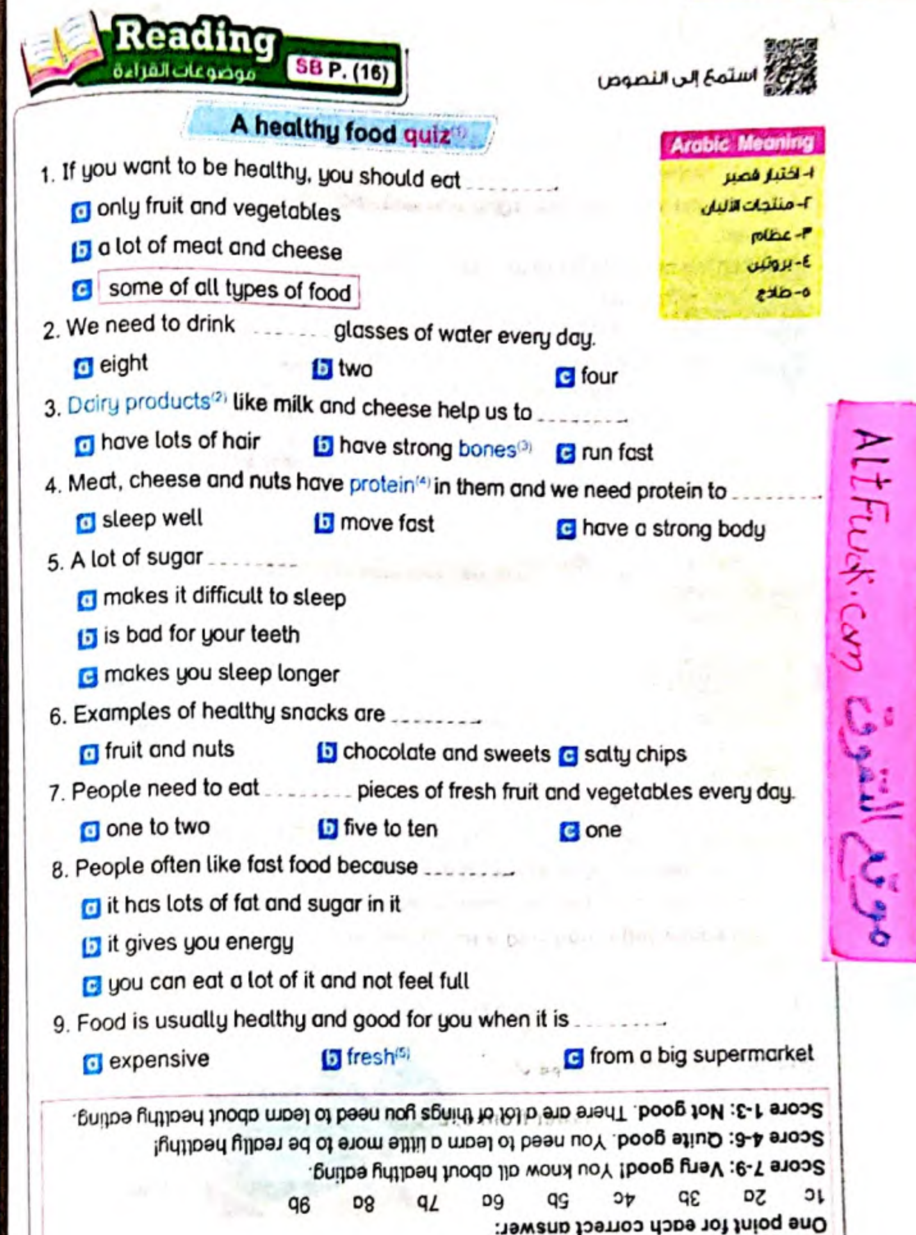
نستخدم هذا الأسلوب لوصف حدث معين:

Ex. It's unusual to eat sweet and salty things together.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I think that food smells ....
   a nicely b nice c nicer than d as nice
2. It is usual .... falafel in Egypt.
   a to eat b to eating c eats d ate



Reading موضوعات القراءة SB P. (16)

استمع إلى النصوص

A healthy food quiz[1]

Arabic Meaning
1- اختبار قصير
2- منتجات الألبان
3- عظام
4- بروتين
5- طازج

1. If you want to be healthy, you should eat ....
   a only fruit and vegetables
   b a lot of meat and cheese
   c some of all types of food
2. We need to drink .... glasses of water every day.
   a eight b two c four
3. Dairy products[2] like milk and cheese help us to ....
   a have lots of hair b have strong bones[3] c run fast
4. Meat, cheese and nuts have protein[4] in them and we need protein to ....
   a sleep well b move fast c have a strong body
5. A lot of sugar ....
   a makes it difficult to sleep
   b is bad for your teeth
   c makes you sleep longer
6. Examples of healthy snacks are ....
   a fruit and nuts b chocolate and sweets c salty chips
7. People need to eat .... pieces of fresh fruit and vegetables every day.
   a one to two b five to ten c one
8. People often like fast food because ....
   a it has lots of fat and sugar in it
   b it gives you energy
   c you can eat a lot of it and not feel full
9. Food is usually healthy and good for you when it is ....
   a expensive b fresh[5] c from a big supermarket

Answers:
One point for each correct answer:
1c 2a 3b 4c 5b 6a 7b 8a 9b
Score 7-9: Very good! You know all about healthy eating.
Score 4-6: Quite good. You need to learn a little more to be really healthy!
Score 1-3: Not good. There are a lot of things you need to learn about healthy eating.

SB Page (17)



How to make an omelette

1. Beat[1] two eggs in a bowl[2] with little milk.
2. Add a little salt to the eggs and milk.
3. Heat[3] some butter[4] in a frying pan[5].
4. Pour[6] the eggs into the frying pan and cook them in the butter.
5. When the omelette is ready, take it out of the frying pan and serve[7] with salad.

How to make a tomato salad



1. Take two big tomatoes and half[8] an onion[9].
2. Chop[10] all the vegetables into small squares.
3. Put the chopped vegetables into a bowl.
4. Add a little oil, salt and lemon juice.
5. Serve the salad with your omelette.

Arabic Meaning

١- يخفق
٢- سلطانية
٣- يسخن
٤- زبد
٥- مقلاة
٦- يصب
٧- يقدم (طعام/شراب)
٨- نصف
٩- بصلة
١٠- يقطع

Say it correctly
- bowl — تنطق هذه الكلمة مثل كلمة (goal) مع اختلاف الصوت الأول فقط.

SB Page (18)

Unusual[1] but delicious



Some food smells bad or looks[2] unusual- but still tastes good! 'Durian fruits'[3] grow in Indonesia[4] and Malaysia[5]. Some fruits can be 30 centimetres long. They are hard[6] and green on the outside[7], but soft[8] and yellow on the inside[9]. Some people don't want to eat them because they smell terrible[10], but they are very healthy and taste delicious[11]. People use durian fruits to make juice, ice creams and soup[12].

In the Philippines[13], people eat something called 'champorado'[14] with 'tuyo'[15] for breakfast. 'Champorado' is sweet chocolate rice and 'tuyo' are small salty fish. For most people, it's unusual to eat sweet and salty things together, but it is popular in the Philippines!



Arabic Meaning

١- غير معتاد
٢- يبدو
٣- فاكهة دوريان
٤- دولة إندونسيا
٥- دولة ماليزيا
٦- صلب
٧- الخارج
٨- لين
٩- الداخل
١٠- فظيع
١١- مذاقه لذيذ
١٢- شوربة
١٣- دولة الفلبين
١٤- أرز بالشيكولاتة
١٥- سمك مملح

In China[16], people eat eggs that are months or years old! They are called century eggs[17] and they are black and green inside. To make them, people put fresh eggs under the ground for a long time. Century eggs smell a lot and have a salty taste, but lots of people think they are delicious.

١٦- دولة الصين
١٧- بيض القرن

WB Page (79)

How to make foul mudammas[1]



1. Wash some beans and put them in a pan.
2. Add some water and salt to the beans.
3. Heat the beans in the water until it boils[2].
4. Pour some lemon juice over the hot beans.
5. Serve it with warm bread.

Arabic Meaning

١- فول مدمس
٢- يغلي

Aduioscript نصوص الاستماع — WB Page (80)



Ashraf : I'm Ashraf. I really like trying unusual food because I like to taste new things.

Dina : My name's Dina. When I was younger, I thought vegetables didn't taste nice at all. Now I like them. I eat a lot of them because I know they are healthy.

Heba : I'm Heba. Yesterday I ate fesikh. This is a dry salty fish. It doesn't taste nice at all, and it smells horrible!

Basel : My name's Basel. I love the smell of cakes when they are cooking, but I never eat cakes at all. I'm allergic to nuts.

Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

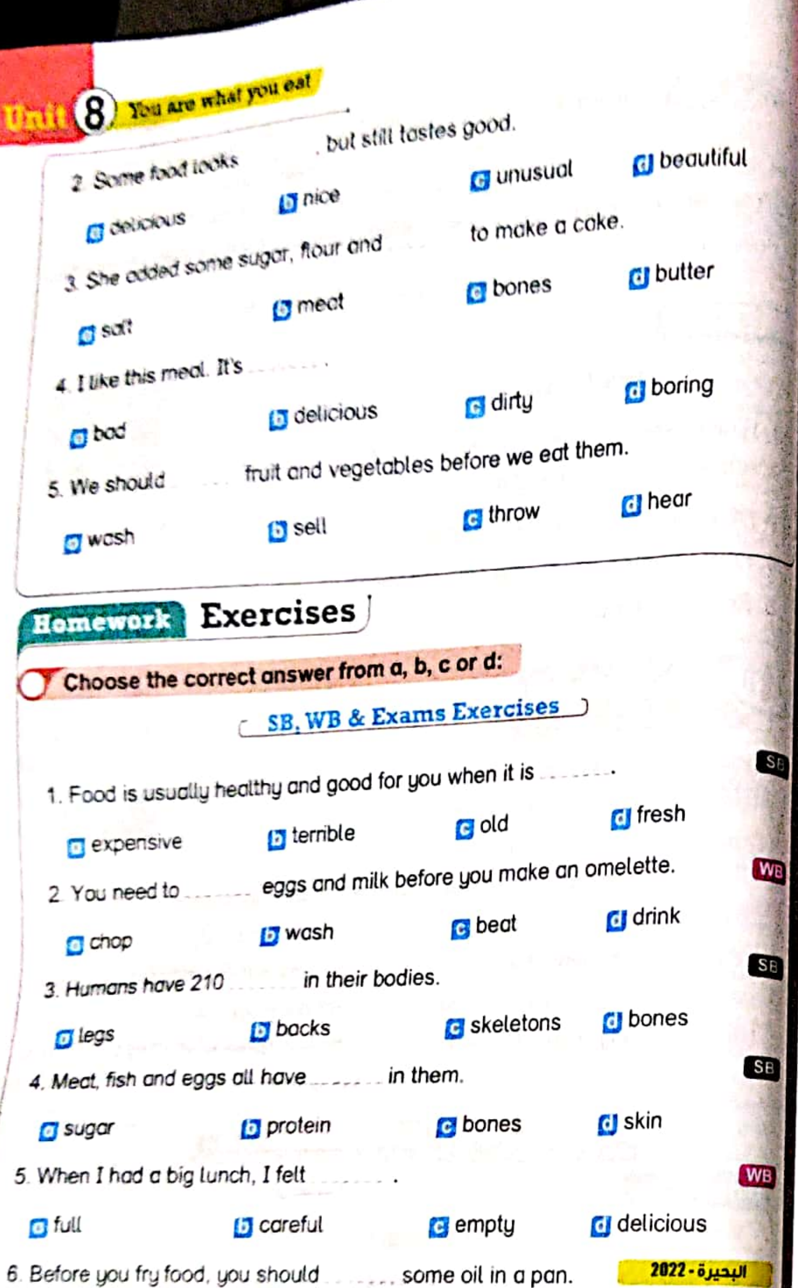


Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Cheese is one of the ------- products.

a) daily b) daily c) diary d) day



2. Some food looks .... but still tastes good.
a delicious b nice c unusual d beautiful

3. She added some sugar, flour and .... to make a cake.
a salt b meat c bones d butter

4. I like this meal. It's ....
a bad b delicious c dirty d boring

5. We should .... fruit and vegetables before we eat them.
a wash b sell c throw d hear

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. Food is usually healthy and good for you when it is .... (SB)
a expensive b terrible c old d fresh

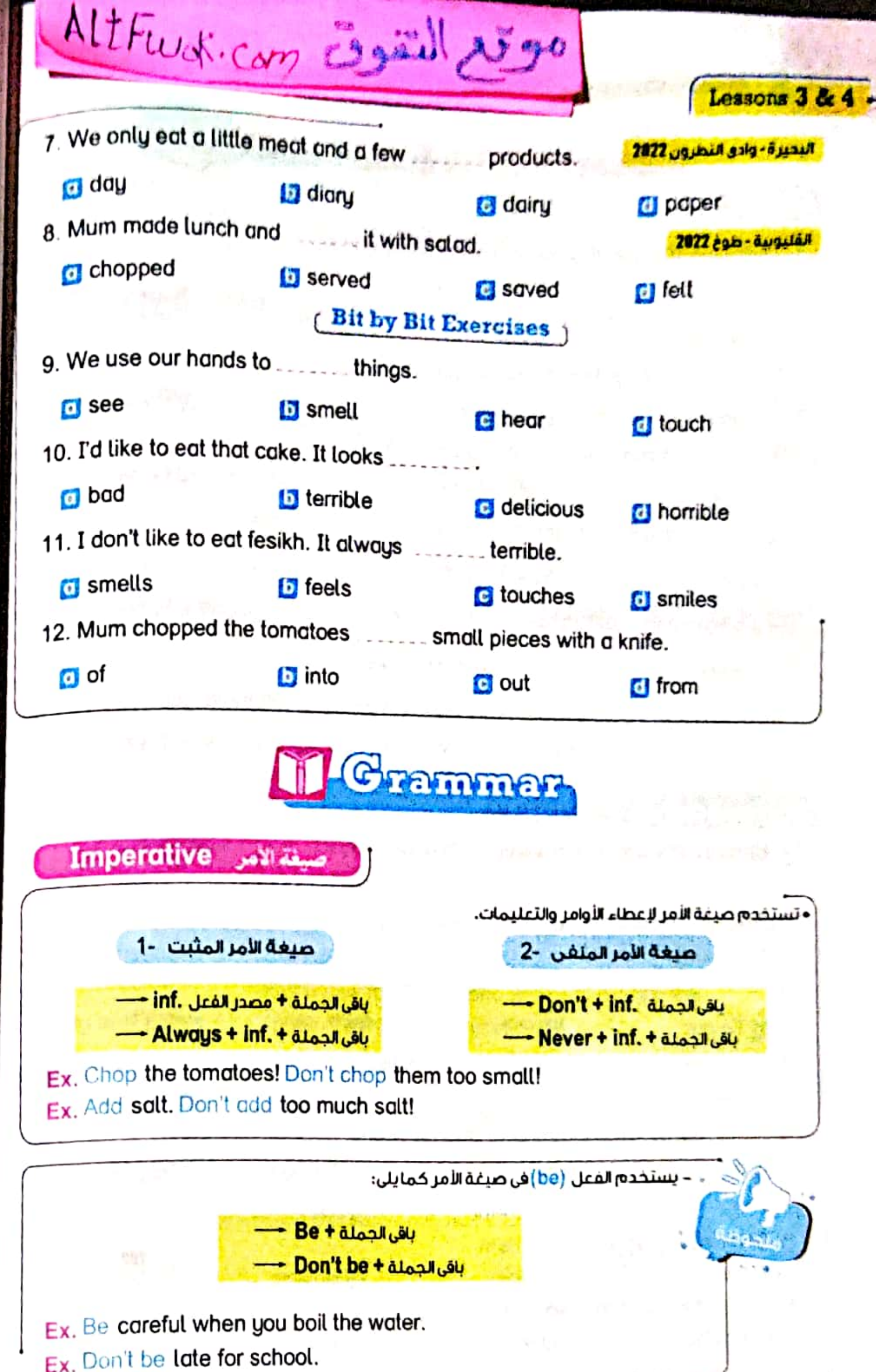
2. You need to .... eggs and milk before you make an omelette. (WB)
a chop b wash c beat d drink

3. Humans have 210 .... in their bodies. (SB)
a legs b backs c skeletons d bones

4. Meat, fish and eggs all have .... in them. (SB)
a sugar b protein c bones d skin

5. When I had a big lunch, I felt .... (WB)
a full b careful c empty d delicious

6. Before you fry food, you should .... some oil in a pan. (البحيرة - 2022)
a heat b make c serve d fire



7. We only eat a little meat and a few .... products. (البحيرة - وادي النطرون 2022)
a day b diary c dairy d paper

8. Mum made lunch and .... it with salad. (القليوبية - طوخ 2022)
a chopped b served c saved d felt

Bit by Bit Exercises

9. We use our hands to .... things.
a see b smell c hear d touch

10. I'd like to eat that cake. It looks ....
a bad b terrible c delicious d horrible

11. I don't like to eat fesikh. It always .... terrible.
a smells b feels c touches d smiles

12. Mum chopped the tomatoes .... small pieces with a knife.
a of b into c out d from

Grammar

Imperative صيغة الأمر

• تستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء الأوامر والتعليمات.

1- صيغة الأمر المثبت	2- صيغة الأمر المنفي
→ inf. مصدر الفعل + باقي الجملة	→ Don't + inf. باقي الجملة
→ Always + inf. + باقي الجملة	→ Never + inf. + باقي الجملة

Ex. Chop the tomatoes! Don't chop them too small!
Ex. Add salt. Don't add too much salt!

ملحوظة

- يستخدم الفعل (be) في صيغة الأمر كمايلي:

→ Be + باقي الجملة
→ Don't be + باقي الجملة

Ex. Be careful when you boil the water.
Ex. Don't be late for school.

Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To be healthy, ... all types of food.
   a) eating b) eat c) eats d) ate
2. .... the eggs into the frying pan now.
   a) Pours b) Poured c) Pour d) Pouring
3. .... out alone without telling your parents.
   a) Go b) Never go c) Doesn't go d) Goes
4. .... enough fruits and nuts. They are healthy snacks.
   a) Get b) Don't get c) Never get d) Gets

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Please, ... (heats) the beans now.
2. .... (Having) breakfast early. It will make you feel fresh.
3. .... (Not keep) food in the fridge for a long time. It's not healthy.

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. Take the omelette and .... it with salad. SB
   a) serving b) serves c) serve d) doesn't serve
2. .... the eggs in the bowl and beat them with a fork. SB
   a) To put b) Puts c) Putting d) Put
3. .... the beans in the water until it boils. WB
   a) Heat b) Heats c) Heated d) Heating
4. .... some lemon juice over the hot beans. WB
   a) Pours b) Pour c) Poured d) Pouring

Bit by Bit Exercises

5. Don't fry the eggs. .... them.
   a) Boil b) Boils c) Boiling d) Boiled
6. .... fast food because it has lots of fat.
   a) Eating b) Eats c) Eat d) Never eat

7. .... your aunt today. She's really ill.
   a) Visited b) Visit c) Visiting d) Visits
8. .... me some fresh food. It is really healthy.
   a) Don't get b) To Get c) Getting d) Get

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. .... (Learning) English. It is really useful.
2. Wait a little. .... (Not pour) the eggs now. SB
3. .... (Adds) some water and salt to the beans. WB
4. .... (Chopping) all the vegetables into small pieces.
5. .... (Doesn't) add too much salt to the food, please.

Speaking

Giving opinion about food إبداء الرأى فى الطعام

- لإبداء رأينا فى الطعام نقول:

- I think that ..... tastes + (صفة) أعتقد .... طعمه ......

Ex. I think that fried chicken tastes good.

- In my opinion, ... smells + (صفة) فى رأيى ..... رائحته ......

Ex. In my opinion, fish smells horrible.

General Exercises on Lessons 3&4

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Judy and Aliaa are talking about their favourite food.

Judy : Hi Aliaa, what's your favourite food?
Aliaa : 1 ....
Judy : Oh! 2 ....
Aliaa : Why don't you like fesikh?
Judy : 3 ....
Aliaa : I agree with you, but it tastes nice. 4 ....?

Judy: I like pizza.

[illegible]: I like pizza, too.

Judy: ...

[illegible]: Good idea.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To have healthy teeth, ... sure you eat dairy products.
   a) being b) are c) is d) be
2. .... some beans and put them in a pan.
   a) Wash b) Washing c) Washes d) To wash
3. .... come to school on time.
   a) Never b) Always c) Not d) Don't
4. Follow these .... to use the tablet well. (2022 طوخ)
   a) pieces b) advice c) bowls d) instructions
5. .... products like milk and cheese help us to have strong bones.
   a) Diary b) Dairy c) Dry d) Wet
6. The soup is cold. Shall we .... it?
   a) cool b) freeze c) heat d) wash
7. My mum .... some tea into my cup.
   a) chopped b) beat c) boiled d) poured
8. I liked the perfume so much. It .... really nice.
   a) smelt b) fried c) boiled d) served
9. Which of these is not a dairy product?
   a) milk b) rice c) cheese d) butter
10. Do you prefer to boil or .... your eggs?
    a) wash b) pour c) serve d) fry
11. My grandparents always .... lunch in the dining room at 4 o'clock.
    a) serve b) do c) wash d) play
12. Which of these do you use to make an omelette?
    a) sugar b) rice c) eggs d) chocolate

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. .... (Serving) it with warm bread.
2. .... (Doesn't forget) to add a little salt.
3. .... (Not) boil oil more than one time.
4. Please, ... (stopped) eating too much chocolate.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on:

"Some unusual food that you have tried"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What was the unusual food you have tried?
- How did it smell? - How did it look?
- How did it taste? - Would you like to eat it again?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I tried ....
- It was called ....
- It looked / smelt / tasted ....
- I would / wouldn't .... to eat ....

Lessons 5,6&7

SB pages 19-20 WB pages 81-82

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

exercise	تمارين	cake	كة/تورتة
food	طعام	yellow pepper	ل أصفر
hungry	جائع	spinach	ت السبانخ
sleep	نوم	diet	ام غذائي
sweet potato	بطاطا	tired	تعب

Vocabulary

balanced	متوازن	upset	ايق/يزعج - متضايق
athletics club	نادي ألعاب قوى	furthermore	وة على ذلك
conclusion	خاتمة	What sort...?	نوع...؟
perhaps	ربما	unfortunately	سوء الحظ
amount	كمية - مقدار	introduce (d)	دم
art school	مدرسة لتعليم الرسم	revise (d)	راجع
drawing	الرسم بالرصاص / بالفحم	surprise (d)	اجئ
painting	الرسم بالألوان / لوحة فنية	conclude (d)	ختتم (كلامه)
situation	موقف	relax (ed)	سترخي
olive oil	زيت الزيتون	own (ed)	ملك
reason	سبب		

Words & Meanings

Word		Meaning
spinach	نبات السبانخ	a vegetable with wide[1] dark[2] green leaves[3] that go soft when you cook them
pepper	فلفل	a kind of vegetables that is usually green, red or yellow, with seeds[4] in the middle
diet	نظام غذائي	the kind of food that you eat every day
sweet potato	بطاطا	a vegetable that looks like a potato and has purple, yellow or white flesh and a sweet taste

Arabic Meaning
1- عريض
2- قاتم اللون
3- أوراق النبات
4- بذور



Expressions & Prepositions

feel hungry	يشعر بالجوع	make sure	يتأكد من
have energy	لديه طاقة	text friends	يرسل رسائل نصية للأصدقاء
have a snack	يتناول وجبة خفيفة	serve ... on a plate	يقدم .... في طبق
do some drawing	يقوم ببعض الرسومات	How about + V-ing...?	ما رأيك في ...؟
try + V-ing.	يجرب..	depend on	يعتمد على
as you can see	كما ترى	live on an island	يعيش على جزيرة
eight hours' sleep	نوم لثماني ساعات	stay up late	يسهر لوقت متأخر
that's why	لهذا السبب		

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
tired	متعب	uncomfortable	comfortable	مستريح
unfortunately	لسوء الحظ	unluckily	fortunately	لحسن الحظ

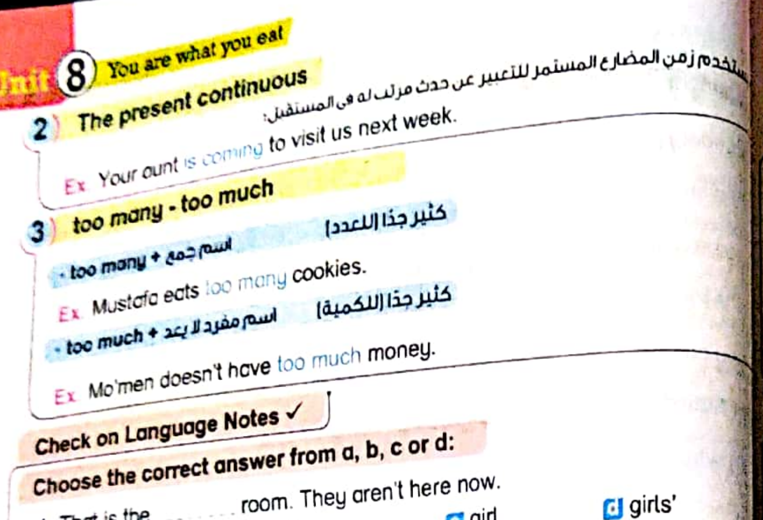
Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
upset	يزعج	upset	upset
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
bring	يحضر	brought	brought
mean	يعني	meant	meant

Language Notes

1) Possessive ('s) or (')

- نستخدم ('s) للتعبير عن الملكية للاسم المفرد والجمع غير المنتظم:
  - the boy's bag
  - the men's bags
- نستخدم (') للتعبير عن الملكية للاسم الجمع المنتهي بـ (s) :
  - the boys' bags



2 The present continuous

نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن حدث مرتب له في المستقبل:

Ex Your aunt is coming to visit us next week.

3 too many - too much

- too many + اسم جمع [كثير جدًا (للعدد)]

Ex Mustafa eats too many cookies.

- too much + اسم مفرد لا يعد [كثير جدًا (للكمية)]

Ex Mo'men doesn't have too much money.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. That is the .... room. They aren't here now.
   a girl's b girls c girl d girls'
2. I .... a party next week.
   a has b am having c having d had
3. My mother gives me .... food.
   a too many b too few c too much d so many

Audioscript نصوص الاستماع — SB Page (19)

استمع إلى النصوص

Ali : My name's Ali. My mum and dad own a restaurant and I often help in the kitchen. The cook[1] is my friend and he is teaching me to make different cakes. The problem is, I'm always trying[2] them, so I eat too many cakes. I also know I don't do enough exercise, but that's because I don't have time. When I'm not at school or doing my homework, I'm usually at the restaurant. I don't want to stop helping my parents, so I don't know what to do.

Eman : I'm Eman. I do a lot of sport and I have a very healthy diet[3]. I eat lots of fruit and vegetables and I almost never eat fast food. I never eat snacks either, not even when I'm really hungry after athletics club[4]. I know eating snacks isn't good for you. But I'm tired all the time. I never feel I get enough sleep, even when I go to bed early! I want to have more energy[5].

Tamer : I'm Tamer. I want to go to art school[6] when I'm older, but I don't have enough time to do any drawing or painting at the moment. I'm working really hard at school. I'm worried about my exams. When I feel worried, I don't feel hungry. My mother doesn't think I eat enough, so then she gives me even more food. I don't want to upset[7] her, so I can't tell her it's too much!

Arabic Meaning
طباخ
يجرب
نظام غذائي صحي
نادي ألعاب القوى
طاقة
مدرسة لتعليم الرسم
يزعج



Reading — SB P. (19)

It's good that you don't eat fast food, but if you feel very hungry between meals[1], it's a good idea[2] to have a snack. How about bringing[3] a few healthy snacks to school on the days when you have athletics club? If you want to have more energy, why don't you try eating more food that gives you energy like rice and pasta? Perhaps[4] you could eat a bigger breakfast in the morning, too.

Arabic Meaning
١- وجبات
٢- فكرة
٣- إحضار
٤- ربما

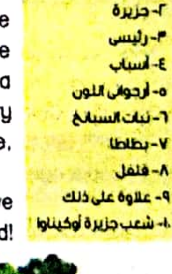
SB Page (20)

The Okinawan[1] diet

I come from Okinawa in Japan and the diet on my island*[2] is very healthy.

This is for three main[3] reasons[4]. Firstly, we eat a lot of fresh vegetables. We eat green, purple[5] and yellow vegetables like spinach*[6], sweet potato[7] and peppers[8]. Furthermore[9], we don't have much fat in our diet: we only eat a little meat and a few dairy products. Another important thing is that we eat a very healthy breakfast. We have soup with spinach or eggs with rice, and this gives us lots of energy to start the day.

As you can see, our diet is healthy. That's why Okinawans[10] live a long time. Some of the oldest people in the world live on my island!


Arabic Meaning
١- خاص بجزيرة أوكيناوا باليابان
٢- جزيرة
٣- رئيسي
٤- أسباب
٥- أرجواني اللون
٦- نبات السبانخ
٧- بطاطا
٨- فلفل
٩- علاوة على ذلك
١٠- شعب جزيرة أوكيناوا


sweet potato


yellow pepper


spinach


Say it correctly

- island — لاحظ أن حرف (s) لا ينطق في هذه الكلمة.
- spinach — لاحظ أن الجزء الملون في هذه الكلمة ينطق مثل نطق الجزء الملون من كلمة (cheese) مع عدم نطق حرف (a).

SB Page (21)

Lelia : Is there any cheese in t he fridge? I don't need any now, but I want to make a salad later.

Mother : I think there is a little cheese. I'm going shopping now. Would you like me to buy some cheese at the market?

Leila : Yes, please! Could you get a few tomatoes, too? I don't have enough for the salad.

ALIFWOK.com موقع التفوق

WB Page (81)

1- Your cousins are coming to visit on Saturday next week. They always make wonderful cakes and sweets for you and you want to make something for them. Unfortunately[1], you do not know how to cook!

2- You are studying for exams at the moment and you are staying up late[2] and eating a lot of chocolate and biscuits[3]. You do not do any exercise and you spend your free time texting[4] your friends. You feel tired[5] and unhealthy.

Arabic Meaning
1- لسوء الحظ
2- يسهر لوقت متأخر
3- بسكويت
4- يرسل رسائل نصية
5- متعب

Say it correctly
تنطق هذه الكلمة بتقسيمها إلى مقطعين (bis - cuits) وننطق (kits) في المقطع الأخير
* biscuits

WB Page (81)



How much sleep should we have? The answer depends on[1] your age. Very small babies sleep for about 14 or more hours a day! Children aged[2] six to seventeen should sleep for about[3] ten hours a night. Then you need less sleep. Most people aged 18-65 need about eight hours' sleep.

Arabic Meaning
1- يعتمد على
2- البالغ من العمر
3- حوالي



WB Page (82)

A healthy diet

It may surprise[1] you to know that West African countries[2] have one of the healthiest diets in the world. Why is this?

Firstly, people in countries such as Senegal[3], Mali[4] and Sierra Leone[5] eat a lot of fruit and vegetables, which are very healthy. Furthermore, the people eat a lot of rice, nuts and fish. These have a lot of protein.

Another important point[6] is that the people of West Africa don't eat much food with a lot of salt and sugar in it.

To conclude[7], a healthy diet means[8] eating enough healthy things like fish and vegetables, and not eating a lot of salt, sugar and fast food.

Arabic Meaning
1- يدهش
2- دول غرب أفريقيا
3- دولة السنغال
4- دولة مالي
5- دولة سيراليون
6- نقطة
7- يستنتج
8- يعني

WB Page (83)

A recipe for pizza

- Firstly, chop some tomatoes.
- Then put the tomatoes onto the pizza bread.
- Add some cheese and pour on a little olive oil[1].
- Cook the pizza in the oven[2] for ten minutes.
- Add a few olives and a little salt.
- Serve with a fresh salad.

Arabic Meaning
1- زيت زيتون
2- فرن

Videoscript SB Page (19)

Narrator:
There is a lot of delicious, healthy Egyptian food. Dishes[1] like kushari[2] and rozz me'ammar[3] are enjoyed by many in Egypt and around the world. But which Egyptian food is good for you before and after you play sport?

Foul mudammas is a dish made of beans. People usually eat this with a little bread. The beans and the bread contain[4] something called carbohydrate[5]. Carbohydrate gives you energy to do sport.

Rice, pasta, fruit and vegetables contain a lot of carbohydrate, so why don't you eat these things before you go swimming or do athletics[6]?

Sugar also gives us energy to do sport. You can find sugar in chocolate, sweets, honey and some desserts like basbousa[7] and kahk[8]. But you should only eat a little sugar because it is bad for your health.

After you play sport, how about eating food that contains protein? Protein is something that helps our body to recover[9] after exercise.

Meat, fish and dairy products, like milk and cheese, contain a lot of protein. So, you should eat things like kofta[10], sayadeya[11] or shakshouka[12] after you play sport.

It is important to look after your body. You should do exercise and eat a healthy diet.

Arabic Meaning
1- أصناف طعام
2- كشري
3- أرز معمر
4- يحتوي على
5- مواد كربوهيدراتية
6- يمارس ألعاب القوى
7- البسبوسة
8- الكحك
9- يتعافى
10- الكفتة
11- أرز صيادية
12- الشكشوكة

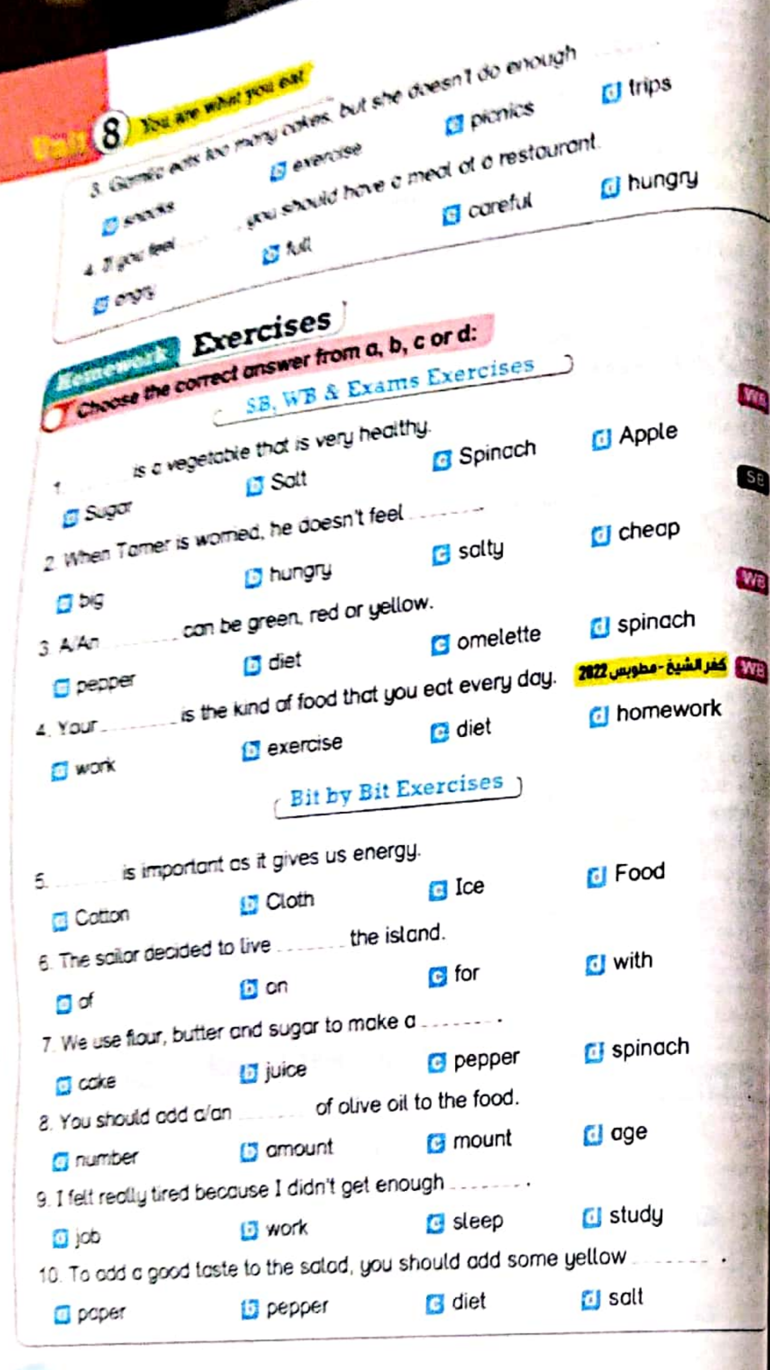
Exercises on Lessons 5, 6 & 7

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... potato has a nice taste.
   - Salty
   - Juicy
   - Liquid
   - Sweet

2. Ali felt really .... after 14 hours of hard work.
   - tired
   - relaxed
   - active
   - comfortable


Unit 8 You are what you eat

3. Gamila eats too many cakes, but she doesn't do enough ....
a snacks b exercise c picnics d trips

4. If you feel ...., you should have a meal at a restaurant.
a angry b full c careful d hungry

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. .... is a vegetable that is very healthy. (WB)
a Sugar b Salt c Spinach d Apple

2. When Tamer is worried, he doesn't feel .... (SB)
a big b hungry c salty d cheap

3. A/An .... can be green, red or yellow. (WB)
a pepper b diet c omelette d spinach

4. Your .... is the kind of food that you eat every day. (كفر الشيخ - مطوبس 2022) (WB)
a work b exercise c diet d homework

Bit by Bit Exercises

5. .... is important as it gives us energy.
a Cotton b Cloth c Ice d Food

6. The sailor decided to live .... the island.
a of b on c for d with

7. We use flour, butter and sugar to make a ....
a cake b juice c pepper d spinach

8. You should add a/an .... of olive oil to the food.
a number b amount c mount d age

9. I felt really tired because I didn't get enough ....
a job b work c sleep d study

10. To add a good taste to the salad, you should add some yellow ....
a paper b pepper c diet d salt

86



Speaking

Giving advice (about being healthy) إسداء النصح (بشأن التمتع بصحة جيدة)

- لإسداء النصح نستخدم العبارات/ الأسئلة الآتية:

- **It's a good idea that you ....** إنها فكرة جيدة أن .....

Ex. It's a good idea that you don't eat fast food.

- **It's a good idea to + inf ....** إنها فكرة جيدة أن .....

Ex. It's a good idea to have a snack.

- **How about + V-ing .... ?** ما رأيك في ....؟

Ex. How about bringing a few healthy snacks to school?

- **Why don't you + try + V-ing ....?** لم لا تجرب ....؟

Ex. Why don't you try eating fruit that gives you energy?

- **You could + inf ......** يمكنك أن .....

Ex. You could eat a bigger breakfast in the morning.

General Exercises on Lessons 5, 6&7

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Yasmin's mother is asking her about what she'd like to eat.

Mum : Are you hungry, Yasmin?
Yasmin : ❶ ....
Mum : Would you like to eat something?
Yasmin : ❷ ....
Mum : ❸ .... ?
Yasmin : I'd like cheese sandwiches, please.
Mum : ❹ .... ?
Yasmin : Yes, I'd like them with olives.
Mum : Here you are.
Yasmin : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Eman never eats fast food or unhealthy .... (SB)
a sleep b exercise c snacks d restaurants

2. A: How about drinking tea in the garden? B: It's a good ....
a) idea b) food c) meal d) diet

3. I like eating .... it's very healthy.
a) painting b) spinach c) conclusion d) plate

4. It is important to have a balanced, healthy ....
a) trip b) view c) diet d) journey

5. A: I'm really bored. B: How .... going to the zoo?
a) many b) much c) deep d) about

3 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on: SB

"Egyptian food"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:
- What do people usually eat in Egypt?
- What are the most popular dishes?
- Are they healthy or unhealthy? Why / Why not?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- People in Egypt usually eat ....
- There are many dishes in Egypt.
- The Egyptian food is healthy / unhealthy because ....

Excel Yourself

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b c or d:

1. Some .... girls are waiting at the door.
a) little b) any c) a lot d) much

2. There were .... boys in that classroom.
a) lots b) any c) no d) a lot

3. .... there any furniture in the hall?
a) Does b) Has c) Are d) Is

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We have got .... (a few) information about the acciden[t]
2. We have got .... (a few) pens. I have to go and get some from the sho[p]

Review on unit 8

Key Vocabulary

full	ممتلئ (شبعان)	cake	كعكة / تورتة
snack	وجبة خفيفة	allergic to	لديه حساسية لـ
fast food	الوجبات السريعة	energy	طاقة
dairy products	منتجات الألبان	fresh	طازج
bone	عظمة	unusual	غير معتاد
protein	بروتين	butter	زبد
exercise	تمارين	sense	حاسة
food	طعام	yellow pepper	فلفل أصفر
hungry	جائع	spinach	نبات السبانخ
sleep	نوم	diet	نظام غذائي
sweet potato	بطاطا	tired	متعب

Food and Snacks

falafel	الفلافل	rojak	الروجاك (وجبة فواكة شعبية بماليزيا)
fava beans	فول أخضر	sfenj	السفنج (فطائر حلوة شعبية بالمغرب)
chicken	لحم الدجاج / دجاجة	hawawshi	حواوشي (أكلة مصرية)
pizza	بيتزا	samosa	السمبوسة (وجبة حارة شعبية بالهند)
nuts	مكسرات	chips	رقائق بطاطس مقلية
pasta	مكرونة	olives	زيتون
spices	توابل - بهارات	rice pudding	أرز باللبن
watermelon	بطيخ	chocolate	شيكولاته
grapes	عنب	vegetable	خضار

Food Adjectives

delicious	لذيذ	spicy	متبل (كثير التوابل)/ حار
juicy	كثير العصارة	sweet	حلو المذاق
salty	مالح	popular	شائع - محبوب

Verbs for senses & Organs

Verb	Organ	Verb	Organ
hear يسمع	ear الأذن	taste (d) يتذوق	tongue اللسان
see يرى	eye العين	smell يشم	nose الأنف
touch (ed) يلمس	hand اليد		

Cooking verbs & nouns

beat	يخفق/يضرب	(eggs - butter - milk)
chop (ped)	يقطع	(meat - vegetables - tomatoes)
fry (ied)	يقلي	(eggs - chicken)
pour (ed)	يصب	(water - tea - juice)
heat (ed)	يسخن	(beans - soup)
wash (ed)	يغسل	(beans - vegetables)
serve (d)	يقدم طعام/شراب	(food - lunch)
boil (ed)	يغلي/يسلق	(water - eggs)
add (ed)	يضيف	(salt - sugar)

Special food

fried chicken	دجاج مقلي	dry fish	سمك مجفف
omelette	اومليت اكلة تحتوي على البيض وإضافات	century eggs	بيض القرن (اكلة صينية)
champorado	الشامبرادو أرز بالشيكولاتة	foul mudammas	فول مدمس
tuyo	تايو (سمك مملح صغير)	durian fruit	فاكهة الدوريان

Grammar

1- Countable & Uncountable nouns

Countable nouns أسماء تعد

١- أسماء مفردة يسبقها (a / an)

a pen - a door - a unit

an umbrella - an apple - an hour

٢- أسماء جمع كالتالي:

a pen → pens / a book → books

a dish → dishes

a watch → watches

a bus → buses

a box → boxes

a tomato → tomatoes

Uncountable nouns أسماء لا تعد

هي دائما مفردة ولا يسبقها (a/an) وتأخذ فعل مفرد.

rice - meat - sugar - juice - bread - water

cheese - milk

English - rubber - love

information - news - rain - air

2- some & any

• تستخدم (some) في الجملة الخبرية المثبتة مع الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع) والاسم الذي لا يعد.

Ex. We saw some friends on our way home.

Ex. Dad always puts some salt on his food.

• تستخدم (some) في السؤال للعرض أو الطلب.

Ex. Would you like some oranges / pasta?

Ex. Can I have some beans / milk?

• تستخدم (any) في الجملة الخبرية المنفية وفي السؤال مع الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع) والاسم الذي لا يعد.

Ex. We don't buy any books from that shop.

Ex. Is there any water in the fridge?

3- a lot of / a little / a few

• تستخدم (a lot of) غالبا في الجملة المثبتة مع الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع) ومع الاسم الذي لا يعد.

Ex. We have a lot of snacks.

Ex. They eat a lot of rice and pasta.

• تستخدم (a few) مع الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع).

Ex. I eat a few oranges.

• تستخدم (a little) مع الاسم الذي لا يعد.

Ex. They have a little milk.

4- like / would like

• يستخدم الفعل (like) للتعبير عما نفضل.

Ex. They like coffee but they don't like tea.

• تستخدم (would like) لتقديم العروض ولطلب الأشياء.

Ex. What would you like for dinner?

Ex. I'd like (to have) some meat, please.

5- Imperative صيغة الأمر

• تستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء الأوامر والتعليمات.

1- صيغة الأمر المثبت	2- صيغة الأمر المنفي
→ Inf. مصدر الفعل + باقي الجملة	→ Don't + Inf. باقي الجملة
→ Always + Inf. + باقي الجملة	→ Never + Inf. + باقي الجملة

Ex. Chop the cucumbers! Don't chop them all!



1 Talking about your favourite food — التحدث عن طعامك المفضل

Question	Answer
A: What's your favourite juicy fruit?	B: ...... is my favourite juicy fruit.
A: Which is your favourite snack?	B: ...... is my favourite snack.
A: Is your favourite snack juicy, spicy or sweet?	B: My favourite snack is ....
A: Is it healthy or unhealthy?	B: It is healthy / unhealthy.
A: Has it got any sugar or salt in it?	B: Yes, it has. - No, it hasn't.

2 Asking and answering about what you like and dislike — السؤال عما تحب وما لا تحب

Question	Answer
A: What would you like for breakfast?	B: I'd like some beans, please.
A: Would you like some tea?	B: Yes, please.

3 Offering, accepting and refusing food politely — تقديم الطعام، القبول والرفض بأدب

- لعرض الطعام على شخص نسأل:

• Do you like ....? / • Would you like ...?

Accepting	Refusing
- Yes, please.	- Thank you, but I'm really full.
- Thank you. I like	- No, I don't / wouldn't. I prefer......
- Yes, please, just a few / a little.	- No, thank you.
	- Thank you, but I really couldn't.

4 Giving opinion about food — إبداء الرأى فى الطعام

- لإبداء الرأى فى الطعام، يقول:

• I think that ..... tastes + (صفة)

• In my opinion, ... smells + (صفة)

5 Giving advice (about being healthy) — إسداء النصح (بشأن التمتع بصحة جيدة)

- لإسداء النصح نستخدم العبارات / الأسئلة الآتية:

• It's a good idea that you ....

• It's a good idea to + inf ....

• How about + V-ing .... ?

• Why don't you try + V-ing ....?

• You could + inf ......

General Exercises on Unit 8

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Marwa has just come from school.

Marwa : What did you cook for lunch, mum?

Mum : ❶ ....

Marwa : Wow! I like koshari very much.

Mum : I know.

Marwa : ❷ .... ?

Mum : Yes, I made some salad.

Marwa : ❸ .... ?

Mum : I made rice pudding.

Marwa : ❹ .... Thanks, mum.

Mum : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Would you like ...... more beans? **WB**
   a) some b) lot c) lot of d) lots
2. .... the salad with the omelette. **SB**
   a) Serves b) Didn't serve c) Serve d) Serving
3. .... the butter in the frying pan now. Wait a minute.
   a) Heating b) Don't heat c) Heats d) Doesn't heat
4. I don't put any salt on my food because I don't like .... food. **SB**
   a) sweet b) big c) fast d) salty
5. Samosas have .... vegetables inside them. **SB**
   a) spicy b) careless c) bright d) fast

6. Watermelon is very sweet and .... It contains a lot of juice.
   a salty b allergic c spicy d juicy
7. If we don't use sugar to make food ...., what other things can we use?
   a sweet b fast c salty d juicy
8. There is not protein in ....
   a meat b milk c fish d apples
9. You need to .... the tomatoes into small pieces.
   a beat b heat c chop d fry
10. Which of these is bad for your teeth?
    a sugar b salt c eggs d vegetables
11. First, ... the eggs in the bowl.
    a hit b beat c cut d chop
12. I'd like .... cheese, please.
    a a lot b a few c many d a little
13. "........ you like a sandwich?" "Thank you, but I'm really full."
    a Are b Were c Would d Had
14. Do you have .... money is your wallet?
    a lots b any c a lot d many
15. I'm really tired and I don't have the .... to go out.
    a energy b light c electricity d muscle

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My sister cooked .... (a lot) pasta and rice.
2. .... (To add) a little salt to the chips.
3. I couldn't find .... (some) water in the fridge.
4. Mustafa eats .... (a little) healthy snacks.
5. Pour the eggs into the frying pan and .... (cooking) it in the butter.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on: SB / WB

[مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة]

"Indian diet"

....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:
- What is the country you are talking about?
- What do people usually eat there?
- Is their diet healthy or unhealthy? Why / Why not?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- I'm from .... The diet in my country is very healthy.
- People in .... usually eat ....
- Our diet is healthy / unhealthy because ....

Azhar Exercises

تمرينات الأزهر الشريف

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Fava beans and falafel are very .... in Egypt.
   a unknown b popular c dirty d unpopular
2. People in Egypt like to eat fava beans and falafel for ....
   a breakfast b dinner c lunch d supper

2 Supply the missing parts in the following mini-dialogues:

1. Huda : Would you like some pasta?
   Ali : ....
2. Amal : ....?
   Mona : My favourite snack is fruit.
3. Mum : What would you like for breakfast?
   Hager : ....
4. Ola : ....?
   Naglaa : In my opinion, fish tastes nice.

3 Write a paragraph of FIVE(5) sentences on:

[مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة]

"What you can eat to stay healthy"

....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:
- Is healthy food important for everyone?
- How does healthy food help us?
- What should we eat to be healthy?
- What are healthy snacks?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- Healthy food is ....
- Healthy food helps us to ....
- If you want to be healthy, you should eat ....
- .... are healthy snacks.

Paragraphs

1- Some unusual food I have tried

Once I travelled abroad with my friends. We decided to have lunch at a famous restaurant. We tried a very interesting snack. It was called "Durian fruits". "Durian fruits" grow in Indonesia and Malaysia. They're soft and yellow on the inside. We liked to eat them very much. They were very healthy and tasted delicious. Some people don't want to eat them because they smell terrible. People use durian fruits to make juice, ice creams and soup.

2- Egyptian food

There is a lot of delicious, healthy Egyptian food. Foul mudammas is a dish made of beans. People usually eat this with a little bread. They usually eat beans for breakfast. They like falafel as well. Egyptian people like koshari. It contains rice, pasta, onions and tomatoes. They eat it at home or at special restaurants. People in Egypt eat kebab and kofta. It's a very popular meal. It's very delicious. They eat them with salad and bread. Tourists who come to Egypt like to try Egyptian food. It's very popular in many countries all over the world.

3- Indian diet

I'm from India. The diet in my country is very healthy for many reasons. Firstly, we eat a lot of fresh vegetables. We eat green, purple and yellow vegetables. Furthermore, we don't have much fat in our diet. Another important thing is that we eat very healthy breakfast. This gives us lots of energy to start the day. That's why Indians live long lives. We don't eat much meat and dairy products. Our food is usually spicy. Many people all over the world like to try Indian food.

4- What I can eat to stay healthy

Healthy food is really important for everyone. We should eat all types of food. Dairy products like milk and cheese are healthy. Meat, cheese and nuts have prote in them. People need to eat fresh fruit and vegetables every day.

5- My favourite meal

My favourite food is cheese omelet It's very delicious. I found the recipe on t internet. I liked to try it very much. I aske my mother about it. She knew the meal a helped me make it. I make it by beating eg in a bowl. I use some cheese. I heat the eg in a pan. I don't add salt because the chee is salty enough. I can eat the meal w tomatoes and hot bread. It tastes deliciou Why don't you try it?

Emails

- My favourite snack

From : judy88@hotmail.com.
To : hanaa77@gmail.com.
Subject : My favourite snack

Dear Hanaa,

How are you? Thanks for your last ema You asked me to describe my favour snack. I love hawawshi and I often ha it when I get home from school. It is eas to make. First, you need some nice brea Then you put some meat and vegetable inside the bread. You can put some salt o it, too. I don't like to have any salt, thoug because it is not very healthy. Now yo cook it in the oven. It is delicious! Do yo have any favourite snacks? Describe the to me in your next email!

Best wishes.

Yours,

Judy

Unit 8 Test



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال فى آخر الكتاب

1. Durian fruits grow in Indonesia and ....
   a England b Malaysia c Egypt d France
2. Some fruits can be .... centimetres long.
   a thirty b forty c fifty d sixty
3. Durian fruits are hard and .... on the outside.
   a yellow b blue c green d white
4. Durian fruits are very .... and taste delicious.
   a good b nice c well d healthy

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ayman is asking a doctor about a healthy diet.

Ayman : Doctor, what is the best way to stay healthy?
Doctor : ❶ ....
Ayman : ❷ ....?
Doctor : For example, fruit and vegetables.
Ayman : ❸ ....?
Doctor : You shouldn't eat food that has fat or much sugar.
Ayman : Should I do exercise?
Doctor : ❹ ....
Ayman : Thank you for your advice.
Doctor : ❺ ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Our bodies need food like meat, rice, fruit, salt and sugar to be healthy. Food gives us energy, but we need a healthy diet to give us the right quantities of energy. When

we do sports, our bodies use more energy and need more food than when we w... TV. To be healthy, the quantity of food that we eat should be the same as the en... which our bodies use.

If we often eat much fast food, we will start to put on weight. Every day we sh... eat fruit and vegetables.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. Why do our bodies need food?

2. What should we eat every day?

3. How much energy do our bodies use when we do sports?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Food gives us ....
   a wealth b energy c heat d juice
5. We put on .... if we eat much fast food.
   a height b high c length d weight
6. Our bodies need .... kinds of food.
   a all b little c few d no

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I should buy some .... products from the supermarket.
   a day b diary c dairy d paper
2. A: "........ you like a little sugar in your coffee?"
   B: "No, thank you."
   a Would b Are c Does d Were
3. Use a knife to .... vegetables and meat.
   a boil b heat c pour d chop
4. .... a little cheese to the pizza, please.
   a Adding b Add c Adds d To add
5. .... isn't a dairy product.
   a Milk b Cheese c Rice d Butter
6. I had a huge lunch, so I will only need a .... for dinner.
   a snack b soil c taste d salt

7. I ate some food that was very hot and .... so that it hurt my mouth.
   a healthy b cold c cool d spicy
8. We sometimes eat sfenj with .... tea. SB
   a an b some c many d a lot
9. It's better to eat .... food.
   a old b ancient c young d fresh
10. We .... things when we put them in our mouths. SB
   a see b smell c taste d hear

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Hassan eats .... (a lot) fava beans every day.
2. Dad got .... (any) food from the market.
3. .... (Beats) two eggs in a bowl with little milk. SB
4. We haven't got .... (some) juice.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on: WB

(امجاب عنه قبل الاختبار)

"Your favourite meal"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:
- What's your favourite meal?
- Where did you find the recipe?
- How do you make it?
- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- My favourite meal is .... - I found the recipe ....
- I make it by .... - I use .... to make this meal.



Objectives

Reading:
An internet chat message; a review of an art gallery; Little Women; a review of a film

Writing:
A short review; a paragraph on a musician

Listening:
A report about an orchestra; an invitation on the telephone

Speaking:
Saying what people can do; talking about preferences and giving recommendations; inviting a person somewhere

Language:
Talking about ability: *can, know how to and be able to*

Life Skills:
Collaboration; respect for diversity

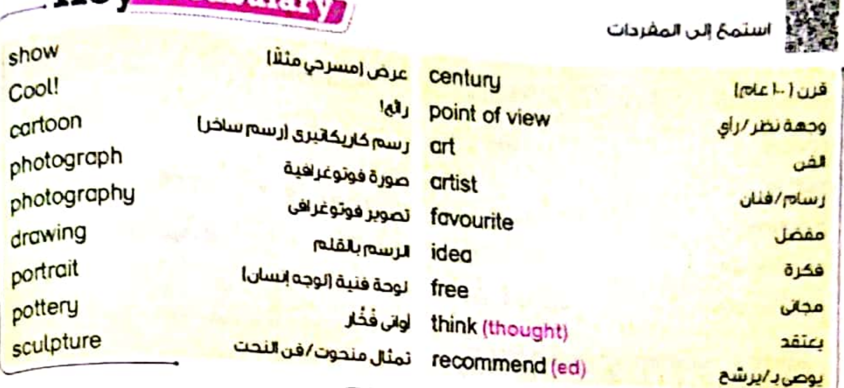
SB / WB Answers جميع أسئلة كتاب الطالب والتدريبات مجاب عنها في آخر الكتاب

Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 22 - 25 WB pages 84 - 85

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



show	عرض (مسرحي مثلاً)	century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)
Cool!	رائع!	point of view	وجهة نظر / رأي
cartoon	رسم كاريكاتيري (رسم ساخر)	art	الفن
photograph	صورة فوتوغرافية	artist	رسام / فنان
photography	تصوير فوتوغرافي	favourite	مفضل
drawing	الرسم بالقلم	idea	فكرة
portrait	لوحة فنية (لوجه إنسان)	free	مجاني
pottery	أواني فخّار	think (thought)	يعتقد
sculpture	تمثال منحوت / فن النحت	recommend (ed)	يوصي بـ / يرشح

Activities

painting scenery
رسم «خلفية لخشبة المسرح»



sewing costumes
خياطة أزياء (ملابس)



playing instruments
عزف على آلات موسيقية



doing make-up
عمل تجميل (مكياج)



writing a script
كتابة نص (سيناريو)



acting in a play
تمثيل في مسرحية



make sculptures
ينحت تماثيل



make pottery
يصنع أواني فخارية



take photos
يلتقط صور



do calligraphy
يدرس فن الخط



Vocabulary

concert hall	قاعة حفلات موسيقية	colourful	زاهي الألوان/كثير الألوان
theatre	مسرح	normal	عادي/طبيعي
end-of-year	نهاية العام	recommendation	توصية/ترشيح
drama club	نادي التمثيل	TV programme	برنامج تليفزيوني
review	مقال نقدي	ancient	قديم/أثري
statue	تمثال	musical	موسيقي
painting	لوحة مرسومة	calligraphy	فن الخط
preference	تفضيل	act (ed)	يمثل (في فيلم/مسرحية)
Islamic area	المنطقة الإسلامية	paint (ed)	يرسم / يلون

Words & Meanings

cartoon	رسم كاريكاتيري (ساخر)	a funny[1] drawing usually showing people or animals
costume	زي (ملابس لمناسبة خاصة)	clothes that you wear to look like someone or something else
script	نص مكتوب (سيناريو)	the words of a film or play which the actors learn
photography	تصوير فوتوغرافي	the type of art you need a camera to do
artist	رسام/فنان	a person who paints or draws for a job
free	مجاني	without paying money
portrait	لوحة تبين الوجه (بورتريه)	a painting or photograph of a person's face
pottery	أواني فخار	things that are made from clay[2], such as cups and plates[3]
sculpture	تمثال منحوت/فن النحت	art made from stone or wood that looks like people, animals or other things
cool	رائع	great, fantastic
instrument	آلة موسيقية	an object[4] that is used for playing music
make-up	تجميل (مكياج)	what people put on their faces in order to make themselves look nice or different
recommend	يوصي بـ/يرشح	advise someone to do something or go somewhere because it is good or you like it
scenery	خلفية لخشبة المسرح	the painted background[5] of a theatre stage[6]

Arabic Meaning
١- مضحك
٢- صلصال
٣- أطباق
٤- شئ
٥- خلفية
٦- خشبة المسرح



sew	يخيط	join two pieces of material together using a metal needle[7]
show	عرض	a play or performance[8] for people to watch

٧- إبرة
٨- أداء

Expressions & Prepositions

such as	على سبيل المثال
get ready	يستعد
make me feel happy	يجعلني أشعر بسعادة
It sounds fun.	يبدو ممتعا
quite dark	مظلم إلى حد ما
talk to	يتحدث إلى

help with	يساعد في
(be) able to	قادر على
the best at	الأفضل في
interested in	مهتم بـ
famous for	مشهور بـ
from my point of view	من وجهة نظري

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
famous	مشهور	popular	unknown	غير معروف
normal	عادي	ordinary	abnormal	غير عادي
ancient	قديم/أثري	very old	modern	حديث

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
pay	يدفع	paid	paid
learn	يتعلم	learned / learnt	learned / learnt
sew	يخيط	sewed	sewed / sewn
show	يعرض	showed	shown
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn

Language Notes

1) clothes / costume

- **clothes (n)** ملابس (جمع دائما)

Ex. This shop sells expensive clothes.

- **costume (n)** زي ترتديه لتبدو في هيئة معينة في مناسبة معينة (حفلة/مسرحية)

Ex. The clown is wearing a colourful costume.

2 scenery / scene / view

• **scenery** (n) منظر طبيعى (اسم لا يُعد)
يستخدم للحديث عن خلفية لخشبة المسرح / الأماكن الطبيعية التى تراها من حولك وخاصة عندما تكون جميلة)

Ex. The scenery behind the actors of the play was wonderful.
Ex. They drive slowly down the road to enjoy the scenery.

• **scene** (n) مشهد فى مسرحية / موقع جريمة (اسم يُعد)

Ex. The final scene of the play was very funny.
Ex. The police arrived at the scene of the crime.

• **view** (n) مشهد / منظر (اسم يُعد)
يستخدم للحديث عن الأشياء التى يمكن أن تراها من مكان ما)

Ex. The view of the Nile from the Cairo Tower is fantastic.

3 help

• **help + object** مفعول **+ (to) + inf.** يساعد .... أن

Ex. I helped my mother (to) make the birthday cake.
يمكن أن نستخدم (to) بعد المفعول أو نحذفها

• **help .... with +** اسم يساعد .... فى

Ex. Will you help me with my homework?

4 cartoon / carton

• **cartoon** رسم كاريكاتيرى (رسم ساخر) / فيلم كارتون

Ex. This magazine includes funny cartoons.
Ex. Micky Mouse is a cartoon character.

• **carton** عبوة من ورق مقوى (كرتونة)

Ex. This carton contains some books.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The .... which the actors are wearing are wonderful.
   a costumes b instruments c customs d scenes
2. This painting shows a lovely .... of the sea coast.
   a scene b scenery c review d tool
3. Jana helped a blind man .... the street.
   a crossed b to crossing c crosses d cross
4. My kids like Disney .... characters.
   a cartoon b cart c carton d car

Reading موضوعات القراءة SB P. (23)

استمع إلى النصوص


Habiba

Mrs Medhat says we can have an end-of-year show(1)! It will be about the play(2) we read in the English class. I'm very excited(3), but I need help! Can anyone act(4) or write scripts(5)? We also need people who are able to do make-up(6), sew* costumes(7), paint scenery(8) and play instruments(9).

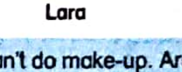
Arabic Meaning
١- عرض
٢- مسرحية
٣- مثار / متشوق
٤- يمثل
٥- نصوص (سيناريوهات)
٦- تجميل (مكياج)
٧- يخيط ملابس
٨- يرسم منظر طبيعى
٩- يعزف على آلات موسيقية
١٠- رائع!
١١- نادى التمثيل
١٢- التمثيل
١٣- يبدو ممتعاً

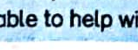
Lamar: Cool!(10) I can talk to the people at drama club(11) about acting(12).

Azza: Mariam and I know how to sew costumes! We love clothes and Lara is THE BEST at doing make-up!

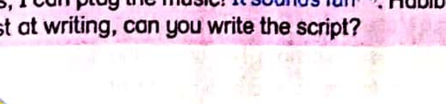



Lara: YES!! I can do make-up.





Manal: I can paint scenery if you want, but I can't do make-up. Are you able to help with music, Talia?



Talia: Yes, I can play the music! It sounds fun(13). Habiba, you are the best at writing, can you write the script?



Habiba: OK, I can try to write something... You are all amazing!!! Thanks so much!

Say it correctly
* sew تنطق هذه الكلمة مثل نطق كلمة go مع اختلاف نطق الحرف الأول (g)

SB Page (24)

Review[1] of the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art

By Wagdy Badr

Last month, I visited the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art[2] in Cairo. Egypt is famous for its ancient art[3], but I was interested in seeing art by Egyptians from the 20th and 21st centuries[4].

From my point of view, the artists[5] were really good because they showed[6] what life was like in Egypt in the past and now. There were portraits[7] of both important and normal[8] Egyptian people. I thought the cartoons[9] were also really cool! I also saw lots of sculptures[10], both big and small.

My favourite thing in the museum was a painting[11] called *Al Madina* by Mahmoud Said. It made me feel happy because it was very colourful[12].

The best thing about the museum is that it is free[13] to visit! I recommend[14] visiting it if you are in Cairo, but it's a good idea to go early when it is not very busy.

Arabic Meaning

١- مقال نقدى
٢- متحف الفن المصرى المعاصر
٣- فن قديم
٤- قرن (١٠٠ عام)
٥- رسامين / فنانين
٦- عرضوا
٧- لوحات فنية الوجه إنسان)
٨- عادى
٩- رسم كاريكاتيرى
١٠- منحوتات
١١- لوحة فنية
١٢- زاهى الألوان
١٣- مجانى
١٤- يوصى بـ

Say it correctly

sculpture — ينطق حرف u الأول فى هذه الكلمة مثلما ينطق فى كلمة cup وينطق المقطع ture مثلما ينطق فى كلمة nature

WB Page (85)

Review of the Textile Museum in Cairo



by Injy Zaki

Last month, I visited the Textile Museum[1] in Cairo. The museum has lots of clothes from different times[2] in history. I thought[3] the clothes from Ancient Egypt[4] were fantastic. From my point of view, the statues[5] showing people wearing the clothes really teach you about life in the past. My favourite[6] thing was the Islamic[7] area where you can see different kinds of calligraphy[8]. I recommend looking at the clothes from other countries, too, such as Iran[9]. They are very interesting. If you want to take photos, it is a good idea[10] to take a good camera, because the museum is quite dark[11].

Arabic Meaning

١- متحف النسيج
٢- عصور
٣- اعتقدت
٤- مصر القديمة
٥- تماثيل
٦- مفضل
٧- إسلامى
٨- فن الخط
٩- دولة إيران
١٠- فكرة
١١- مظلم إلى حد ما

Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The .... starts at 10:00 p.m. on Channel Two today.
   a) show b) portrait c) sculpture d) check
2. All the actors are .... wonderfully in that play.
   a) making b) writing c) acting d) sewing
3. The art museum includes sculptures, ... and paintings.
   a) pottery b) poetry c) century d) country
4. You don't need to pay for this pen. It is ....
   a) busy b) free c) expensive d) cheap
5. This magazine has lots of funny ....
   a) cartons b) carpets c) carts d) cartoons

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. My dress is damaged, so my mother is .... it. (الجيزة - شمال الجيزة 2022) WB
   a) acting b) sewing c) painting d) playing
2. There are many amazing .... of people in this museum. (سوهاج - أخميم 2022)
   a) sculptures b) pottery c) scripts d) views
3. The opposite of "famous" is .... (البحيرة - التحرير 2022)
   a) popular b) known c) unknown d) possible
4. A .... is a funny drawing usually showing people or animals. WB
   a) cartoon b) costume c) script d) carton
5. The children all wore funny .... to the family party. Ahmed was a firefighter! WB
   a) contents b) costumes c) concerts d) customs
6. Which .... can you play? WB
   a) device b) tool c) instrument d) concert
7. Mona can't answer the phone. She is doing her .... WB
   a) scenery b) museum c) wake up d) make-up

Bit by Bit Exercises

8. This famous .... paints nice portraits.
a player b actor c artist d archaeologist
9. Osama painted a fantastic .... of his wife's face.
a costume b portrait c show d sculpture
10. Two writers wrote the .... of that film.
a scenery b letter c instrument d script
11. If you buy three T-shirts, you will get a .... one.
a free b far c farther d final
12. My father will take us to the funfair next month. It .... fun.
a talks b acts c plays d sounds

Grammar

Ability القدرة

Affirmative الإثبات

• للتعبير عن القدرة فى المضارع نستخدم الصيغ الآتية:

فاعل + can + inf. مصدر الفعل

فاعل + know(s) how to + inf.

فاعل + am/is/are able to + inf.

Ex. I can paint scenery. Ex. Ola knows how to write scripts.
Ex. The girls are able to sew costumes.

Negative النفى

• للتعبير عدم القدرة فى المضارع نستخدم الصيغ الآتية:

فاعل + can't (cannot) + inf. مصدر الفعل

فاعل + don't / doesn't know how to + inf.

فاعل + am not / isn't /aren't able to + inf.

Ex. I can't do make-up. Ex. Ola doesn't know how to play instruments.
Ex. The girls aren't able to act.

Question السؤال

• للسؤال عن القدرة فى المضارع نستخدم الصيغ الآتية:

Can + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل .....?

Do/Does + فاعل + know how to + inf...?

Am/Is/Are + فاعل + able to + inf...?

Ex. Can you do make-up? Ex. Does Ola know how to play instruments?
Ex. Are the girls able to act?

Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A: .... you able to swim? B: No, I'm not, but I can play tennis.
a Can b Are c Do d Is
2. Mr Saber is blind. He .... to see.
a isn't able b can c knows how d is able
3. This artist .... how to paint scenery.
a can't b can c is able d knows
4. She is able .... her bedroom. Don't help her.
a to tidy b tidying c to tidying d tidy
5. We .... travel to another country without a passport.
a can b are able to c can't d know how

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Do you know how .... (make) a sculpture?
2. Hossam .... (can) do exercises because he is too ill.
3. .... (Is) you able to take photos?

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. Ayman .... able to play basketball. He's very tall. البحيرة - وادى النطرون 2022
a are b can c is d will
2. Amal knows how to .... well. She is an excellent cook. البحيرة - التحرير 2022
a cooks b cook c cooked d cooking
3. Do you know .... to use a computer? WB
a what b who c how d which
4. .... you able to speak French? WB
a Do b Can c Can't d Are
5. A: .... you know how to play an instrument? B: Yes, I do. SB
a Do b Are c Is d Does

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. .... your father able to drive a car?
a Does b Are c Is d Can
7. Hens have got wings, but they .... fly.
a can't b able to c can d aren't able

8. Leila knows .... write a script.
a how b how to c can d to be able

9. My sister .... how to cook. She is too young.
a can't b isn't c doesn't know d knows

10. I .... able to play well today. I trained well yesterday.
a can b can't c know how d am

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

جيزة - شمال الجيزة 2022

1. I can .... (playing) the guitar.
2. A firefighter .... (are) able to stop fires.
3. Do you know how .... (use) the internet?
4. Are you .... (ability) to understand this lesson?
5. Can you .... (to play) chess?

Speaking

1) Asking and answering about ability — السؤال والإجابة عن القدرة

• نسأل عن القدرة ونجيب باستخدام التعبيرات الآتية:

Question	Answer
A: Can you + inf. ....? هل تستطيع أن ....؟	B: Yes, I can. / No, I can't.
A: Do you know how to + inf. ....? هل تعرف كيف ....؟	B: Yes, I do. / No, I don't.
A: Are you able to + inf. ....? هل أنت قادر على ....؟	B: Yes, I'm. / No, I'm not, but I can ....

• ارجع إلى الشرح بالتفصيل في جزء القواعد اللغوية.

2) Talking about preferences — الحديث عن التفضيل

• للتعبير عما نفضله نستخدم التعبيرات الآتية:

- I prefer + n / v+ing .... أفضل ....
- I'd rather + inf. .... أفضل أن ....
- My favourite (thing) is .... أفضل (شئ) لي هو ....
- I'm interested in + v-ing / n .... أنا مهتم بـ ....

Ex. Watching a film is a good idea, but I prefer (watching) a play.
Ex. I'd rather stay at home tonight.
Ex. My favourite sport is football.

3) Asking for and giving recommendations — طلب وإعطاء توصيات

• نسأل عن التوصيات كالآتي:

- Would you recommend + v-ing / n ....? هل توصي بـ/ ترشح ....؟
- What do you recommend + v-ing ....? ماذا توصي بـ/ ترشح....؟

Ex. Would you recommend an action film or an adventure film?
Ex. What do you recommend reading, a book or a magazine?

• لإعطاء توصيات نقول:

- I recommend (that) + فاعل + inf. / v-ing / n .... أوصي أن............
- The best thing about .... is that .... أفضل شيء عن.....هو أن.....
- It's a good idea to + inf .... إنها فكرة جيدة أن..........

Ex. I recommend that we watch an action film.
Ex. I recommend (visiting) the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art.
Ex. It's a good idea to watch Oliver Twist.

General Exercises on Lessons 1&2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hazem and John are talking about music.

Hazem : Can you play music, John?
John : ❶ ....
Hazem : ❷ ....?
John : I can play the guitar.
Hazem : ❸ ....?
John : No, I don't know how to sing.
Hazem : Are you able to paint scenery?
John : ❹ .... But I can sew costumes.
Hazem : You're so clever.
John : ❺ ....



2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

جيزة - شمال الجيزة 2022

1. I recommend .... this restaurant.
   a visit   b to visit   c visiting   d to visiting
2. This artist makes fantastic .... using stone and wood.
   a calligraphy   b photos   c drama   d sculptures
3. Amany .... do her English homework alone.
   a can   b are able to   c know how to   d able to
4. Mum .... how to make cakes at home. We don't buy any.
   a is able to   b can   c knows   d know

المنوفية - السادات 2022

5. Do you know .... this mobile?
   a fix   b how fix   c how to fixing   d how to fix
6. A film star knows how .... well. WB
   a to act   b acting   c act   d acts
7. Mum asked my sister to help her .... the housework.
   a at   b on   c with   d about
8. The .... is fantastic in the play, you feel like you are in the mountains! WB
   a century   b scenery   c make-up   d costume
9. .... are clothes that you wear to look like someone or something else. WB
   a Costumes   b Scripts   c Cartoons   d Artists
10. I want to know how to .... clothes in the holidays. البحيرة - التحرير 2022
   a cook   b sew   c sing   d think

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. .... (Are) your father able to lift this heavy weight? القليوبية - طوخ 2022
2. My father can .... (repairs) things easily.
3. Samy can .... (did) karate. القليوبية - قها 2022
4. Can you .... (sewing)? WB
5. Maher is able .... (play) musical instruments. WB
6. .... (Able) you play football or tennis? WB

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on: WB

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

A review of a museum you know "The Museum of Modern Egyptian Art"

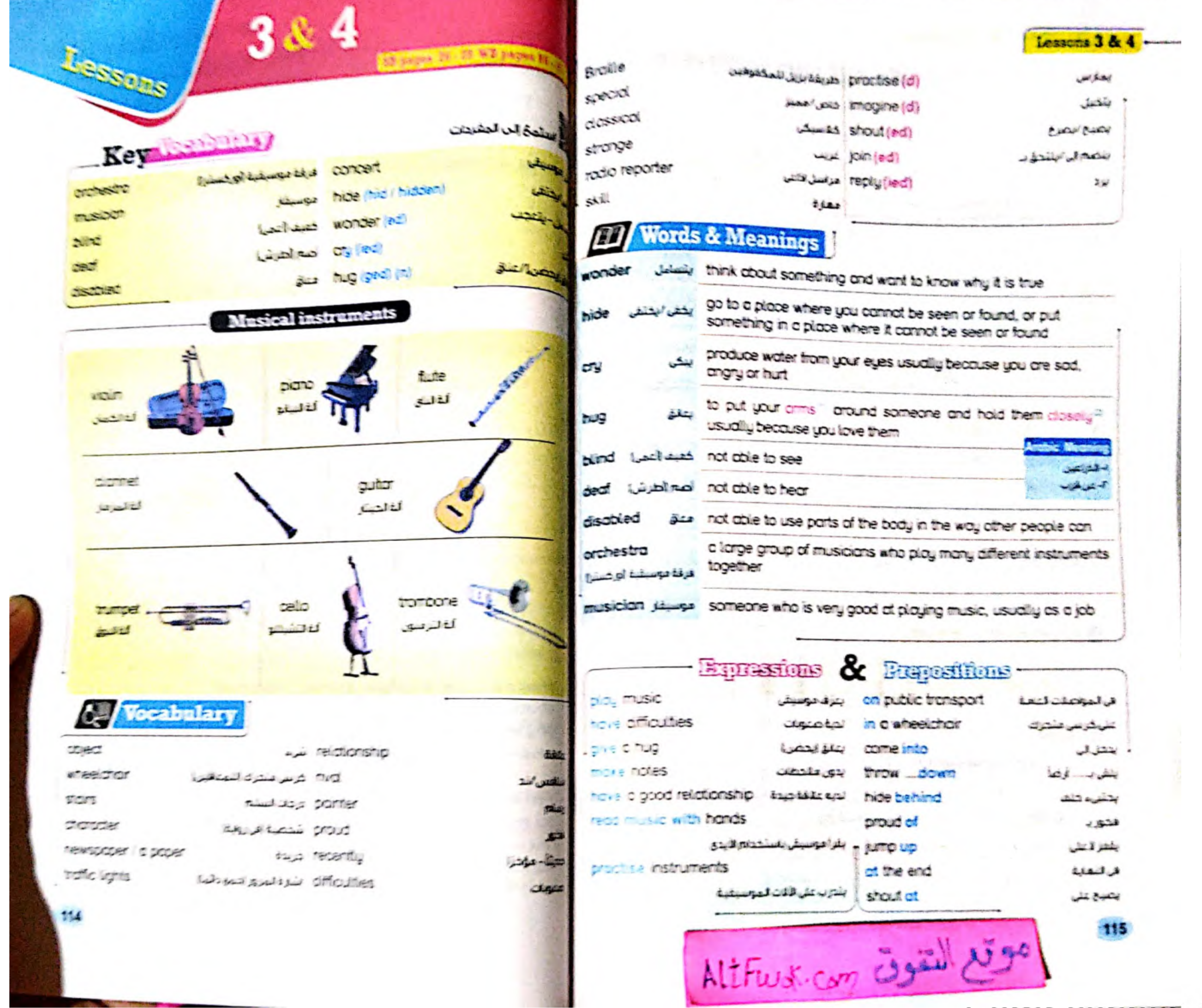
....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- When did you visit the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art?
- What's it famous for?
- Why were the artists really good?
- What was your favourite thing?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Last week, I visited ....
- It's famous for ....
- The artists were really good because ....
- My favourite thing is ....



Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

orchestra	فرقة موسيقية (أوركسترا)	concert	حفل موسيقي
musician	موسيقار	hide (hid / hidden)	يختبئ/يخفي
blind	كفيف (أعمى)	wonder (ed)	يتساءل - يتعجب
deaf	أصم (أطرش)	cry (ied)	يبكي
disabled	معاق	hug (ged) (n)	يحتضن/عناق

Musical instruments

Vocabulary

object	شيء	relationship	علاقة
wheelchair	كرسي متحرك (للمعاقين)	rival	منافس/ند
stairs	درجات السلم	painter	رسام
character	شخصية (في رواية)	proud	فخور
newspaper / a paper	جريدة	recently	حديثًا - مؤخرًا
traffic lights	إشارة المرور الضوئية	difficulties	صعوبات

Braille	طريقة برايل للمكفوفين	practise (d)	يمارس
special	خاص/مميز	imagine (d)	يتخيل
classical	كلاسيكي	shout (ed)	يصيح/يصرخ
strange	غريب	join (ed)	ينضم إلى/يلتحق بـ
radio reporter	مراسل إذاعي	reply (ied)	يرد
skill	مهارة		

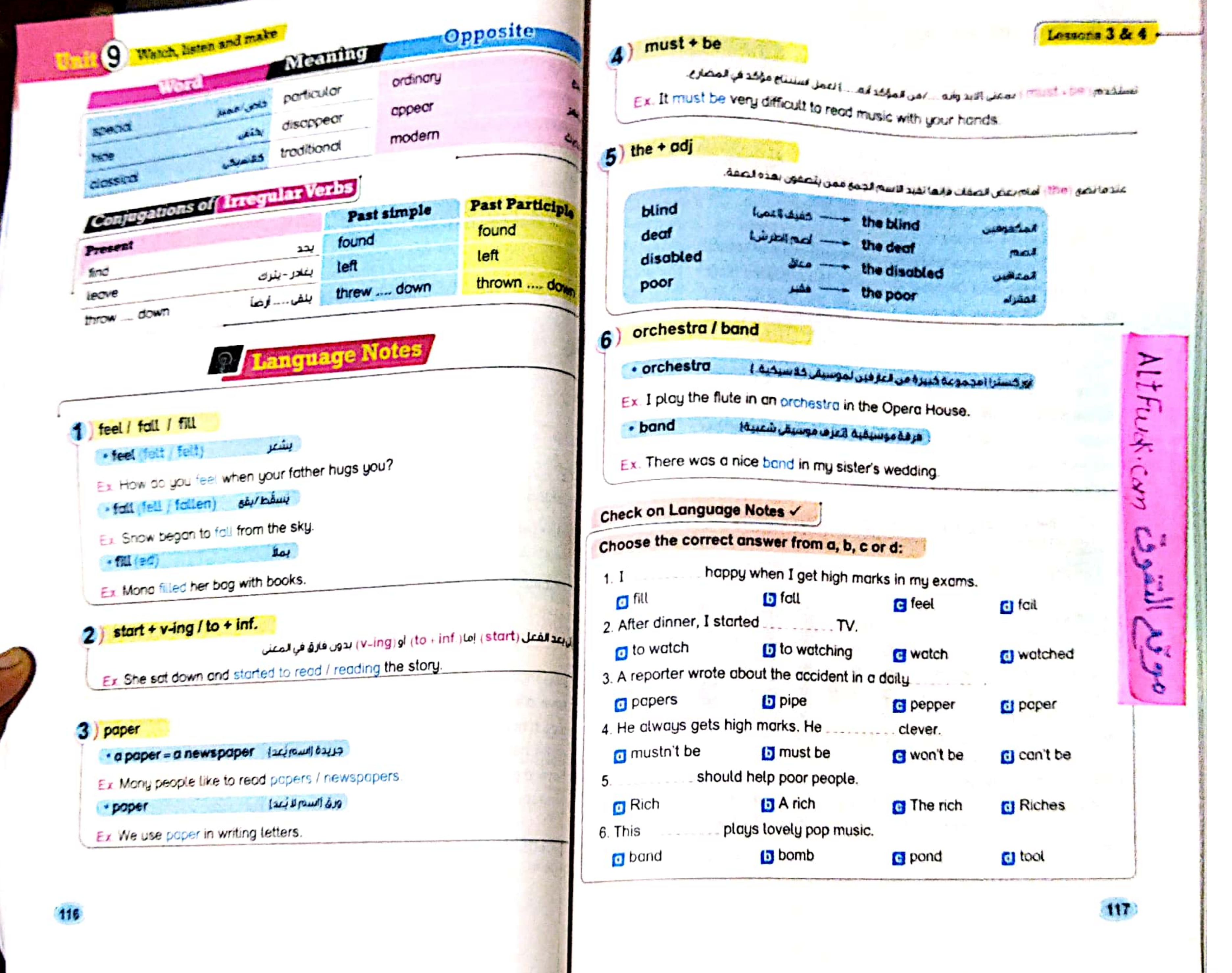
Words & Meanings

wonder	يتساءل	think about something and want to know why it is true
hide	يخفي/يختبئ	go to a place where you cannot be seen or found, or put something in a place where it cannot be seen or found
cry	يبكي	produce water from your eyes usually because you are sad, angry or hurt
hug	يعانق	to put your arms[1] around someone and hold them closely[2] usually because you love them
blind	كفيف (أعمى)	not able to see
deaf	أصم (أطرش)	not able to hear
disabled	معاق	not able to use parts of the body in the way other people can
orchestra	فرقة موسيقية (أوركسترا)	a large group of musicians who play many different instruments together
musician	موسيقار	someone who is very good at playing music, usually as a job

Arabic Meaning
1- الذراعين
2- عن قرب

Expressions & Prepositions

play music	يعزف موسيقى	on public transport	في المواصلات العامة
have difficulties	لديه صعوبات	in a wheelchair	على كرسي متحرك
give a hug	يعانق/يحضن	come into	يدخل إلى
make notes	يدون ملاحظات	throw ... down	يلقي بـ ... أرضًا
have a good relationship	لديه علاقة جيدة	hide behind	يختبئ خلف
read music with hands	يقرأ موسيقى باستخدام الأيدي	proud of	فخور بـ
		jump up	يقفز لأعلى
practise instruments	يتدرب على الآلات الموسيقية	at the end	في النهاية
		shout at	يصيح على



Word	Meaning	Opposite
special	خاص / مميز	particular	ordinary
hide	يخفي	disappear	appear
classical	كلاسيكي	traditional	modern

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
find	يجد	found	found
leave	يغادر - يترك	left	left
throw .... down	يلقي .... أرضاً	threw .... down	thrown .... down

Language Notes

1) feel / fall / fill

- feel (felt / felt) يشعر

Ex. How do you feel when your father hugs you?

- fall (fell / fallen) يسقط / يقع

Ex. Snow began to fall from the sky.

- fill (ed) يملأ

Ex. Mona filled her bag with books.

2) start + v-ing / to + inf.

يأتي بعد الفعل (start) إما (to + inf.) أو (v-ing) بدون فارق في المعنى

Ex. She sat down and started to read / reading the story.

3) paper

- a paper = a newspaper جريدة (اسم يُعد)

Ex. Many people like to read papers / newspapers.

- paper ورق (اسم لا يُعد)

Ex. We use paper in writing letters.

4) must + be

تستخدم (must + be) بمعنى لابد وأنه ... / من المؤكد أنه ... (لعمل استنتاج مؤكد في المضارع.

Ex. It must be very difficult to read music with your hands.

5) the + adj

عندما نضع (the) أمام بعض الصفات فإنها تفيد الاسم الجمع ممن يتصفون بهذه الصفة.

blind	كفيف (أعمى)	the blind	المكفوفين
deaf	أصم (أطرش)	the deaf	الصم
disabled	معاق	the disabled	المعاقين
poor	فقير	the poor	الفقراء

6) orchestra / band

- orchestra أوركسترا (مجموعة كبيرة من العازفين لموسيقى كلاسيكية)

Ex. I play the flute in an orchestra in the Opera House.

- band فرقة موسيقية (تعزف موسيقى شعبية)

Ex. There was a nice band in my sister's wedding.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I .... happy when I get high marks in my exams.
   a fill b fall c feel d fail
2. After dinner, I started .... TV.
   a to watch b to watching c watch d watched
3. A reporter wrote about the accident in a daily ....
   a papers b pipe c pepper d paper
4. He always gets high marks. He .... clever.
   a mustn't be b must be c won't be d can't be
5. .... should help poor people.
   a Rich b A rich c The rich d Riches
6. This .... plays lovely pop music.
   a band b bomb c pond d tool

Audioscript

SB Page (26)

استمع إلى النصوص

Radio reporter[1]:

Today, I'm visiting a very special[2] school in Cairo. This is a music school for girls. All the students study their normal[3] subjects in the morning and then practise[4] their instruments in the afternoon.

Many of the students at this school join[5] an orchestra[6] called the Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra. This orchestra plays concerts[7] in Australia, Germany, China and all around the world. What is most special about the school and the orchestra is that all the students here are blind[8]!

The orchestra plays international classical[9] and Arabic music. All the students learn to read the music using Braille[10], a type of reading you can do with your hands. Then, they have to remember the music because they can't read and play at the same time. Let's go to meet some of the musicians[11].

Arabic Meaning

١- مراسل إذاعي
٢- خاص
٣- معتاد
٤- يمارس
٥- ينضم إلى
٦- أوركسترا (فرقة موسيقية)
٧- حفلات موسيقية
٨- كفيف (أعمى)
٩- كلاسيكي
١٠- طريقة بريل للمكفوفين
١١- موسيقيين

Say it correctly

ينطق المقطع الملون من هذه الكلمة مثل نطق المقطع (ʃən) musician

WB Page (86)

The Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra is at a school for blind girls in Cairo. Eman Badr is one of the musicians. She is able to play the violin[1] very well. She started playing when she was six. Eman became blind when she was two years old. She likes playing in the orchestra because she loves music and being with her friends. Recently[2], she visited Oman[3] and France with the orchestra.

I think the orchestra is amazing[4]. It must be very difficult to read music with your hands and then remember it. I would like to go to one of their concerts.

Arabic Meaning

١- آلة الكمان
٢- حديثًا
٣- دولة عمان
٤- مدهش

Reading

موضوعات القراءة

SB P. (28)

Little Women By Louisa May Alcott

Meg, Beth and Amy were sewing when Jo came into[1] the room with a newspaper[2]. She sat down and started to read it.

"Anything interesting?" asked Meg.

"Oh, only a story," Jo replied.

"What's it called?"[3] asked Beth. She wondered[4] why Jo was hiding behind[5] the newspaper.

"It's called *The Rival Painters*[6]," said Jo.

"Why don't you read it to us?" asked Amy.

Jo started to read it very quickly. The girls listened carefully. The story was very sad.

"I liked it," said Meg at the end. She was crying[7] a little.

"Isn't it strange[8] that the characters[9] are called two of our favourite names?"

Beth saw Jo's face. "Who wrote the story?" she asked.

Jo jumped up, threw the paper down[10] and said, "Your sister!"

"You?" shouted[11] Meg. "It's very good!" said Amy.

"I knew it! I knew it! Oh, I am so proud[12]!" said Beth, hugging[13] her sister.

Arabic Meaning

١- يدخل إلى
٢- جريدة
٣- ما اسمها؟
٤- يتساءل
٥- تختبئ خلف
٦- الرسامون المتنافسون
٧- يبكي
٨- غريب
٩- شخصيات
١٠- ألقت بالجريدة أرضًا
١١- صاحت
١٢- فخور
١٣- يعانق

Say it correctly

ينطق حرف (o) في هذه الكلمة مثل نطق حرف (u) في كلمة (cup) wonder

Videoscript

SB Page (27)

Narrator:

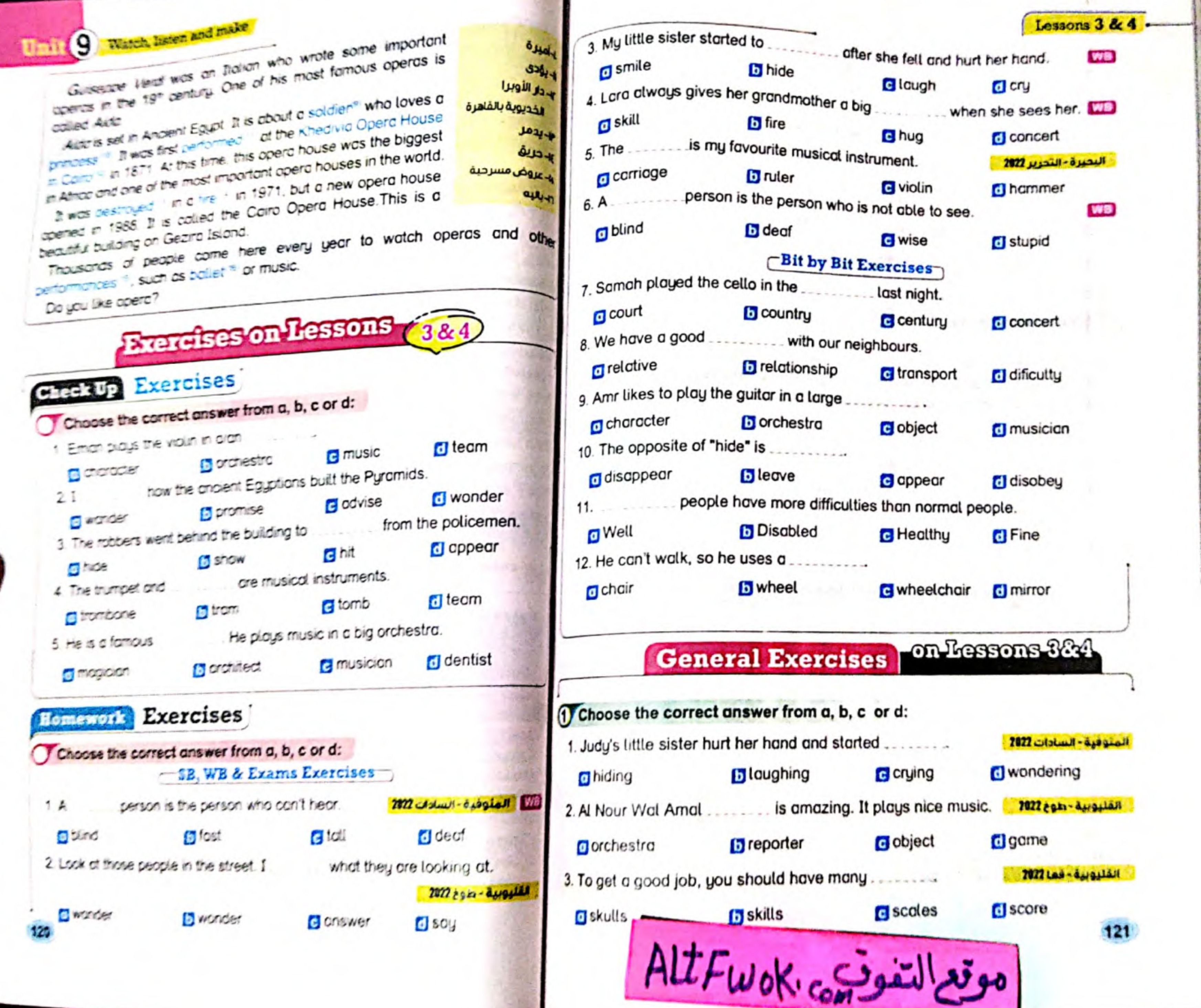
Can you sing[1]? Do you know to dance? Perhaps you can act[2]. But are you able to sing and act at the same time? Actors[3] who appear[4] in opera[5] can do all of these things. An opera is a type of play[6] in which the actors sing and sometimes dance. There is also lots of music.

People can watch an opera in a special theatre[7] called an opera house[8], like this famous one in Sydney.

There are many famous operas, such as *Carmen*, *The Barber of Seville* and *Tosca*. Opera singers such as *Maria Callas*, *Placido Domingo* and *Luciano Pavarotti* are able to sing really well.

Arabic Meaning

١- يغني
٢- يمثل
٣- ممثلون
٤- يظهر
٥- الأوبرا
٦- مسرحية
٧- مسرح
٨- دار الأوبرا
٩- جلدي



Giuseppe Verdi was an Italian who wrote some important operas in the 19th century. One of his most famous operas is called Aida.

Aida is set in Ancient Egypt. It is about a soldier who loves a princess [1]. It was first performed [2] at the Khedivial Opera House in Cairo [3] in 1871. At this time, this opera house was the biggest in Africa and one of the most important opera houses in the world.

It was destroyed [4] in a fire [5] in 1971, but a new opera house opened in 1988. It is called the Cairo Opera House. This is a beautiful building on Gezira Island.

Thousands of people come here every year to watch operas and other performances [6], such as ballet [7] or music.

Do you like opera?

١-أميرة
٢-يؤدى
٣-دار الأوبرا الخديوية بالقاهرة
٤-يدمر
٥-حريق
٦-عروض مسرحية
٧-باليه

Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Eman plays the violin in an ....
   a character b orchestra c music d team
2. I .... how the ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids.
   a wander b promise c advise d wonder
3. The robbers went behind the building to .... from the policemen.
   a hide b show c hit d appear
4. The trumpet and .... are musical instruments.
   a trombone b tram c tomb d team
5. He is a famous .... He plays music in a big orchestra.
   a magician b architect c musician d dentist

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. A .... person is the person who can't hear. المنوفية - السادات 2022 WB
   a blind b fast c tall d deaf
2. Look at those people in the street. I .... what they are looking at. القليوبية - طوخ 2022
   a wander b wonder c answer d say

3. My little sister started to .... after she fell and hurt her hand. WB
   a smile b hide c laugh d cry
4. Lara always gives her grandmother a big .... when she sees her. WB
   a skill b fire c hug d concert
5. The .... is my favourite musical instrument. البحيرة - التحرير 2022
   a carriage b ruler c violin d hammer
6. A .... person is the person who is not able to see. WB
   a blind b deaf c wise d stupid

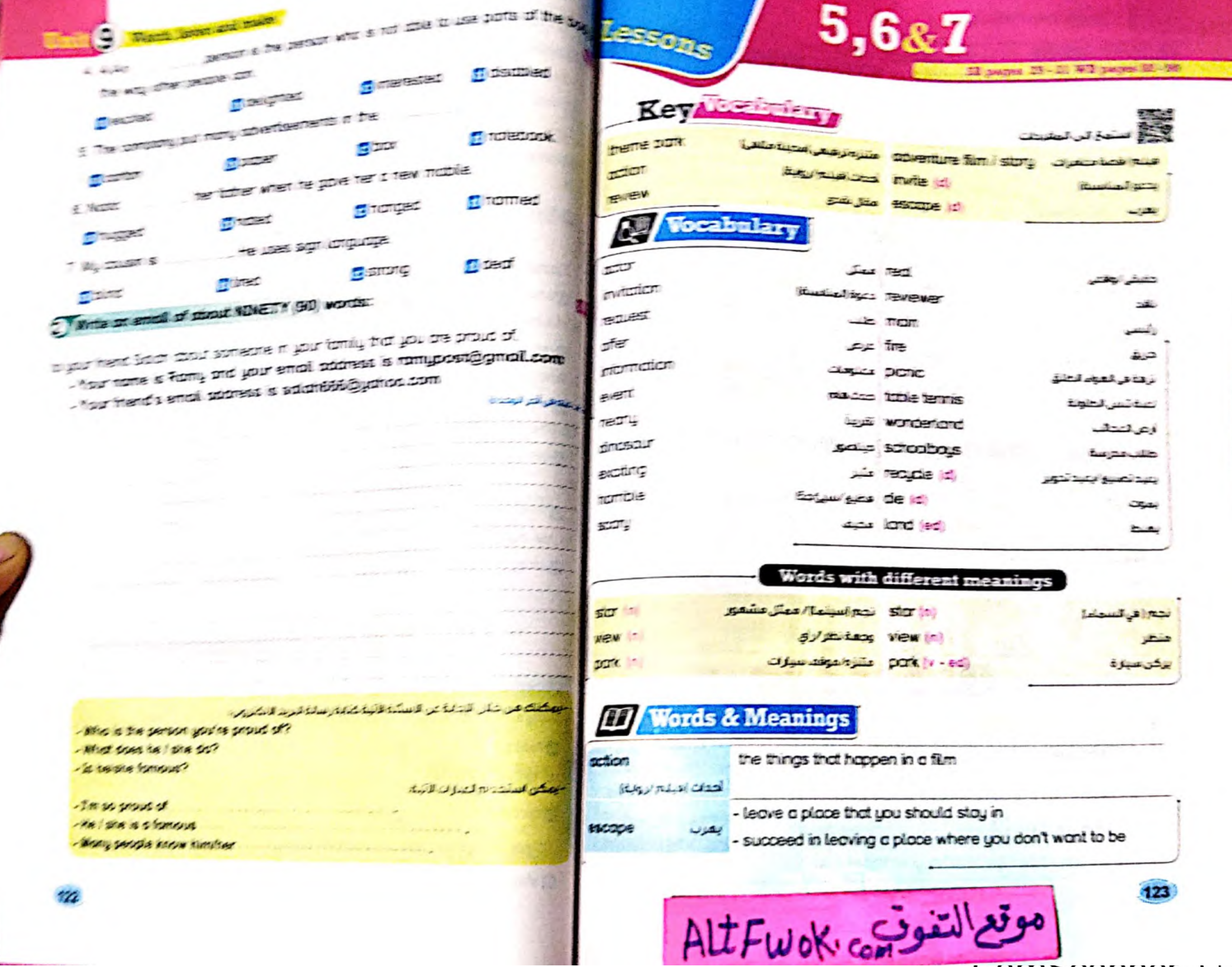
Bit by Bit Exercises

7. Samah played the cello in the .... last night.
   a court b country c century d concert
8. We have a good .... with our neighbours.
   a relative b relationship c transport d dificulty
9. Amr likes to play the guitar in a large ....
   a character b orchestra c object d musician
10. The opposite of "hide" is ....
    a disappear b leave c appear d disobey
11. .... people have more difficulties than normal people.
    a Well b Disabled c Healthy d Fine
12. He can't walk, so he uses a ....
    a chair b wheel c wheelchair d mirror

General Exercises on Lessons 3&4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Judy's little sister hurt her hand and started .... المنوفية - السادات 2022
   a hiding b laughing c crying d wondering
2. Al Nour Wal Amal .... is amazing. It plays nice music. القليوبية - طوخ 2022
   a orchestra b reporter c object d game
3. To get a good job, you should have many .... القليوبية - قها 2022
   a skulls b skills c scales d score



4. A/An .... person is the person who is not able to use parts of the body the way other people can.
a) excited b) delighted c) interested d) disabled

5. The company put many advertisements in the ....
a) carton b) paper c) box d) notebook

6. Noor .... her father when he gave her a new mobile.
a) hugged b) noted c) hanged d) named

7. My cousin is .... He uses sign language.
a) blind b) tired c) strong d) deaf

2 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

to your friend Sober about someone in your family that you are proud of.
- Your name is Ramy and your email address is ramypost@gmail.com
- Your friend's email address is adam666@yahoo.com

يمكنك عن طريق الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الالكتروني:
- Who is the person you're proud of?
- What does he / she do?
- Is he/she famous?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- I'm so proud of ...
- He / she is a famous ...
- Many people know him/her ...

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

theme park	متنزه ترفيهي (مدينة ملاهي)	adventure film / story	فيلم / قصة مغامرات
action	أحداث (فيلم / رواية)	invite (d)	يدعو (لمناسبة)
review	مقال نقدي	escape (d)	يهرب

Vocabulary

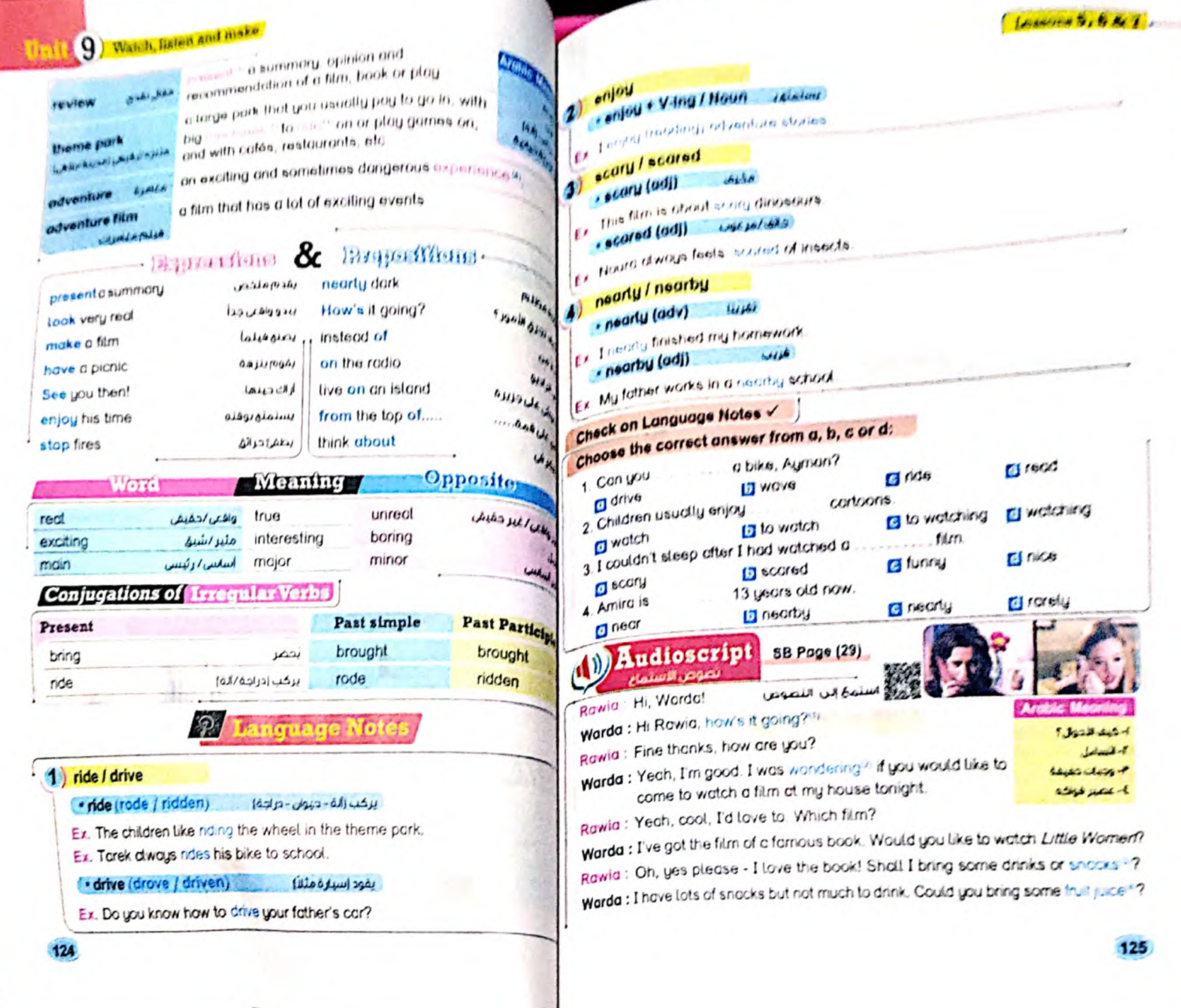
actor	ممثل	real	حقيقي / واقعي
invitation	دعوة (لمناسبة)	reviewer	ناقد
request	طلب	main	رئيسي
offer	عرض	fire	حريق
information	معلومات	picnic	نزهة في الهواء الطلق
event	حدث / مناسبة	table tennis	لعبة تنس الطاولة
really	حقاً	wonderland	أرض العجائب
dinosaur	ديناصور	schoolboys	طالب مدرسة
exciting	مثير	recycle (d)	يعيد تصنيع / يعيد تدوير
horrible	فظيع / سيء جداً	die (d)	يموت
story	قصة	land (ed)	يهبط

Words with different meanings

star (n)	نجم (سينما) / ممثل مشهور	star (n)	نجم (في السماء)
view (n)	وجهة نظر / رأي	view (n)	منظر
park (n)	متنزه / موقف سيارات	park (v - ed)	يركن سيارة

Words & Meanings

action أحداث (فيلم / رواية)	the things that happen in a film
escape يهرب	- leave a place that you should stay in - succeed in leaving a place where you don't want to be



review	مقال نقدي	a summary, opinion and recommendation of a film, book or play
theme park		a large park that you usually pay to go in, with big ... to ... on or play games on, and with cafés, restaurants, etc
adventure	مغامرة	an exciting and sometimes dangerous experience
adventure film	فيلم مغامرات	a film that has a lot of exciting events

Expressions & Prepositions

present a summary	يقدم ملخص	nearly dark
look very real	يبدو واقعي جدا	How's it going?
make a film	يصنع فيلما	instead of
have a picnic	يقوم بنزهة	on the radio
See you then!	أراك حينها	live on an island
enjoy his time	يستمتع بوقته	from the top of.....
stop fires	يطفئ حرائق	think about

Word / Meaning / Opposite

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
real	واقعي/حقيقي	true	unreal	غير واقعي / غير حقيقي
exciting	مثير/شيق	interesting	boring	
main	أساسي/ رئيسي	major	minor	

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
bring	يحضر	brought	brought
ride	يركب (دراجة/آلة)	rode	ridden

Language Notes

1) ride / drive

- **ride (rode / ridden)** يركب (آلة - حيوان - دراجة)

Ex. The children like riding the wheel in the theme park.

Ex. Tarek always rides his bike to school.

- **drive (drove / driven)** يقود (سيارة مثلا)

Ex. Do you know how to drive your father's car?

2) enjoy

- **enjoy + V-ing / Noun**

Ex. I enjoy (reading) adventure stories

3) scary / scared

- **scary (adj)** مخيف

Ex. This film is about scary dinosaurs.

- **scared (adj)** خائف/مذعور

Ex. Noura always feels scared of insects.

4) nearly / nearby

- **nearly (adv)** تقريبا

Ex. I nearly finished my homework.

- **nearby (adj)** قريب

Ex. My father works in a nearby school.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Can you .... a bike, Ayman?
   a drive b wave c ride d read
2. Children usually enjoy .... cartoons.
   a watch b to watch c to watching d watching
3. I couldn't sleep after I had watched a .... film.
   a scary b scared c funny d nice
4. Amira is .... 13 years old now.
   a near b nearby c nearly d rarely

Audioscript تصوص الاستماع

SB Page (29)

استمع إلى النصوص

Rawia : Hi, Warda!

Warda : Hi Rawia, how's it going?(1)

Rawia : Fine thanks, how are you?

Warda : Yeah, I'm good. I was wondering(2) if you would like to come to watch a film at my house tonight.

Rawia : Yeah, cool, I'd love to. Which film?

Warda : I've got the film of a famous book. Would you like to watch *Little Women*?

Rawia : Oh, yes please - I love the book! Shall I bring some drinks or snacks(3)?

Warda : I have lots of snacks but not much to drink. Could you bring some fruit juice(4)?

Arabic Meaning

1- كيف الأحوال؟
2- التساؤل
3- وجبات خفيفة
4- عصير فواكه

Rawia : Of course, no problem. What time should I come?
Warda : About 7 p.m?
Rawia : Great! See you then.

SB Page (31)

Sami : Hi Omar, I was wondering if you were busy[1] tonight.
Omar : No, I'm not busy. Why?
Sami : Would you like to come to my house to listen to some music?
Omar : Yes, that sounds cool! Shall I bring anything?
Sami : Yes, could you bring your guitar and we can play some songs, too?
Omar : Good idea[2]! What time should I come?
Sami : About 8 p.m. See you then!



Reading SB P. (30)

موضوعات القراءة

A review[1] of Jurassic World

Jurassic World[2] is an adventure film[3]. The stars[4] of the film are Chris Pratt and Bryce Dallas Howard. It is about a theme park[5] where scientists[6] have helped dinosaurs[7] to live again! Then some of the dinosaurs escape[8]. What will happen?

I thought the action[9] was exciting[10] and my favourite thing was the scary[11] dinosaurs; they look very real[12]. But, in my opinion the story isn't very interesting or new. I recommend this film if you like exciting and scary films, but not if you want a good story.

WB Page (88)

Salem : Hi Nader. I was wondering if you would like to come to my cousin's house tomorrow.
Nader : Yes, I would love to. It's a big house, isn't it?
Salem : Yes, he's got table tennis[1] in the garden. Would you like to play?
Nader : Yes, please! Shall I bring some table tennis balls?
Salem : No, he's got those. Could you bring some food? We'll have a picnic[2].
Nader : Of course, I'll bring some sandwiches. What time should I come?
Salem : We're leaving my house at 10 a.m.
Nader : Great! See you then.



WB Page (89)

A review of Lord of the Flies

Lord of the Flies[1] is an adventure story[2]. It is by the British writer[3] William Golding.

It is about some schoolboys[4] who have to live on an island[5] after their plane lands[6] in the sea and the pilot[7] dies. How will the boys live on the island, and will they escape?

I thought the action was exciting and many amazing[8] things happen to the boys. My favourite part was early in the story, when the children enjoy their time on the island. But, in my opinion[9], some of the children are horrible[10] and I did not like them.

I recommend the book because it makes you think about what it is like to live only with other children, but it is not a very happy story.

Arabic Meaning

١- امير الذباب «اسم رواية»
٢- قصة مغامرات
٣- كاتب بريطانى
٤- طلاب مدرسة
٥- جزيرة
٦- تهبط
٧- طيار
٨- مدهش
٩- فى رايي
١٠- فظيع / سيء جدا

Exercises on Lessons 5, 6 & 7

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Every night, I see a lot of .... in the sky.
   a) reviews b) stars c) parks d) offers
2. I think the thief .... from the policemen.
   a) invited b) recycled c) enjoyed d) escaped
3. Many people like to watch .... films.
   a) memory b) adventure c) invitation d) rough
4. The kids had a nice time at the .... park.
   a) theme b) them c) male d) line
5. I hope we will .... our time at the park tomorrow.
   a) recycle b) escape c) enjoy d) invite

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. Don't .... your car outside the school.
   a bark b land c mark d park
2. .... is the things that happen in a film.
   a Action b Nation c Review d Picnic
3. The actor became a .... after he was in that famous film.
   a thief b star c park d review
4. A .... park is a large park with machines to ride on, restaurants, etc.
   a thin b same c scene d theme
5. The lions in the zoo were very .... (2022 - ...)
   a scary b proud c difficult d friendly

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. The scenery in this painting looks very .... I like it.
   a real b horrible c scared d boring
7. Policemen were everywhere, so the thief wasn't able to ....
   a park b present c offer d escape
8. The big wheel is a wonderful machine you can .... at the funfair.
   a drive b read c ride d land
9. I will .... my friends to my house for dinner.
   a die b invite c invent d recycle
10. I have read a .... of an adventure film. It showed that it is a good fi...
    a star b park c picnic d review
11. I want to live .... an island with my family.
    a about b off c on d form

Speaking

1) Making invitations تقديم الدعوات

لتقديم دعوات نقول:

- I'd like to invite you to + inf. .... اريد ان ادعوك إلى ....
- I'd like you to + inf. .... اريدك ان ....
- Would you like to + inf. ....? هل تريد ان ....؟
- I was wondering if you would like to + inf. .....
  كنت اتساءل إذا كنت تريد ان......

Accepting	Refusing
- I'd love to. احب ذلك.	- I'm afraid. It won't be possible. اسف، سيكون ذلك غير ممكن.
- That / It sounds great. (ذلك) يبدوا رائعاً.	- I'd love to, but I can't because ...... اود ذلك، ولكنى لن استطيع لأن.....
- OK, with pleasure. حسناً، بكل سرور.	

Ex. A : I was wondering if you would like to come to my house tomorrow.
B : I'd love to. / I'm afraid. It won't be possible.

2) Asking about and giving opinion السؤال عن وإبداء الرأى

• نسأل عن الرأى كالآتى:

- Do you think (that) ....? هل تعتقد (ان)..........؟
- What do you think of / about ....? ما رأيك فى..............؟
- What is your view of / about ....? ما هى وجهة نظرك فى.........؟

• للتعبير عن الرأى نقول:

- In my view,........../ From my point of view..... من وجهة نظرى.......
- In my opinion, ... فى رأيي.............
- I think ..... اعتقد ....
- No, I don't think so. لا، لا أعتقد ذلك.

Ex. A: What do you think about the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art?
B: In my view, the paintings are really good.

3) Making offers تقديم عروض

• لتقديم عرض نقول:

- Shall I + inf. ....? هلا .....؟
- Would you like me to + inf. ....? هل تريدنى ان ......؟

Ex. Shall I bring some food for the picnic?
Ex. Would you like me to play music?

4) Making requests تقديم الطلبات

• للطلب نقول:

- Could you + inf.............? هل يمكنك ان.............؟
- I was wondering if you could + inf..... كنت أتساءل هل يمكنك ان.......

Ex. Could you bring some food for the picnic?
Ex. I was wondering if you could bring some food for the picnic.

General Exercises on Lessons 5, 6 ...

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Sami is inviting Omar to his house.

Omar : Hi Sami.

Sami : Hi Omar. ❶ ....

Omar : No, I'm not busy tonight. Why?

Sami : Would you like to come to my house to listen to some music?

Omar : ❷ ....

Sami : It'll be fun.

Omar : ❸ ....

Sami : Yes, you can bring your guitar. ❹ ....

Omar : What time should I come?

Sami : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This .... encourages me to read the book.
   a accident b park c review d invention
2. A: What do you think .... "Lord of the Flies"?
   B: I think it's a fantastic story.
   a in b on c at d about
3. A: Who should we .... to my birthday party?
   B: All your friends.
   a invite b invent c discover d call
4. "Jurassic World" is an exciting .... film. I always enjoy watching it.
   a review b adventure c camera d theme
5. .... you lend me some money, Hazem?
   a Are b Has c Could d Was

6. .... my point of view, this artist is not very good.
   a From b On c In d For
7. Would you like me .... this bag for you?
   a carry b to carry c to carrying d carrying

Excel Yourself

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b c or d:

1. Do you have the .... to write a script?
   a able b ability c possible d impossibility
2. Magid is capable of .... the guitar skilfully.
   a playing b play c plays d played
3. .... you able to have tickets for yesterday match?
   a Can b Are c Will d Were

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Does this engineer know how .... (design) bridges?
2. .... (Do) they have the ability to cross the canal last week?



Review on unit

Key Vocabulary

show	عرض (مسرحي مثلاً)	century
Cool!	رائع!	point of view
cartoon	رسم كاريكاتيرى (رسم ساخر)	art
photograph	صورة فوتوغرافية	artist
photography	تصوير فوتوغرافى	favourite
drawing	الرسم بالقلم	idea
portrait	لوحة فنية (لوجه إنسان)	free
pottery	أوانى فُخّار	concert
sculpture	تمثال منحوت/فن النحت	adventure film / story
orchestra	فرقة موسيقية (أوركسترا)	think **(thought)**
musician	موسيقار	hide **(hid / hidden)**
blind	كفيف (أعمى)	recommend **(ed)**
deaf	أصم (أطرش)	wonder **(ed)**
disabled	معاق	cry **(ied)**
theme park	متنزه ترفيهي (مدينة ملاهي)	hug **(ged) (n)**
action	أحداث (فيلم/رواية)	invite **(d)**
review	مقال نقدى	escape **(d)**

Activities

painting scenery	رسم خلفية لخشبة المسرح	**sewing** costumes
playing instruments	عزف على آلات موسيقية	**doing** make-up
writing a script	كتابة نص (سيناريو)	**acting** in a play
make sculptures	ينحت تماثيل	**make** pottery
take photos	يلتقط صور	**do** calligraphy

Musical instruments

violin	آلة الكمان	guitar
piano	آلة البيانو	trumpet
flute	آلة الناى	cello
clarinet	آلة المزمار	trombone



Grammar

Ability القدرة

• للتعبير عن القدرة فى المضارع نستخدم الصيغ الآتية:

فاعل + (can / know(s) how to / (be) able to + inf.)

Ex. I can play music.
Ex. Amal knows how to sew clothes.
Ex. The boys are able to act.

• للتعبير عدم القدرة فى المضارع نستخدم الصيغ الآتية:

فاعل + (can't / don't, doesn't know how to / am not, isn't, aren't able to + inf.)

Ex. I can't swim.
Ex. Ola doesn't know how to write scripts.
Ex. The girls aren't able to drive cars.

• للسؤال عن القدرة فى المضارع نستخدم الصيغ الآتية:

Can + فاعل + inf. ....?
Do/Does + فاعل + know how to + inf. ...?
Am/Is/Are + فاعل + able to + inf. .....?

Ex. Can you ride a bike?
Ex. Does Ola know how to paint scenery?
Ex. Are the girls able to act?

Speaking

السؤال الإجابة عن القدرة

1) **Asking about and answering about ability**

• نسأل عن القدرة ونجيب باستخدام التعبيرات الآتية:

A: Can you + inf. ....?
B: Yes, I can. / No, I can't.
A: Do you know how to + inf. ....?
B: Yes, I do. / No, I don't.
A: Are you able to + inf. ....?
B: Yes, I'm. / No, I'm not, but I can...........

2 Talking about preferences

...ن التفضيل

للتعبير عما تفضله تستخدم التعبيرات الآتية:

- I prefer + n / v+ing ....
- I'd rather + inf.
- My favourite (thing) is ....
- I'm interested in + v-ing / n.

3 Asking for and giving recommendations

...وإعطاء توصيات

...ل عن التوصيات كالآتي:

- Would you recommend (n / v-ing) ....?
- What do you recommend + v-ing. ....?

...عمل التوصيات نقول:

- I recommend (that) فاعل + inf. / v-ing / n ....
- The best thing about + noun .... is that ....
- It's a good idea to + inf. ....

4 Making invitations

...يم الدعوات

لتقديم دعوات نقول:

- I'd like to invite you to + inf. ....
- I'd like you to + inf. ....
- Would you like to + inf. ....?
- I was wondering if you would like to + inf. ....

Accepting	Refusing
- I'd love to.	- I'm afraid. It won't be possible.
- That / It sounds great.	- I'd love to, but I can't because ......
- OK, with pleasure.	

5 Asking about and giving opinion

...ؤال عن وإبداء الرأي

...ل عن الرأي كالآتي:

- Do you think (that) ....?
- What do you think of / about ....?
- What is your view of / about ....?

• للتعبير عن الرأي نقول:

- In my view, / From my point of view,.......
- In my opinion, ...
- I think .....
- No, I don't think so.

6 Making offers

تقديم عروض

• لتقديم عرض نقول:

- Shall I + inf. ....?
- Would you like me to + inf. ....?

7 Making requests

تقديم طلبات

• للطلب نقول:

- Could you + inf..............?
- I was wondering if you could + inf.....

General Exercises on Unit 9

WB

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Salem is inviting Nader to his cousin's house.

Salem : I was wondering if you would like to come to my cousin's house tomorrow.

Nader : ❶ ....

Salem : We will play table tennis together.

Nader : ❷ ....?

Salem : No, he's got many table tennis balls.

Nader : Do you want me to bring anything else?

Salem : ❸ .... ? We'll have a picnic.

Nader : Of course. I'll bring some sandwiches. What time should I come?

Salem : ❹ ....

Nader : Great! ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There is a .... of the king at the entrance of the museum.
   a sculpture b cartoon c view d show
2. Let's go to the .... and fly our kites.
   a play b park c action d cinema
3. This museum was built in the 18th ....
   a country b concert c century d channel
4. A clever student knows how .... an exam easily.
   a to pass b pass c to passing d passes
5. It is nearly dark. Look, I can see a/an ....
   a star b review c sun d picnic
6. The blind man is not able to .... the traffic lights.
   a hear b smell c see d taste
7. We want to eat outside. Which restaurant do you ....?
   a burn b recover c mend d recommend
8. Our teacher .... explain the lessons wonderfully.
   a is able b can c knows how d able to
9. Mr Ali gave his children a quick ...., then he got into his car.
   a hug b hair c heart d head
10. Mrs Samia is disabled. She moves .... a wheelchair.
    a of b in c at d for
11. .... you read this English word; I can't read it?
    a Does b Does c Can d Are
12. A .... is the words for a play.
    a script b trip c photograph d sculpture
13. Is it all right to .... my car here?
    a mark b park c bark d escape
14. .... you help me answer these difficult questions?
    a Is b Does c Can d Are
15. I know .... to make coffee.
    a whose b what c which d how

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I .... (can) go to school on foot; it's too far.
2. .... (Be) they able to write scripts? البحيرة - التحرير 2022
3. .... (Do) your brother know how to fly a kite?
4. Mr Ashraf .... (can't) speak English very well. He is very good at it.
5. Do your sisters know how .... (sewing) clothes?

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on: WB

"Difficulties that disabled people have"

....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Who are disabled people?
- How can we help them?
- How should we treat them?
- Are they important to our country? How?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Disabled people can't ....
- We can help disabled people by ....
- We should treat them ....

Azhar Exercises

تدريبات الأزهر الشريف

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Eman Badr is a/an
   a. mechanic b. electrician c. musician d. engineer
2. She started playing the violin when she was
   a. six b. seven c. sixteen d. eight

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1- Ramy : I was wondering if you could come to my sister's wedding party.
Amr : ....

2- Lara : ....
Mustafa : I recommend watching "Jurassic World".

3- Waleed : Do you know how to play tennis?
Karam : ....

4- Hady : ....
Reem : My favourite musical instrument is the guitar.

3 Write a paragraph of FIVE(5) sentences on: SB

"A review of a film you have just watched (Jurassic World)"

....
....
....
....
....

يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة السابقة:
- What's the name of the film?
- What's it about?
- What do you think of it?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- I watched a film called ....
- The film is about ....
- In my opinion, the action is .... / the story is ....

Paragraphs & Emails

Paragraphs

1. A review of a museum I know "The Museum of Modern Egyptian Art"

Last week, I visited the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art. It is in Cairo. It's famous for art in Egypt from the 20th and 21st centuries. The artists were really good. They showed what life was like in Egypt in the past and now. The cartoons were also really cool! I also saw lots of sculptures. My favourite thing was a painting called Al Madina by Mahmoud Said. I recommend it to all my friends.

2. Difficulties that disabled people have

We see disabled people around us. There are blind people who can't see. There are deaf people who can't hear. There are some people who can't walk. They are useful to our country. Some of them do important jobs. Try to help disabled people. Do not leave bags on the floor on public means of transport. Tell a blind person about objects on the street. Shout at a person if you think they can't hear you. Ask a person in a wheelchair if they need help. We should all treat them as normal people like us.

3- A review of a film I have just watched "Jurassic World" (Azhar)

I watched a film called "Jurassic World." It is an adventure film. I think the action is exciting. But, in my opinion, the story isn't very interesting or new. I recommend this film if you like exciting and scary films.

Emails

1- Someone in my family that I'm proud of

From : ramypost@gmail.com
To : salah666@yahoo.com
Subject : Someone in my family that I am proud of

Dear Salah,

How are you? How is your family? I write this email to tell you about my family. My grandparents live with us. I am so proud of my grandfather. He doesn't work now. He was a famous musician in the past. He played the violin. He played in a famous orchestra. Many people know him. They like his music very much. You can see his shows on Youtube. I'd like to know about your family, too. Write to me soon. With my best wishes.

Yours,
Ramy

2- An invitation to my birthday

From : hassanpost@gmail.com
To : emad666@yahoo.com
Subject : An invitation

Dear Emad,

How are you and your family? It's a pleasure to tell you that my birthday is next Sunday. I was wondering if you could come to my house on that day. I'll be very happy if you come. All our friends will be there. We are having a big party. We will spend a nice time. We will eat cakes, play games and have fun. The party will start at 8 p.m. Please, don't be late.

Yours,
Hassan



Unit 9 Test

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال فى آخر الكتاب

1. The speaker visited a .... last month.
   - a theatre
   - b museum
   - c pyramid
   - d temple
2. The place that the speaker visited was in ....
   - a Cairo
   - b Aswan
   - c Luxor
   - d Giza
3. Egypt is famous for its ancient ....
   - a music
   - b history
   - c art
   - d monuments
4. The speaker was interested in seeing art by ....
   - a Americans
   - b Africans
   - c Japanese
   - d Egyptians

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Galal is inviting Mustafa to the zoo.

Galal : Hi, would you like to go to the zoo with us?

Mustafa : 1 ....

Galal : We can spend a nice time there.

Mustafa : 2 ....

Galal : No, but could you bring some fruit?

Mustafa : Of course. 3 ....

Galal : At 7 a.m.

Mustafa : Where will we meet?

Galal : 4 ....

Mustafa : OK. Goodbye! 5 ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I read a review of the story "Oliver Twist". The story is about a child whose mother died when he was born. Oliver was a sad boy. He worked hard when he was a child and he had no money. He escaped to London. In London, he met Fagin, the leader of some thieves, who taught children how to steal. Luckily, Oliver found people who took good care of <u>him</u> and helped him. My favourite character is Mr Brownlow, who took care of Oliver and loved him.

In my opinion, the story is very exciting. I liked the fact that Fagin tried to change Oliver, but Oliver continued to be a good boy. I liked the end of this story.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the the passage about?

   ....
2. Who was Fagin?

   ....
3. Why do you think Oliver escaped?

   ....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The writer read a .... of "Oliver Twist".
   - a review
   - b letter
   - c film
   - d message
5. Oliver's mother .... when he was born.
   - a married
   - b worked
   - c escaped
   - d died
6. The underlined pronoun "him" refers to ....
   - a the writer
   - b Fagin
   - c Oliver
   - d Mr Brownlow

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In my ...., Egypt has the finest weather.
   - a vision
   - b view
   - c review
   - d revision
2. I .... play music, but I can't paint.
   - a can't
   - b am not able to
   - c don't know how to
   - d am able to
3. .... people cannot walk. (الجيزة - شمال الجيزة 2022) WB
   - a Disabled
   - b Deaf
   - c Dumb
   - d Strong
4. My father knows how .... his car himself.
   - a repair
   - b repairing
   - c to repairing
   - d to repair
5. Many famous .... act in that new film. I recommend it.
   - a moons
   - b stars
   - c writers
   - d reviewers
6. My little child is skillful at ...., he uses a pencil.
   - a drawing
   - b sewing
   - c painting
   - d acting

7. Manal opened her arms and gave her mother a big ....
a harm b half c hug d hit

8. This deaf boy is not able to .... me.
a see b talk c walk d hear

9. Hamid .... able to play basketball. He is very tall.
a is b are c knows d can

10. "Titanic" is a film that is full of ....
a act b review c action d report

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brac...

1. All the students in my class know how .... (writing) in En...
2. I .... (can) read this English word. I'll ask Mr Ali to help m...
3. Miss Walaa .... (are) able to teach young children clever...
4. .... (you know) how to do any of the types of arts? 2022 ...

E Writing

6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

to your friend Emad inviting him to your birthday party.

-Your name is Hassan and your email address is hassanpost@gmail.co...

-Your friend's email address is emad666@yahoo.com

....

....

....

....

...كمن خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الالكتروني:

- Why do you send this email?
- What do you invite your friend to?
- Who will be in the party?

...كن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- It's a pleasure to tell you that ....
- I was wondering if you ....
- The party will start at ....

Review C

SB pages 32 - 33 WB pages 31 - 32

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

play	مسرحية	mistakes	أخطاء
acting	تمثيل	ruler	حاكم
Julius Caesar	يوليوس قيصر	mask	كمامة
COVID 19	مرض فيروس كورونا «كوفيد ١٩»	committee	لجنة
safely	بأمان	food stall	كشك لبيع الطعام
mostly	غالبا	Handball World Championship	بطول العالم لكرة اليد
medical	طبي		



Reading SB P. (32)

موضوعات القراءة

استمع إلى النصوص

Medical advice for people at the 2021 Handball World Championship



- Stand 1.5 metres from other people.
- Enter and leave the stadium[1] through the correct doors.
- Take a test for COVID 19[2] every 72 hours.
- Only players do not need to wear a mask[3].
- Only online interviews[4] after games.

Arabic Meaning
١- استاد
٢- فيروس كورونا
٣- كمامة
٤- مقابلة شخصية

SB Page (32)

There will be a lot of players at the 2021 Men's Handball World Championship[1]. The Championship's medical committee[2] want to make sure that all the people at the competition are able to play together safely[3]. For that reason[4], they want only a few people to use the doors to the stadium at the same time. People who are not playing need to wear a mask. You can find a lot of these just outside the stadium and they are free[5] to use. All players should know how to get a COVID 19 test[6] every 72 hours.



Arabic Meaning
١- بطولة
٢- لجنة طبية
٣- بأمان
٤- سبب
٥- مجاني
٦- فحص/اختبار



SB Page (32)

Review of Julius Caesar

Last night, I went to see *Julius Caesar*. It's a play[1] by the English writer William Shakespeare, but it's about a Roman ruler[2]. Caesar's costume[3] made him look very important! The scenery[4] was amazing and it really looked like Ancient Rome.

In my opinion, the story is very sad and I cried at the end. From my point of view, the actor[5] who played Caesar was the best but all the acting[6] was very good. I will never forget this play, but there wasn't much action[7]: it was mostly talking. And it was three hours long! If you watch a Shakespeare play, you should know that the language of the script[8] is different to modern English so it can be difficult to understand, but I liked it.

Arabic Meaning
مسرحية
حاكم
منظر طبيعي «خلفية»
ممثل
تمثيل
حركة/احداث
نص/سيناريو

SB Page (33)

HELP WITH SPECIAL CONCERT AT CHILDREN'S HOSPITAL!

You don't need to know how to play an instrument[1] or sing, but we need people who can paint scenery, help with make-up and costumes and help the children before and after the concert[2].

Email Mr Zaki, the music teacher, if you would like to help.

WB Page (92)

(1) Review for a play

The people look like they are from Ancient Egypt because the costumes are very good, but the person who painted the scenery did not know how to paint! It was very long, and I didn't like the music. I wouldn't recommend[1] this.

(2) Review for a magazine

The articles are always really interesting to read and they have fantastic photographs[2], too. I really like the cartoons[3] because they make me laugh! If you want to learn about the world today, you should buy this!

(3) Review for a museum

From my point of view, this is the best place to find out about life in the last centu... There are interesting sculptures[4] of people and some amazing old technolog... I loved the big, old phones[5]!

(4) Review for a book

The story was very slow and there was very little action. I didn't really enjo... because it made[6] me feel sad. The best[7] thing about it was learning what it is l... to be blind. That must be very difficult.

Arabic Meaning
يوصي بـ
صور فوتوغرافية
رسوم كاريكاتير
منحوتات
هواتف
لجعل
افضل

Audio script نصوص الاستماع

SB Page (33)

Heba : What's your favourite food, Sara? I like fruit, such as a nice juicy mango! I like fruit more than anything else .... and the fruit I like best of all ... It's difficult to decide".

Sara : I like fruit too Heba, but my favourite food is a nice, fresh falafel[1]. There is a food stall[2] near my house where they are very good, and my mum sometimes cooks them, too.

Arabic Meaning
١- فلافل [طعمية] طازجة
٢- كشك لبيع الطعام

Heba : What things do you know how to cook, Sara? I can make omelettes and salads, but I don't know how to make many things.

Sara : I know how to make cakes. My grandmother taught me. I love making cakes, but I eat too many of them. I should eat more fruit.

Heba : Yes, I eat too many cakes, too! I don't do enough exercise. I have a sports lesson at school once a week, and I go for a walk a few times a month with my cousins but that's all. What about you?

Sara : I play tennis twice a week and I run with my father at the weekend, so I do enough exercise, but I often spend too much time playing computer games in the evenings, so I go to bed late.

Heba : Yes, I spend too much time online in the evenings, too. Let's try to do more exercise next week, Sara!

Sara : Good idea, Heba!

WB Page (91)

Amal : It's Mum's birthday. Let's make her some breakfast.
Dalida : That's a good idea, Amal. We could make her a fruit salad.
Amal : I think she prefers salty food to sweet food, Dalida. What about a cheese omelette?
Dalida : Omelette is a good idea. Would you like to get the butter from the fridge, Amal?
Amal : OK.
Dalida : Shall I beat the eggs? I like doing that. How many eggs should I use?
Amal : Thanks, Dalida. If there are four of us, you should use eight eggs.
Dalida : Do you know how to chop the cheese, Amal.
Amal : Of course.
Dalida : It's a good idea to chop the cheese really small. I'll heat some butter in the pan and pour in the eggs.
Amal : How long should it cook for?
Dalida : We'll leave it for a few minutes.
Amal : It looks really nice. I'd like a lot please.
Dalida : We can all have a little. Mum will be very pleased!

Test on Units 7,8 & 9



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

...الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال فى اخر الكتاب

1. The articles in the book are always ....
   a boring b interesting c bad d horrible
2. The articles have fantastic .... , too.
   a stories b news c writings d photographs
3. The speaker really likes the ....
   a cartoons b papers c men d writers
4. The cartoons make the speaker ....
   a cry b study c laugh d speak

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Adel and Hossam are talking about a play.

Adel : Last night, I went to see Julius Caesar.

Hossam : What is it?

Adel : 1 ....

Hossam : 2 ....

Adel : The English writer William Shakespeare.

Hossam : 3 ....

Adel : It's about a Roman ruler.

Hossam : What do you think about it?

Adel : 4 .... The story is very sad.

Hossam : 5 ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

One day a crow picked up a piece of cheese from the ground in its beak. It flew up into a tree. A hungry fox saw the crow with the cheese.

The fox wanted to make the crow get away from the cheese. He looked up and smiled at the crow. "What a beautiful bird you are," he said.

The crow said nothing.

"What lovely feathers you have got,!" the fox said.

The crow said nothing.

"Have you got a beautiful voice as well?" the fox asked.

The crow opened its beak to sing so that she could show the fox. **It** fell to the ground. The fox ate it up greedily.

"Thank you," said the fox and ran off.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What did the crow do after it picked the piece of cheese?
   ....
2. What did the fox want?
   ....
3. Do you think the crow had a beautiful voice?
   ....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The fox is a/an .... animal.
   a lazy b clever c fool d honest
5. The underlined word "It" refers to the..........
   a fox b crow c cheese d ground
6. In the end, the fox .... the piece of cheese.
   a got b lost c threw d sold

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you meet other people, you .... stand 1.5 metres away from them. SB
   a will b should c are d have
2. There are .... people on the bus. WB
   a a few b much c a lot d any

3. The .... in that magazine really make me laugh.
   a rulers b screens c cartoons d cartons
4. We watched really amazing .... at the museum.
   a trips b sculptures c picnics d beds
5. That film isn't very interesting. I'd never .... it.
   a hate b dislike c comment d recomm...
6. The best part of the play was the fantastic ....
   a camera b scenery c cartoon d screen
7. All of us should wear .... to help stop COVID19.
   a masks b glasses c trousers d caps
8. .... you able to help with make-up, Leila?
   a Do b Have c Are d Will
9. .... clothes is an interesting work.
   a Playing b Writing c Acting d Sewing
10. This .... shows all the details of an old man's face.
   a portrait b crop c script d scenery

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brack...

1- If you .... (not study) well, you will get low marks.
2- If you know how to cook, you .... (work) in a restaurant.
3- There were not .... (some) students at school yesterd...
4- This player .... (can't) run fast, but he can't score goals.

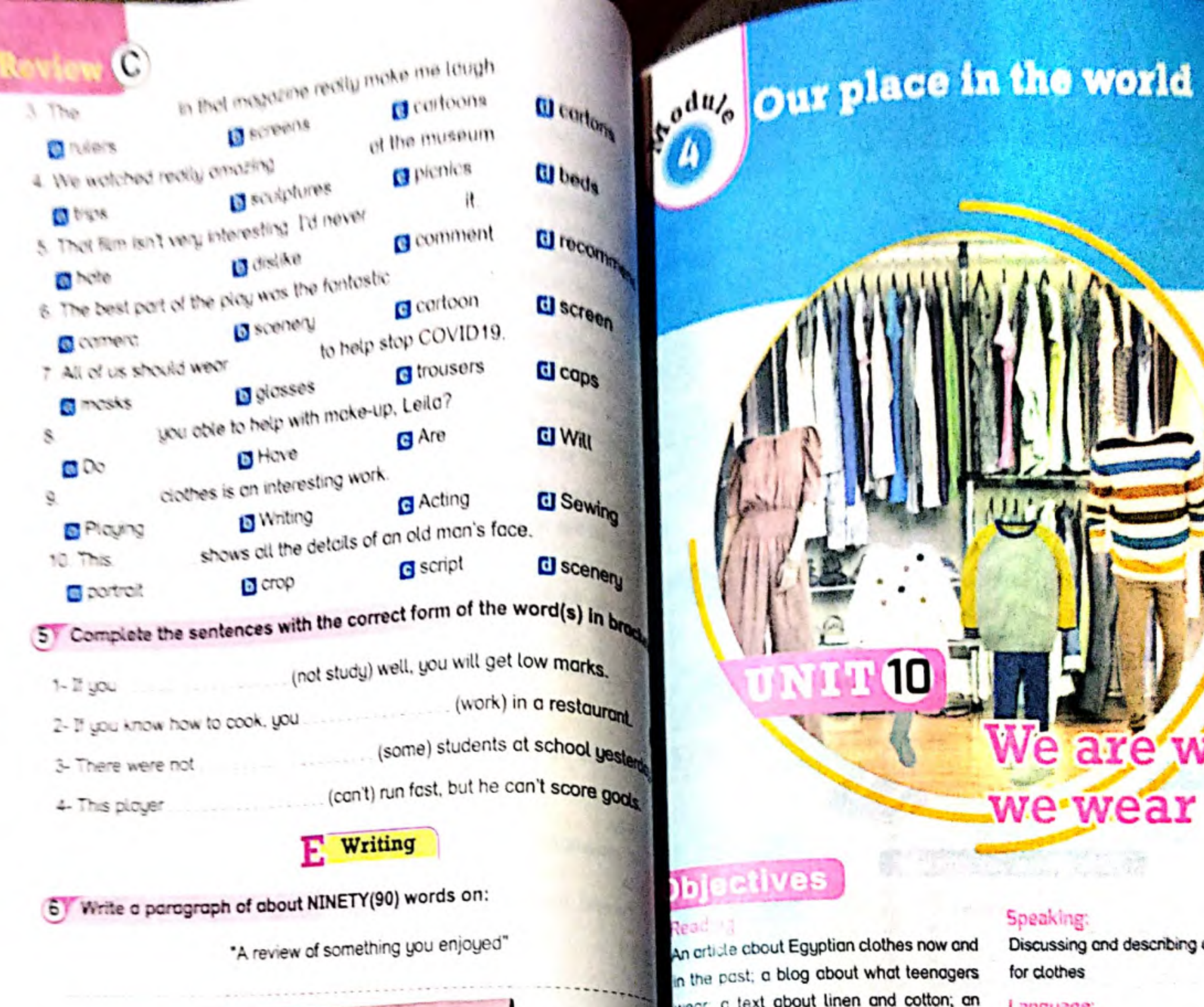
E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on:

"A review of something you enjoyed"

AltFwok.com

Module 4 Our place in the world



UNIT 10 We are what we wear

Objectives

Reading:
An article about Egyptian clothes now and in the past; a blog about what teenagers wear; a text about linen and cotton; an advert

Writing:
An advert to sell something

Listening:
People talking about their clothes; a conversation in a clothes shop

Speaking:
Discussing and describing clothes; shopping for clothes

Language:
Adjective order; one, ones
this / that, these / those (revision)

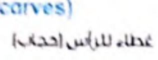
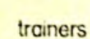
Life Skills:
Respect for diversity

Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 34 - 37 WB pages ...

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

belt حزام 	earrings قرط (حلق) 
headscarf (headscarves) غطاء للرأس (حجاب)	galabeya جلباب 
scarf (scarves) شال / وشاح / كوفية 	sunglasses نظارة شمس
handbag حقيبة يد (حريمى)  	sandals صندل 
trainers حذاء رياضى 	

Adjectives for clothes

smart	أنيق/مهندم	pretty	...يل
traditional	تقليدى	colourful	...الوان/ذو ملابس زاهية
comfortable	مريح (للملابس)/ مستريح (للشخص)	casual*	...رسمى (ملابس)
uncomfortable	غير مريح	nice	...يف
loose	فضفاض / واسع	simple	...يط
cheap	رخيص	striped*	...لم/ مخطط
expensive	غالى الثمن	heavy	...يل
strange	غريب		

Clothes and materials

shirt	قميص	cotton	القطن
jumper	بلوفر	linen	الكتان
trousers	بنطلون	gold	الذهب
skirt	جيبة	metal	المعدن
shorts	شورت	leather	الجلد المدبوغ
jeans	بنطلون جينز	glass	الزجاج
		plastic	البلاستيك
		wool	الصوف

Vocabulary

sheet	ملاءة	a bit	قليلاً
material	مادة خام	necklace	عقد
boot	حذاء برقبة (بوت)	similar	مشابه/متشابه
shoes	حذاء	differently	بشكل مختلف
climate	مناخ	flat	شقة
relaxed	مسترخى/مستريح	electric	كهربى (يعمل بالكهرباء)
style	نمط/أسلوب	wooden	خشبى
size	حجم/ مقاس	protect (ed)	يحمى
clothing	الملابس (الملبس)	dress (ed)(n)	يرتدى / فستان
jewellery	مجوهرات		

Words & Meanings

cotton	قطن	material made from the cotton plant, used to make shirts, trousers etc.
glass	زجاج	a hard[1] material which is used to make windows, bottles and other objects
gold	ذهب	made of a very valuable[2] yellow metal used to make coins and jewellery
leather	جلد مدبوغ	a material made from an animal, used to make shoes, bags, clothes etc.
linen	كتان	a strong material made from part of the flax plant[3]
plastic	بلاستيك	an artificial[4] material which has many different uses
metal	معدن	a hard, strong material often used to make bridges, the inside of buildings, etc
wool	صوف	the soft, thick material that comes from the hair of sheep and some other animals
handbag حقيبة يد (حريمى)		a small bag, usually carried by women, used for money, keys, make-up, etc.
casual	غير رسمى	casual clothes are not formal or not suitable[5] for special occasions[6]

Arabic Meaning

١- صلب
٢- ذو قيمة
٣- نبات الكتان
٤- اصطناعى
٥- مناسب
٦- مناسبات

galabeya	جلباب	a long, loose piece of clothing
earring	قرط/حلق	a piece of jewellery, usually one of a pair, worn in or on a...
headscarf	غطاء رأس/حجاب	material that women wear to cover their hair
jewellery	مجوهرات	objects that you wear on your clothes or body that are us... made from valuable stones or metals, such as gold and sil...

Expressions & Prepositions

look like	يشبه	with a belt
keep warm / cool	يحتفظ بالدفء/بالبرودة	look for
most of the time	معظم الوقت	protect.... from
the same as	مثل	take turns
feel relaxed	يشعر بالراحة	dress in a traditional style
look smart	يبدو أنيقًا	type of
(be) made of	مصنوع من	

Word		Meaning	Opposite
loose	واسع/فضفاض	baggy	tight
heavy	ثقيل	weighty	light
cheap	رخيص الثمن	inexpensive	expensive
similar	مشابه	alike	different

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
buy	يشتري	bought	bought
make	يصنع	made	made

Language Notes

1) (be) made of / (be) made from

- **(be) made of** مصنوع من (تستخدم عندما لا تتغير المادة المصنوع منها الشيء.)

Ex. These shoes are made of leather.

- **(be) made from** مصنوع من (تستخدم عندما تتغير المادة المصنوع منها الشيء.)

Ex. This cake is made from flour.

2) shoes / trousers / earrings / sandals / trainers / sunglasses

- تتكون بعض الملابس من جزئين غير منفصلين مثل (sunglasses - trousers) وتكون دائمًا جمع.
- أو جزئين منفصلين مثل (earrings - shoes) وهذه الكلمات جمع إذا قصدنا الجزئين ويمكن الإشارة إلى جزء واحد منهما مثل (earring - shoe).

Ex. My new trousers are loose. I like wearing them.

Ex. These earrings are made of gold.

- ونستخدم (زوج من a pair of) أمام الكلمات السابقة ويأتي بعدها فعل مفرد.

Ex. I have a lovely pair of boots.

Ex. A pair of sandals is good in hot weather.

3) wear / dress / put on

- **wear (wore / worn)** يرتدي (ملابس/مجوهرات/اكسسوارات.... الخ.)

Ex. I wear trousers and a T-shirt to school.

Ex. Women usually wear jewellery to look beautiful.

- **dress (ed)** يلبس (لا يأتي بعدها ملابس)

Ex. Every morning, I wash, dress and go to school.

- **put (put / put) on** يرتدي (قطعة من الملابس/نظارة/قبعة...الخ)

Ex. I felt cold, so I put on my jacket.

Ex. Mr Ali put on his glasses to read the letter.

4) glass / a glass / glasses

- **glass (n)** زجاج (مادة خام) (اسم لا يُعد)

Ex. The window is made of wood and glass.

- **a glass (n)** كوب زجاجي (اسم يُعد)

Ex. Give me a glass of water, please.

- **glasses (n)** نظارة

Ex. He can't read without his glasses.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Doors are made .... wood and glass.
   a from   b in   c of   d for
2. Whose sunglasses .... these?
   a are   b is   c was   d have
3. This pair of boots .... useful when it rains.
   a were   b is   c are   d have
4. We .... sunglasses on sunny days.
   a dress   b dressed   c get dressed   d wear





SB Page (35)



استمع إلى النصوص

1. Narrator: Huda
I'm Huda. These are the types of clothes I usually wear. I like to be comfortable[1] and feel relaxed[2] in my clothes. These sunglasses[3] were a present[4] from my Mum and I love them. I think I wear them outside most days!

2. Narrator: Tarek
I'm Tarek and I wear these clothes when I'm helping my father. It's really hot outside today and these traditional clothes[5] keep me cool and protect[6] me from the sun when I'm working.

3. Narrator: Sara
I'm Sara and I'm wearing my favourite colour today! I think I dress in a traditional style[7] but I like to be colourful[8]. My headscarf[9] is from the market. It's a cool colour, isn't it?

4. Narrator: Adam
My name's Adam and I'm going for a special meal[10] with my grandparents, which is why I'm wearing these clothes. I usually wear jeans, but I think I look a bit like my father when he is quite like looking smart[12], but I think I look a bit like my father when he is going to work!

Say it correctly
- casual — في هذه الكلمة كمثيله في كلمة (usual) (s)
- striped — (t) مثل الصوت (ed) وتنطق (try) نفس نطق (tri) الجزء الملون



SB P. (36)

Clothes in Ancient Egypt

In Ancient Egypt[1], men and women wore[2] similar[3] clothes. They both wore loose[4], white, linen[5] clothes with a belt[6]. Most of[7] the time, Ancient Egyptians did not wear shoes but people sometimes wore expensive leather sandals[8]. Children did not usually wear many clothes until they were about six years old. Then they started to wear the same clothes as their parents.

Although Ancient Egyptians' clothes were simple, they loved to wear heavy[9], metal jewellery[10]. Like some people today, they liked to wear beautiful gold necklaces[11] and other jewellery.



Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

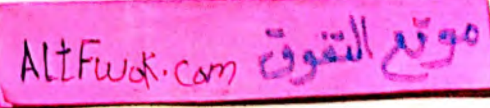
1. .... are usually made of leather.
   a Scarves   b Belts   c Galabeyas   d Jewellery
2. Gamal always wears .... in summer.
   a earrings   b handbags   c sandals   d skirts
3. Famous players usually wear expensive .... that help them run fast.
   a trainers   b galabeyas   c skirts   d scarves
4. I always wear .... to protect my eyes from the sun.
   a trainers   b earrings   c sunglasses   d sandals
5. My new pair of shoes .... black.
   a were   b is   c are   d have

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. It is a beautiful jacket. You look very .... (المنوفية - السادات 2022)
   a strange   b smart   c long   d intelligent
2. It's a long, blue .... You wear it around your neck. (الجيزة - شمال الجيزة 2022) SB
   a belt   b handbag   c sandals   d scarf
3. Are his clothes smart or .... ? WB
   a greedy   b casual   c clever   d snowy
4. Do her clothes look .... or uncomfortable? WB
   a comfortable   b similar   c gold   d electric
5. In Ancient Egypt, clothes made of .... were popular. SB
   a oil   b plastic   c linen   d wheat



6. .... are jewellery that women wear around their necks.
a Handbags b Headscarves c Galabeyas d Necklaces

7. In Ancient Egypt, men and women didn't .... very differently.
a call b dress c cost d press

Bit by Bit Exercises

8. .... clothes are usually comfortable.
a Tight b Wooden c Lost d Loose

9. This .... is made of expensive leather.
a handbag b earrings c necklace d glass

10. Rasha couldn't wear these .... because her ears hurt.
a trainers b sandals c earrings d trousers

11. My grandfather likes to wear loose .... in hot weather.
a galabeyas b handbags c sheets d jumpers

12. Before I play football, I wear my ....
a handbag b galabeyas c skirts d trainers

Grammar

Remember

1- Comparative and Superlative adjectives صفات المقارنة والتفضيل

تنقسم الصفات إلى قصيرة وطويلة.

الصفات القصيرة (تحتوى على مقطع صوتى واحد)

smart	أنيق	pretty	جميل	heavy	
cheap	رخيص	nice	لطيف	warm	

الصفات الطويلة (تحتوى على أكثر من مقطع صوتى)

traditional	تقليدى	casual	غير رسمى	different	
comfortable	مريح	colourful	زاهى الالوان	popular	محبوب

تستخدم صيغة المقارنة Comparative للمقارنة بين شيئين او شخصين.

تستخدم صيغة التفضيل Superlative للتفضيل بين واحد ومجموعة.

• تختلف صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل حسب الصفة ما إذا كانت قصيرة أو طويلة كما يلى:

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
short adjective "smart"	صفة + er + than "smarter than" Ex. Your shirt is smarter than mine.	the + صفة + est "the smartest" Ex. This shirt is the smartest in the shop.
long adjective "comfortable"	أكثر / أقل more / less + صفة + than Ex. My trousers are more comfortable than yours.	الأكثر / الأقل the most / the least + صفة Ex. Ali's trousers are the most comfortable.

لاحظ الآتى

• للتعبير عن تساوى شخصين/شيئين فى نفس الصفة نستخدم:

اسم + (be) + as + صفة + as + اسم

Ex. This handbag is as cheap as mine.

• للتعبير عن عدم تساوى شخصين/شيئين فى نفس الصفة نستخدم

اسم + (be) + not so / as + صفة + as + اسم

Ex. Those earrings are not so / as cheap as Mona's.

• يمكن استخدام صيغة التفضيل متبوعة بصيغة زمن المضارع التام مع كلمة ever كالآتى:

صيغة التفضيل + فاعل + have / has ever + p.p.

Ex. This is the biggest car I have ever seen.

Ex. It's the most expensive necklace she has ever bought.

تكوين المقارنة / التفضيل

• هناك بعض الصفات القصيرة تنتهى بـ حرف e يضاف (r) فقط عند تكوين صيغة المقارنة ويضاف (st) فقط عند تكوين صيغة التفضيل:

nice ➡ nicer than ➡ the nicest

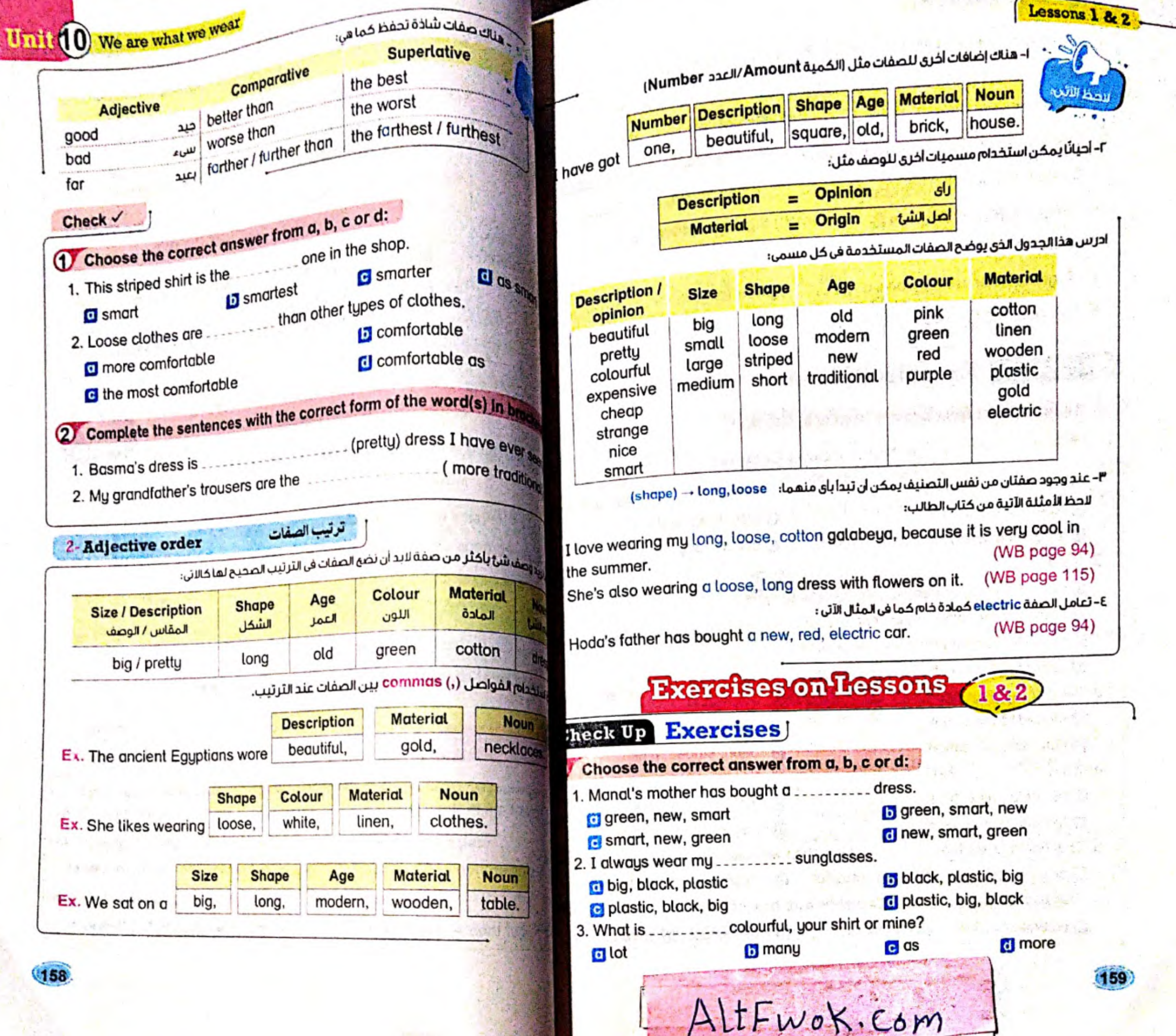
• هناك بعض الصفات تنتهى بـ حرف ساكن + y تحول (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (er) أو (est):

pretty ➡ prettier than ➡ the prettiest / heavy ➡ heavier than ➡ the heaviest

• هناك بعض الصفات تنتهى بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك يضاعف الحرف الأخير:

big ➡ bigger than ➡ the biggest / thin ➡ thinner than ➡ the thinnest





هناك صفات شاذة تحفظ كما هي:

Adjective		Comparative	Superlative
good	جيد	better than	the best
bad	سيء	worse than	the worst
far	بعيد	farther / further than	the farthest / furthest

Check ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This striped shirt is the .... one in the shop.
   a smart b smartest c smarter d as smar
2. Loose clothes are .... than other types of clothes.
   a more comfortable b comfortable c the most comfortable d comfortable as

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brack

1. Basma's dress is .... (pretty) dress I have ever se
2. My grandfather's trousers are the .... (more traditiona

2- Adjective order ترتيب الصفات

عند وصف شئ بأكثر من صفة لابد أن نضع الصفات فى الترتيب الصحيح لها كالاتى:

Size / Description المقاس / الوصف	Shape الشكل	Age العمر	Colour اللون	Material المادة	No
big / pretty	long	old	green	cotton	dre

...ستخدم الفواصل (,) commas بين الصفات عند الترتيب.

	Description	Material	Noun
Ex. The ancient Egyptians wore	beautiful,	gold,	necklac

	Shape	Colour	Material	Noun
Ex. She likes wearing	loose,	white,	linen,	clothes.

	Size	Shape	Age	Material	Noun
Ex. We sat on a	big,	long,	modern,	wooden,	table.

لاحظ الآتي

١- هناك إضافات أخرى للصفات مثل الكمية Amount/العدد Number)

	Number	Description	Shape	Age	Material	Noun
I have got	one,	beautiful,	square,	old,	brick,	house.

٢- أحيانًا يمكن استخدام مسميات أخرى للوصف مثل:

Description	=	Opinion	رأى
Material	=	Origin	أصل الشئ

ادرس هذا الجدول الذى يوضح الصفات المستخدمة فى كل مسمى:

Description / opinion	Size	Shape	Age	Colour	Material
beautiful	big	long	old	pink	cotton
pretty	small	loose	modern	green	linen
colourful	large	striped	new	red	wooden
expensive	medium	short	traditional	purple	plastic
cheap					gold
strange					electric
nice					
smart					

٣- عند وجود صفتان من نفس التصنيف يمكن أن تبدأ بأى منهما: (shape) → long, loose

لاحظ الأمثلة الآتية من كتاب الطالب:

I love wearing my long, loose, cotton galabeya, because it is very cool in the summer. (WB page 94)

She's also wearing a loose, long dress with flowers on it. (WB page 115)

٤- تعامل الصفة electric كمادة خام كما فى المثال الآتى:

Hoda's father has bought a new, red, electric car. (WB page 94)

Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Manal's mother has bought a .... dress.
   a green, new, smart b green, smart, new
   c smart, new, green d new, smart, green
2. I always wear my .... sunglasses.
   a big, black, plastic b black, plastic, big
   c plastic, black, big d plastic, big, black
3. What is .... colourful, your shirt or mine?
   a lot b many c as d more

4. My grandparents live in a .... house on the beach.
a big, new, wooden
b new, big, wooden
c wooden, big, new
d new, wooden, big

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Emad loves wearing his .... (linen, loose, red) T-shirt.
2. This little girl has got a .... (small) toy than her brother's.
3. Ancient Egyptians wore .... (linen, white, loose) clothes.
4. My grandfather usually wears a .... (green, long, cotton, loose) galabeya.
5. This poor man is wearing a/an .... (old, wool, simple) shirt.

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. What a .... blouse! 2022 الفيوم
a nice, cotton, long
b nice, long, cotton
c long, nice, cotton
d cotton, long, nice

2. It's a ....
a beautiful necklace brown and orange
b necklace beautiful, brown and orange
c beautiful, brown and necklace orange
d beautiful, brown and orange necklace

3. It's a .... scarf.
a striped, cotton, pink
b striped, pink, cotton
c pink, striped, cotton
d cotton, striped, pink

4. It's a .... skirt.
a beautiful, new, blue
b blue, beautiful, new
c beautiful, blue, new
d blue, new, beautiful

5. This dress looks the .... in the shop window.
a as colourful
b more colourful
c colourful
d most colourful

6. This is the .... dress Doaa has ever bought.
a casual
b casual as
c most casual
d more casual

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. Can I have the .... size, please?
a most big
b more big
c as big
d biggest

8. This galabeya is .... than the one in the other shop.
a most traditional
b more traditional
c traditional
d as traditional

9. This rich woman is wearing a .... necklace.
a beautiful, modern, gold
b modern, beautiful, gold
c gold, beautiful, modern
d beautiful, gold, modern

10. Yesterday, I bought a .... shirt.
a linen, loose, white
b white, loose, linen
c loose, linen, white
d loose, white, linen

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The galabeya that I bought yesterday is .... (the more comfortable). SB
2. They are beautiful .... (plastic, white, new) sunglasses. البحيرة 2022
3. It's a/an .... (cotton, old, striped) scarf. SB
4. Look at that .... (pretty, gold, long) necklace. WB
5. Soha will not wear her .... (long, cotton, green) skirt.

Speaking

Describing clothes وصف الملابس

- نصف الملابس من حيث الآتي:

size	المقاس	colour	اللون
shape	الشكل	material	المادة المستخدمة
age	العمر		

- ويراعى في الوصف اتباع الترتيب (ارجع الى شرح هذا الموضوع في Grammar)
- It's a striped, pink, cotton scarf.
- It's a beautiful brown and orange necklace.

كما يمكن أن نصف الملابس باستخدام صفات التفضيل كما يلي:

- This shirt is the smartest. هذا القميص هو الأكثر أناقة.
- That dress is the nicest. ذلك الفستان هو الأجمل.
- These trousers are the most comfortable. هذا البنطلون هو الأكثر راحة.
- That scarf is the most colourful. ذلك الوشاح هو الأكثر ألوانا.

General Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hani is talking to Emad about his clothes.

Hani : Hello, Emad! How are you?

Emad : ❶ ....

Hani : Your clothes are very smart.

Emad : ❷ ....

Hani : ❸ ....

Emad : This shirt is made of cotton.

Hani : ❹ ....

Emad : It's 300 pounds.

Hani : Oh! ❺ ....

Emad : You're right. It's made of an expensive material.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This cloth is made from a mixture of .... and cotton.
   a wood b electricity c plastic d linen
2. Hoda's father has bought a/an .... car.
   a red, new, electric b new, red, electric c electric, red, new d red, electric, new
3. I usually wear a cotton .... inside the house.
   a earrings b galabeya c handbag d trainers
4. The opposite of "loose" is ....
   a heavy b cheap c light d tight
5. I always .... relaxed when I wear these clothes.
   a feel b fall c fail d fill
6. This old man is .... as my grandfather.
   a better b as good c best d good

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- It's a .... (linen, beautiful, new, blue) dress. WB
- They are .... (more expensive) sunglasses in this shop. SB
- Linen clothes are .... (nicest). SB
- It's a .... (purple, nice, wool) jumper. SB المنوفية - السادات 2022

Write an email of about NINETY (90) words: (مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

your friend Ihab describing the clothes you usually wear.

-Your name is Tamer and your email address is tamer505@yahoo.com

-Your friend's email address is ihabomar22@gamil.com

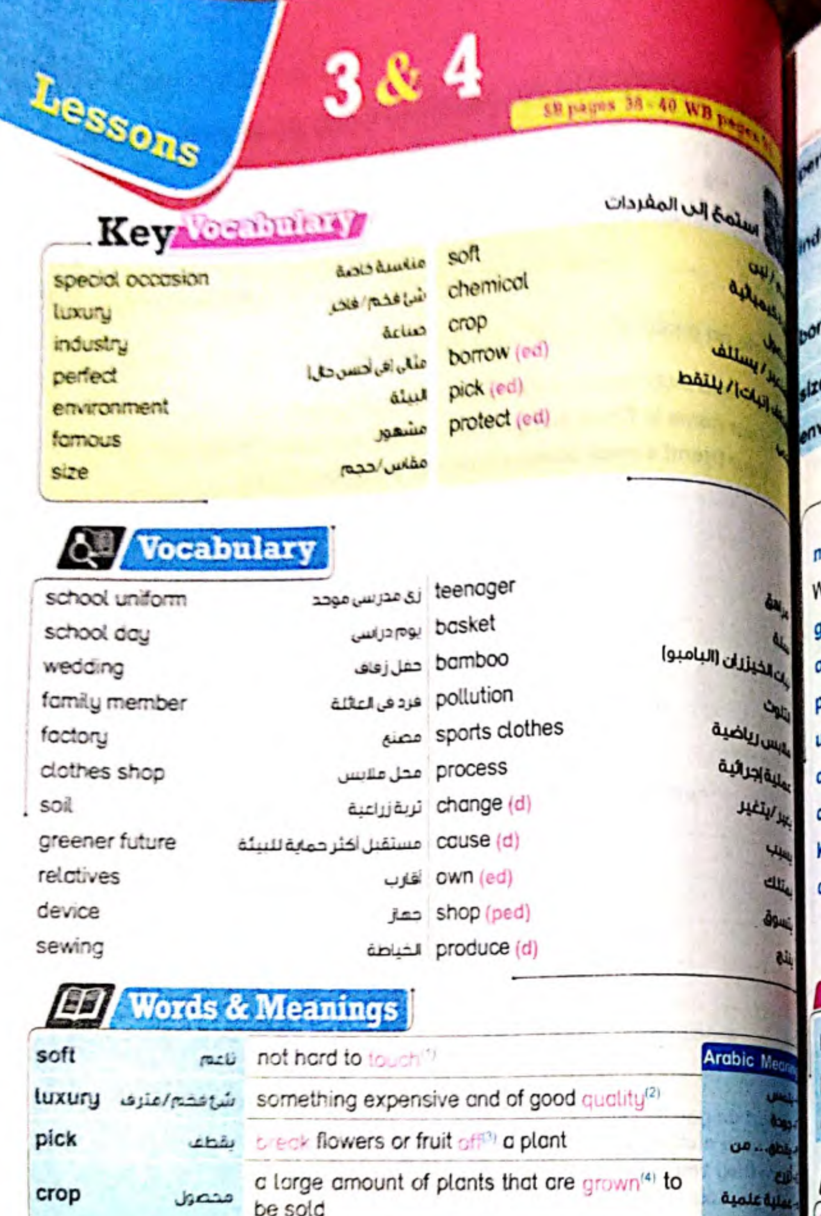
....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الالكتروني:

- What do you usually wear?
- Do your clothes look comfortable or uncomfortable?
- Are they smart or casual?
- Do you like what you wear? Why / Why not?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I usually wear ....
- My clothes are ....
- I like .... clothes.



Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 38 - 40 WB pages ...

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

special occasion	مناسبة خاصة	soft	... / لين
luxury	شئ فخم / فاخر	chemical	... كيميائية
industry	صناعة	crop	...
perfect	مثالى (فى أحسن حال)	borrow (ed)	... / يستلف
environment	البيئة	pick (ed)	... / يلتقط
famous	مشهور	protect (ed)	...
size	مقاس/حجم		

Vocabulary

school uniform	زى مدرسى موحد	teenager	مراهق
school day	يوم دراسى	basket	...
wedding	حفل زفاف	bamboo	... الخيزران (البامبو)
family member	فرد فى العائلة	pollution	تلوث
factory	مصنع	sports clothes	ملابس رياضية
clothes shop	محل ملابس	process	عملية إجرائية
soil	تربة زراعية	change (d)	يغير/يتغير
greener future	مستقبل أكثر حماية للبيئة	cause (d)	يسبب
relatives	أقارب	own (ed)	...
device	جهاز	shop (ped)	يتسوق
sewing	الخياطة	produce (d)	ينتج

Words & Meanings

soft	ناعم	not hard to touch[1]	Arabic Meaning
luxury	شئ فخم/مترف	something expensive and of good quality[2]	١- يلمس
pick	يقطف	break flowers or fruit off[3] a plant	٢- جودة
crop	محصول	a large amount of plants that are grown[4] to be sold	٣- يقطع... من / ٤- تزرع
chemical	مادة كيميائية	something produced by a scientific process[5]	٥- عملية علمية
special occasion	مناسبة خاصة	an important event for you	

perfect	مثالى	as good as it is possible to be	٦- يرد / ٧- فترة من الوقت
industry	صناعة	- a business making things to sell - the companies and activities that produce things you can sell, especially in a factory or special area	
borrow	يستعير/يستلف	get something from someone that you plan to give back[6] after a period of time[7]	
size	مقاس/حجم	how big or small something is	
environment	البيئة	the people and things around you in your life	

Expressions & Prepositions

make a lot of money	يدر مال كثير	instead of	بدلاً من
We are the same size.	نرتدى نفس المقاس	amazing at	مدهش فى
grow crops	يزرع محاصيل	good / bad for	مفيد / غير مفيد لـ
all over the world	فى كل أنحاء العالم	perfect for	مثالى لـ
protect the environment	يحمى البيئة	famous for	مشهور
use less water	يستخدم ماء أقل	for special occasions	لمناسبات خاصة
as a result	نتيجة لذلك	used to own	اعتاد أن يمتلك
cause pollution	يسبب تلوث	by the Nile	بجوار النيل
keep the cotton soft	يحافظ على نعومة القطن	give ... back	يرد (شئ/مال)
as good as (it is) possible	جيد قدر المستطاع	from time to time	من وقت لآخر
		care about	يعتنى بـ

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
protect	يحمى	keep	damage	يتلف
perfect	مثالى	excellent	bad	سيئ
near	قريب	close	far	بعيد

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
give	يعطى	gave	given
sell	يبيع	sold	sold

Language Notes

1) chemical / chemistry

- **chemical** (adj) صفة بمعنى كيميائى
  Ex. This chemical liquid kills insects.
- **chemical** (s) اسم يعد بمعنى (مادة / مواد كيميائية)
  Ex. Farmers shouldn't use chemicals, they're harmful.
- **chemistry** (n) اسم لا يعد بمعنى (الكيمياء)
  Ex. We study chemistry at the school this year.

2) borrow.. (from) / lend... (to)

- **borrow... (from)** يستعير / يستلف ... من
  Ex. I sometimes borrow clothes from my brother.
- **lend... (to)** يعير / يسلف ... إلى
  Ex. Do you usually lend money to people?

3) soil / land / ground / floor

- **soil** تربة زراعية (الطبقة العليا التى تزرع فيها)
  Ex. The climate and soil in Egypt are perfect for growing cotton.
- **land** اليابسة
  Ex. The ship reached land after sailing for ten days.
- **ground** أرض (خارج المنزل) (أرضية الشارع)
  Ex. My mobile fell to the ground and broke.
- **floor** أرضية الحجرة / طابق فى مبنى
  Ex. She cleaned the floor with water and soap.
  Ex. The library is on the first floor.

4) a / an

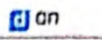
(a) قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يبدأ بصوت ساكن ونضع (an) قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يبدأ بصوت متحرك.

a uniform / a university - an hour

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

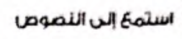
1. Medicines usually contain many ....
   a chemicals b chemistry c chemical d chemically
2. Could I .... your dictionary, please?
   a lend b burn c park d borrow



3. The .... by the Nile is very good for growing crops.
   a floor b roof c soil d wall
4. Mr Hamdy is .... honest man.
   a a b no article c these d an



SB P. (38)



What do you wear?

This week, we asked three Egyptian teenagers what they wear and why.



Noha : I bought this shirt from a shop in Cairo, but I'm trying to buy fewer[1] clothes. Clothes factories cause[2] a lot of pollution[3], so they are bad for the environment[4]. So sometimes I borrow[5] my sister's clothes. She borrows mine, too, because we are the same size[6].

Ayman : These trainers[7] were my dad's. He never wore them, so I asked if I could have them. I like doing sport and these trainers are much better[8] than the ones I used to[9] wear. I usually wear sports clothes because they are comfortable[10].



Dalida : This is my school uniform[11]. I have to wear it every school day[12]. That beautiful dress is the one my grandmother made me for my cousin's wedding[13]. She's amazing at[14] sewing. She always makes us clothes for special occasions*[15].

Arabic Meaning
١- أقل
٢- يسبب
٣- التلوث
٤- البيئة
٥- يستلف
٦- مقاس
٧- حذاء رياضى
٨- أفضل كثيراً
٩- اعتاد أن
١٠- مريح
١١- زى مدرسى موحد
١٢- يوم دراسى
١٣- حفل زفاف
١٤- مدهش فى
١٥- مناسبات خاصة

Say it correctly
* occasion
تنطق حروف (cc) مثل حرف (k) فى هذه الكلمة وينطق حرف (s) مثلما ينطق فى كلمة (television)

SB Page (40)



Egyptian linen and cotton

1- Linen in the past

Egypt is famous for growing crops[1] to make material[2]. The Ancient Egyptians grew plants by the Nile to make linen[3]. Almost[4] everyone wore clothes made of linen and they also used the plants to make baskets[5].

Arabic Meaning
١- زراعة المحاصيل
٢- مادة خام
٣- الكتان
٤- تقريباً
٥- سلال جمع سلة

2- Modern cotton

Today, Egyptian cotton[1] is famous all over the world. Because cotton from Egypt is very good, it is often used to make luxury clothes[2] and things for homes. Many people work in the cotton industry[3], from farmers[4] to people making or selling[5] clothes and material.

3- Why cotton is grown in Egypt

The climate and soil in Egypt are perfect[6] for growing cotton. Water from the Nile is still used for the crops. All of the cotton is picked[7] by hand to keep it soft[8].

4- A greener future

When you grow cotton, it uses a lot of water and chemicals[9]. Now, the government is trying to help farmers to protect[10] the environment and use less water[11].

١-القطن المصري
٢-ملابس فخمة
٣-صناعة
٤-مزارعين
٥-بيع
٦-مثالي
٧-يقطف
٨-ناعم
٩-مواد كيميائية
١٠-يحمي
١١-مياه أقل



Say it correctly

• luxury • ينطق حرف (u) الأول في هذه الكلمة مثلما ينطق في كلمة (but) بينما ينطق حرفي (ux) مثلما ينطق المقطع (ctio) في كلمة (action)

WB Page (96)



Is bamboo the new cotton?

Some people are starting to use a plant called bamboo[1] instead of[2] cotton to make clothes. The plant is an important crop in China where the bamboo industry makes a lot of money. However, although bamboo grows very quickly, it is not a perfect plant. After the bamboo is picked, people often use chemicals before they can use it to make clothes. These are bad for nature. Also, the material made from bamboo is not very soft. As a result[3], it is not used for expensive, luxury clothes which are usually made from cotton.

Arabic Meaning

١-الخيزران
٢-بدلاً من
٣-نتيجة لذلك

Videoscript

SB Page (39)

Narrator:

Do you have to wear any special clothes[1] for school? Do your parents have to wear any special clothes when they go to work?

Many people wear a uniform. This is so people know what school they go to or what job they do.

Some workers wear special clothes to keep them safe[2] at work. These men are repairing a road. They are wearing bright yellow jackets so that car drivers can see them easily. This is a hard hat. Construction workers[3] wear these strong, plastic hats to protect their heads.

Firefighters[4] also wear special clothes while they are working. The jacket and trousers that they wear are made from a material that protects firefighters from the dangerous, hot temperatures. The helmet[5] protects a firefighter's head and eyes from the fire and the gloves[6] protect their hands.

Do you know of any other jobs in which the workers have to wear special clothes?

Arabic Meaning

١-ملابس خاصة
٢-آمن
٣-عمال البناء
٤-رجال الاطفاء
٥-خوذة
٦-قفازات

Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Cotton is a ....
   a hobby b chemical c soil d material
2. Everyone knows Mohamed Salah. He's very ....
   a unknown b careless c famous d casual
3. Farmers in Egypt grow a lot of .... like cotton and linen.
   a crops b sports c occasions d chemicals
4. Many people like to dress well for special ....
   a crops b occasions c governments d members
5. Eating much fat is bad .... your health.
   a at b on c from d for

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. The desert is a difficult .... to live in! (البحيرة - وادي النطرون 2022)
   a park b city c village d environment
2. Many people in Egypt work in the cotton .... WB
   a environment b industry c occasion d electricity
3. If something is a special ...., it means it is an important event for you. WB
   a size b environment c hobby d occasion
4. When you wear the same .... clothes as your sister, it means you can wear the same clothes. WB
   a size b occasion c price d environment
5. .... are a large amount of plants that are grown to be sold. SB
   a Chemicals b Baskets c Crops d Soils

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. Can I .... your pen, please?
   a advise b build c cause d borrow
7. It's not good to .... flowers from a garden.
   a pick b borrow c shop d protect

8. It is a .... hotel with big swimming pools and restaurants.
a patient b poor c luxury d teenager

9. Using fewer chemicals may help .... the environment.
a protect b borrow c damage d pick

10. The soil in Egypt is .... for growing crops. That's really wonderful.
a luxury b modern c bad d perfect



1- one / ones

تستخدم (one) بدلاً من الاسم المفرد و (ones) بدلاً من الاسم الجمع عندما نريد لا نكرر الاسم/الأسماء التى ذكرت سابقاً فى الجملة:

Ex. That beautiful dress is the one my grandmother made me.
Ex. These trainers are much better than the ones I had before.

• يمكن أن يسبق (one) كلمة (another) بمعنى (آخر).

Ex. This handbag is small. Please, show me another one.

• يمكن أن يسبق (ones / one) كلمة (the other) بمعنى (الآخر/الآخرون).

Ex. This is my friend Omar. The other one is his brother.
Ex. These books are Class 1B books. Please, get the other ones.

Check ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I don't like this T-shirt. Please, show me another. ....
a one b only c once d ones

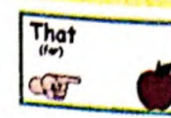
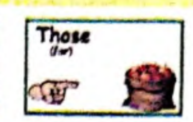
2. Sameh has got new CDs and old ....
a one b none c ones d no one

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. This is my seat. Would you sit on another .... (ones)?
2. My glasses are broken. I need new .... (one).

2- this - that / these - those

• تستخدم أسماء الإشارة this / these عندما نتحدث عن الأشخاص/الأشياء القريبة منا.
• تستخدم أسماء الإشارة that / those عندما نتحدث عن الأشخاص/الأشياء البعيدة عنا.

this	these	that	those
هذا/هذه (للمفرد القريب)	هؤلاء (للجمع القريب)	تلك/ذلك (للمفرد البعيد)	أولئك (للجمع البعيد)
This (near)	 These (near)	 That (far)	 Those (far)

Ex. Take this book, it's yours.
Ex. These books on the shelf are my dad's.
Ex. That car over there is mine.
Ex. Can you see those people standing there?

• الكلمات news/information/advice/equipment etc. هى كلمات لا تُعدّ وتعامل معاملة المفرد ولذلك يأتى قبلها this/that:

Ex. I hope you will find this information useful.
Ex. Are you sure this news is true?

• تستخدم this / that مع التعبير (زوج من pair of)

Ex. I like this pair of shoes.

Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. These shoes are small, can I try the other........?
a one b once c ones d none

2. .... is my car.
a These b This c Then d Those

3. Which of .... books would you like?
a those b that c this d then

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I don't like this meal, I want the other .... (ones).
2. Wear .... (that) sunglasses to protect your eyes from the sun.
3. I don't know which shirt I like most, the yellow .... (ones) or the blue one.

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. .... birds are flying very high. (الجيزة - شمال الجيزة 2022)
   a These b This c Those d That
2. Should I buy the red chairs or the black ....?
   a ones b once c one d twice
3. .... is a nice shirt. I want to buy it. (2022)
   a These b Those c That d They
4. I really like .... pairs of trousers.
   a these b this c that d a
5. I like .... smart, red, cotton T-shirt.
   a these b those c that d some
6. How much are .... necklaces in the window?
   a this b that c a d those
7. Shall I buy this blue T-shirt or that green ....?
   a ones b one c two d once
8. Do you prefer .... dress or that one over there?
   a this b these c they d those

Bit by Bit Exercises

9. Don't do these exercises, do the other.......... .
   a once b it c ones d one
10. This bag is yours. The other.......... is mine.
   a ones b one c bags d none
11. .... pair of black boots is better than the brown pair. I'll take it.
   a Those b This c These d They

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. This ring is silver, but this .... (ones) is gold. (2022)
2. These trousers are short; I want taller .... (one). (2022)
3. I don't know .... (these) people over there.
4. I don't want this shirt, I want this red .... (ones), please.
5. .... (This) are our children.
6. .... (Those) is my handbag.

Speaking

Shopping for clothes

شراء الملابس

- نستخدم الأسئلة التالية للسؤال عن (عدد) الملابس التى يمتلكها/يشتريها شخص ما:

- How many (pairs of) .... do you have/ own? كم عدد (زوج من) ....التي تمتلكها؟
- Which ....is / are your favourite? أى ..... هو/هم المفضل/المفضلون لديك؟

- How many shirts / pairs of shoes do you have / own?
- Which one /ones is / are your favourite?

- ونجيب عن الأسئلة السابقة كالتالى:

- I have about four pairs of shoes, but my trainers are my favourite ones.

امتلك حوالى اربعة ازواج من الأحذية، لكن حذائى الرياضى هو المفضل لدى.

- ونسال عن المحل الذى تحب الشراء منه بالصيغة التالية:

- Which clothes shops do you like? Which one is your favourite?

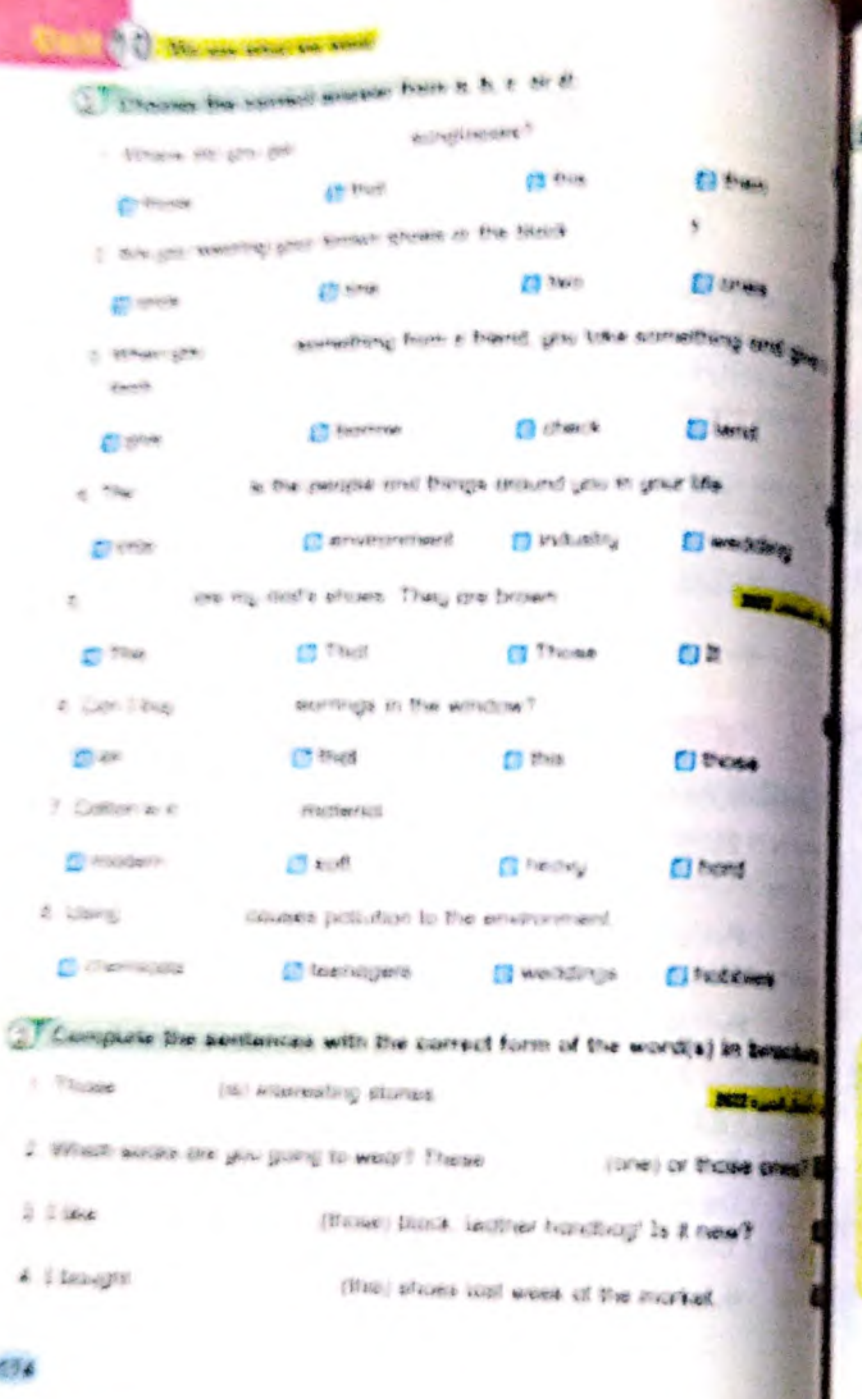
اى محلات الملابس تحب؟ أيهما المفضل لديك؟

General Exercises on Lessons 3&4

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Amany is asking Nada about her shoes.

Amany: Hi, Nada. What are you carrying?
Nada: 1 ....
Amany: When did you buy this pair of shoes?
Nada: 2 ....
Amany: 3 ....?
Nada: I have three pairs of shoes.
Amany: 4 ....?
Nada: The red pair of shoes is my favourite.
Amany: Can I borrow this pair for a special occasion?
Nada: 5 ....



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Where did you get [illegible] sunglasses?
   - a) those
   - b) that
   - c) this
   - d) them
2. Are you wearing your brown shoes or the black [illegible]?
   - a) ones
   - b) one
   - c) two
   - d) ones
3. When you [illegible] something from a friend, you take something and give it back.
   - a) give
   - b) borrow
   - c) check
   - d) lend
4. The [illegible] is the people and things around you in your life.
   - a) [illegible]
   - b) environment
   - c) industry
   - d) wedding
5. [illegible] are my dad's shoes. They are brown.
   - a) This
   - b) That
   - c) Those
   - d) It
6. Can I buy [illegible] earrings in the window?
   - a) an
   - b) that
   - c) this
   - d) those
7. Cotton is a [illegible] material.
   - a) modern
   - b) soft
   - c) heavy
   - d) hard
8. Using [illegible] causes pollution to the environment.
   - a) chemicals
   - b) teenagers
   - c) weddings
   - d) hobbies

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Those [illegible] (is) interesting stories.
2. Which socks are you going to wear? These [illegible] (one) or those ones?
3. I like [illegible] (those) black leather handbag! Is it new?
4. I bought [illegible] (this) shoes last week at the market.

Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

In your email, write about a description of a room in your house.
- Your name is [illegible] and your email address is [illegible]@gmail.com
- Your friend's name is [illegible] and his/ her email address is [illegible]@yahoo.com

[illegible]

- What room do you want to describe?
- How does it look?
- Where are things put?
- What is there on the floor?

[illegible]

- I want to describe
- My room looks
- The first thing you see in it is

Lessons 5,6&7

SB pages 41 - 42 WB pages 97 - 98

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

customer	زبون	cool	رائع
chest of drawers	خزانة ذات أدراج	useful	مفيد
fantastic	رائع	help (ed)	يساعد
jacket	جاكيت	fit (ted)	يناسب/يلائم
tool	أداة (يدوية)	try (ied) ... on	يقيس ملابس
headphones	سماعات الرأس		

Vocabulary

What colour..?	ما لون..؟	changing room	حجرة تغيير الملابس
advert (advertisement)	إعلان	great-grandfather	الجد الأكبر
extra	زائد/إضافى	(be) interested	مهتم
shopkeeper	بائع فى محل	birthday party	حفلة عيد ميلاد
socks	جورب (شراب)	include (d)	يتضمن/يشتمل على
perfectly	بشكل متقن	email (ed)	يرسل رسالة بريد الكترونى
shop window	فاترينة عرض في محل	discuss (ed)	يناقش

Words & Meanings

		Arabic Meaning
changing room حجرة تغيير الملابس	a room where people can change their clothes, for example, in a shop	
fit يناسب/يلائم	be the correct size or shape(1) for someone or something	1- شكل 2- يرتدى 3- الملابس 4- يتأكد
try .. on يقيس ملابس	put on(2) a piece of clothing(3) to check(4) if it fits you or if you like it	

Expressions & Prepositions

What type....?	ما نوع....؟	buy online	يشترى عبر الإنترنت
get married	يتزوج	for sale	للبيع
looks nice	يبدو لطيفًا	for more information	لمزيد من المعلومات
a bit big	كبير بعض الشئ	look for	يبحث عن
move house	ينتقل لمنزل جديد (يعزل)	keep things in	يحتفظ بالأشياء بداخله
discuss the price	يناقش السعر	in + colour	ملون باللون.....
Let me look.	دعنى أنظر/أبحث.	at the top	فى أعلاه/قمته

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
useful	مفيد	helpful	useless	غير مفيد
boring	ممل	dull	interesting	شيق
big	كبير	large	small	صغير

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
take	يأخذ	took	taken
fly	يطير	flew	flown

Language Notes

1) Adjectives ending in (-ed) or (-ing)

- تستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) والصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) لوصف العاقل وغير العاقل.
- تشير الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) إلى أن الموصوف يشعر أو لديه هذه الصفة.

Ex. If you are interested, email me and we can discuss the price.

- تشير الصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) إلى من/ما يسبب الصفة.

Ex. The shop has got good clothes. They are very interesting.

لاحظ الفرق

- The lion was frightening.
- The lion was frightened when it saw the hunters.

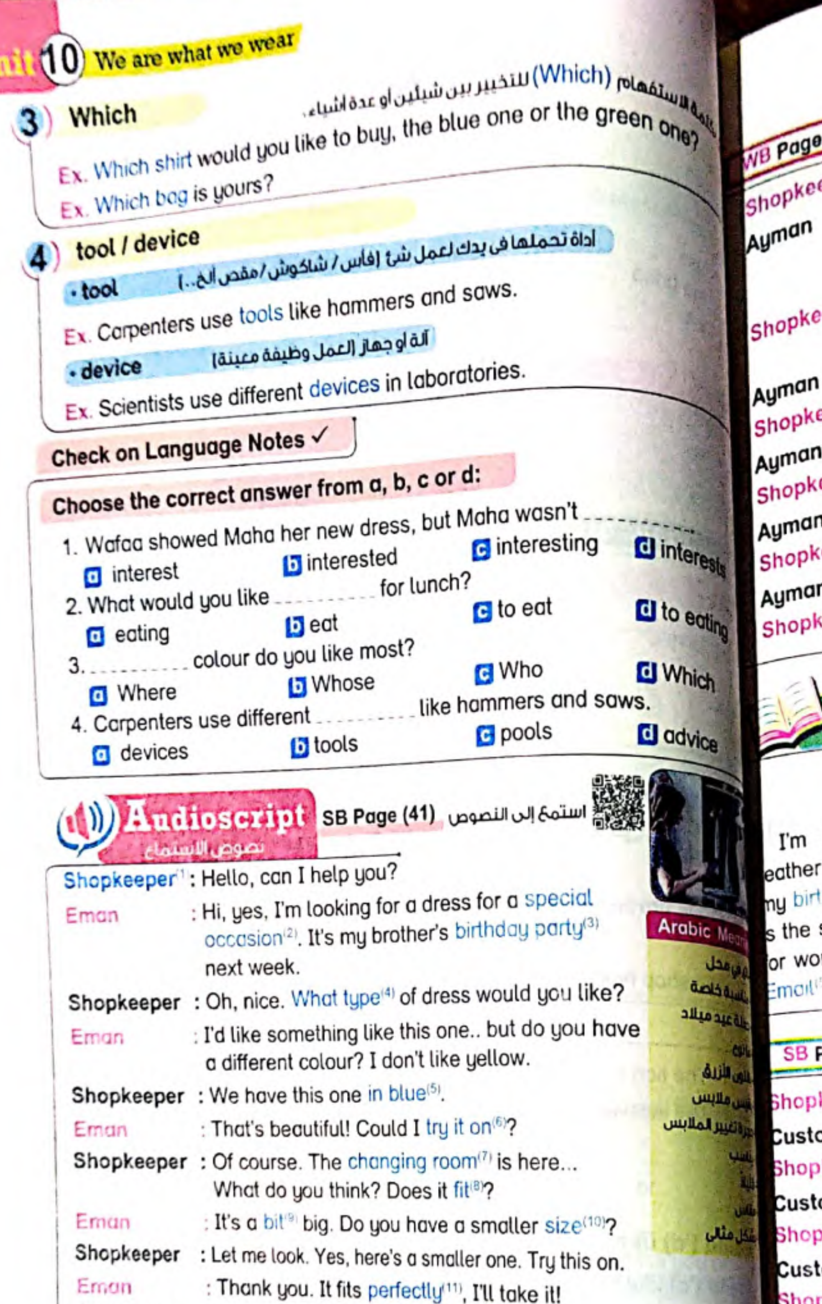
- فى المثال الأول الأسد مخيف (هو من يسبب الصفة).
- فى المثال الثانى الأسد خائف (هو من يشعر بالصفة).

2) would ('d) like

- would ('d) like to = want to + inf. / n يرغب - يود/يريد

Ex. I would('d) like / want to go shopping tonight.

Ex. I would('d) like / want tea, please.



3) Which

(Which) للتخيير بين شيئين أو عدة أشياء

Ex. Which shirt would you like to buy, the blue one or the green one?

Ex. Which bag is yours?

4) tool / device

- **tool** أداة تحملها في يدك لعمل شئ [فأس / شاكوش / مقص الخ..]

Ex. Carpenters use tools like hammers and saws.

- **device** [آلة أو جهاز للعمل وظيفة معينة]

Ex. Scientists use different devices in laboratories.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Wafaa showed Maha her new dress, but Maha wasn't ....
   a interest b interested c interesting d interests
2. What would you like .... for lunch?
   a eating b eat c to eat d to eating
3. .... colour do you like most?
   a Where b Whose c Who d Which
4. Carpenters use different .... like hammers and saws.
   a devices b tools c pools d advice

Audioscript نصوص الاستماع

SB Page (41) استمع إلى النصوص

Shopkeeper[1] : Hello, can I help you?

Eman : Hi, yes, I'm looking for a dress for a special occasion[2]. It's my brother's birthday party[3] next week.

Shopkeeper : Oh, nice. What type[4] of dress would you like?

Eman : I'd like something like this one.. but do you have a different colour? I don't like yellow.

Shopkeeper : We have this one in blue[5].

Eman : That's beautiful! Could I try it on[6]?

Shopkeeper : Of course. The changing room[7] is here... What do you think? Does it fit[8]?

Eman : It's a bit[9] big. Do you have a smaller size[10]?

Shopkeeper : Let me look. Yes, here's a smaller one. Try this on.

Eman : Thank you. It fits perfectly[11], I'll take it!

Shopkeeper : Great!

WB Page (97)

Shopkeeper : Hello, can I help you?

Ayman : Hi, yes, I'm looking for a jacket for a special occasion. My cousin is getting married[1] next week.

Shopkeeper : That's nice. What type of jacket would you like?

Ayman : I'd like something loose[2] but smart.

Shopkeeper : We have this black jacket, or that red one in the window.

Ayman : They're both nice. Could I try on the blue one?

Shopkeeper : Of course[3]. The changing room is there.

Ayman : What do you think? Does it fit?

Shopkeeper : It's bit big. I have a smaller one you can try on.

Ayman : Thank you. Yes, this one fits perfectly. I'll take it!

Shopkeeper : Good.

Arabic Meaning
١- سيتزوج
٢- فضفاض
٣- بالتأكيد

Reading موضوعات القراءة

SB P. (42)

BAG FOR SALE

I'm selling a beautiful, new, black leather handbag. It was a present[1] for my birthday[2] but I already have one that is the same! It is very large[3] and perfect for work or school. The price[4] is LE500. Email[5] me for more information[6].



Arabic Meaning
١- هدية
٢- عيد ميلاد
٣- كبيرة الحجم
٤- سعر
٥- يرسل رسالة بريد الكتروني
٦- معلومات

SB Page (43)

Shopkeeper : Can I help you?

Customer : Yes, I'd like to buy these jeans, but could I try them on first?

Shopkeeper : Of course, the changing room is over there.

Customer : Thank you.

Shopkeeper : Do they fit you?

Customer : No, they're too small. Do you have a bigger size?

Shopkeeper : Yes, here you are.

Customer : They're great. I'll take them.

Page (98)

I'm selling a cool, old wooden chest of drawers. It was made in 1910 for my great-grandfather. It's large and perfect for keeping things in, but we have moved house and our new home is too small for it. If you are interested, email me and we can discuss the price.



Would you like to buy a really useful tool?

I'm selling a nice strong one that you can use in the garden. It is made of metal with wood at the top. It's perfect for people who want to grow vegetables - and the price is not expensive. It's very cheap!

Email me if you are interested.

Page (99)

Usually, Hamdi and his sister Lama like wearing casual clothes such as T-shirts and trainers. Today, they are wearing clothes for a special occasion. It is their grandfather's 70th birthday! Hamdi is wearing a smart, blue jacket. Lama is wearing a loose, cotton dress with a pretty pair of earrings.

Hamdi also has a new pair of trousers. He bought them online, so he did no[t try] them on first. They are a bit big, so he is wearing a leather belt, too.

Exercises on Lessons 5, 6 & 7



Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A hammer is one of a carpenter's ....
   a devices b programs c machines d tools
2. These trousers don't .... me very well. They are too tight.
   a fit b try c check d discuss
3. The shopkeeper gave the .... the right size.
   a concert b custom c customer d costume
4. .... colour do you want the jacket?
   a Who b What c Why d Whose

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There is a big chest of .... in my room.
   a adverts b drawers c drums d drawings
2. The prices in that shop are .... I can buy many things.
   a useless b terrible c fantastic d loose
3. We wear .... in winter to keep warm.
   a jackets b earrings c sandals d glasses
4. I succeeded because I followed your .... advice.
   a bad b careless c useless d useful
5. When I .... the dress on, I found it very big.
   a kept b tried c helped d tired
6. There are many .... rooms in that clothes shop.
   a changing b charging c choosing d sharing

Speaking

At a clothes shop — في محل ملابس

- العبارات الآتية عادة ما يقولها بائع في محل للزبون:

- Can I help you?	هل أستطيع مساعدتك؟
- Does it fit you?	هل يناسبك المقاس؟
- The changing room is there.	حجرة تغيير الملابس هناك.
- It's ...... pounds.	ثمنها ...... جنيها

- العبارات الآتية عادة ما يقولها الزبون للبائع:

- I'd like .... like this.	أريد ...... مثل هذا
- Could I try it on?	هل أستطيع قياسها؟
- Do you have a smaller size?	هل لديك مقاس أصغر؟
- How much is it / does it cost?	كم ثمنها؟
- I'll take it.	سوف آخذها



General Exercises on Lessons 5

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali is at a clothes shop.

Shopkeeper : Hello sir, can I help you?
Ali : (1) .... I want a T-shirt like th
Shopkeeper : Here you are, sir.
Ali : (2) ....
Shopkeeper : Sure. The changing room is there.
Ali : It's a bit big. (3) ....
Shopkeeper : (4) ....
Ali : How much is it?
Shopkeeper : (5) ....
Ali : OK! I'll take it.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The shopkeeper asked me to try the shirt .... in the changing roo
   a of b on c off d over
2. .... book is Sameh's?
   a Which b When c Who d Where
3. My parents .... married twenty years ago.
   a included b gave c got d took
4. I'd like .... this jacket. It fits me well.
   a buy b buying c to buying d to buy
5. I was talking to Ali, but he wasn't .... in my talk.
   a interested b interest c interests d interestin

Excel Yourself

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b c or d:

1. This exam is not .... as the last one.
   a difficult b so difficult c more difficult d most diffi
2. .... can never do without water.
   a One b Only c Once d No
3. I was surprised by .... news.
   a these b those c they d this

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brac

1. .... (These) equipment is used for making furnitur
2. It's the .... (bad) film I have ever watched.

Review on unit 10

Key Vocabulary

	حزام	chemical	مادة كيميائية
dscarf	غطاء للرأس (حجاب)	crop	محصول
rf	شال / وشاح / كوفية	customer	زبون
dbag	حقيبة يد (حريمى)	chest of drawers	خزانة ذات أدراج
ners	حذاء رياضى	fantastic	رائع
rings	قرط (حلق)	jacket	جاكيت
beya	جلباب	tool	أداة (يدوية)
glasses	نظارة شمس	headphones	سماعات الرأس
dals	صندل	cool	رائع
cial occasion	مناسبة خاصة	useful	مفيد
ury	شئ فخم / فاخر	borrow (ed)	يستعير / يستلف
ustry	صناعة	pick (ed)	يقطف (نبات) / يلتقط
fect	مثالى (فى أحسن حال)	protect (ed)	يحمى
vironment	البيئة	help (ed)	يساعد
nous	مشهور	fit (ted)	يناسب / يلائم
t	ناعم / لين	try (ied) ... on	يقيس ملابس

Adjectives for clothes

art	انيق / مهندم	pretty	جميل
ditional	تقليدى	colourful	زاهى الألوان / ذو ملابس زاهية
mfortable	مريح (للملابس) / مستريح (للشخص)	casual	غير رسمى (ملابس)
comfortable	غير مريح	nice	لطيف
se	فضفاض / واسع	simple	بسيط
eap	رخيص	striped	مقلم / مخطط
pensive	غالى الثمن	heavy	ثقيل
ange	غريب		



1- Comparative and Superlative adjectives

...صفات إلى قصيرة وطويلة.

الصفات القصيرة

smart أنيق | old قديم | loose

الصفات الطويلة

comfortable مريح | popular شعبي/محبوب | useful

صيغة المقارنة Comparative للمقارنة بين شيئين أو شخصين.

صيغة التفضيل Superlative للتفضيل بين واحد ومجموعة.

صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل حسب الصفة ما إذا كانت قصيرة أو طويلة كما يلي:

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
short adjective "old"	صفة + er + than "older than"	the + صفة + est "the oldest"
long adjective "popular"	أقل اكثر "more / less popular than"	الأقل الأكثر "the most / the least pop...

- هناك صفات شاذة تحفظ كما هي:

Adjective		Comparative	Superlative
good	جيد	better than	the best
bad	سيء	worse than	the worst
far	بعيد	farther / further than	the farthest / furthest

2- Adjective order ترتيب الصفات

ترتيب الآتي عند وصف شئ:

Size / Description	Shape	Age	Colour	Material	No...
big / lovely	square	new	black	leather	ba...

Ex. He wore a long, green, cotton shirt.

3- one / ones

...تم (one) بدلاً من الاسم المفرد و (ones) بدلاً من الاسم الجمع عندما نريد الا نكرر الاسم/الأسماء التي ...سابقاً فى الجملة:

Ex. This watch is the one my father bought me.

Ex. These books are the ones I borrowed from the library.

this - that / these - those

- نستخدم أسماء الإشارة الآتية عندما نتحدث عن الأشخاص/الأشياء القريبة منا.

this هذا/هذه [للمفرد القريب] these هؤلاء [للجمع القريب]

- نستخدم أسماء الإشارة الآتية عندما نتحدث عن الأشخاص/الأشياء البعيدة عنا.

that تلك/ذلك [للمفرد البعيد] those أولئك [للجمع البعيد]

Speaking

1) Describing clothes وصف الملابس

- نصف الملابس من حيث الآتي:

size	المقاس	colour	اللون
shape	الشكل	material	المادة المستخدمة
age	العمر		

- ويراعى فى الوصف اتباع ترتيب الصفات كما سبق شرحه:

Ex. It's a beautiful, big, modern house.

كما يمكن أن نصف الملابس باستخدام صفات التفضيل كما يلى:

- This jacket is the nicest.
- This striped galabeya is the most traditional.

2) Shopping for clothes شراء الملابس

- نستخدم الأسئلة التالية للسؤال عن [عدد] الملابس التى يمتلكها/يشتريها شخص ما:

- How many (pairs of) .... do you have / own?
- Which ....is / are your favourite?

- ونجيب عن الأسئلة السابقة كالتالى:

- I have four pairs of socks, but the yellow pair is my favourite.

- ونسأل عن المحل الذى تحب الشراء منه بالصيغة التالية:

- Which clothes shops do you like? Which one is your favourite?

3) At a clothes shop فى محل ملابس

- العبارات الآتية عادة ما يقولها بائع فى محل للزبون:

- Can I help you?
- Does it fit you?
- The changing room is there.
- It's .... pounds.

- العبارات الآتية عادة ما يقولها الزبون للبائع:

- I'd like .... like this.
- Could I try it on?
- Do you have a smaller size?
- How much is it / does it cost?
- I'll take it.

General Exercises on Unit 10

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Noura is asking Jana about her clothes.

Noura : Do you have dresses, Jana?

Jana : ❶ ....

Noura : ❷ ....

Jana : I have two, a yellow one and a blue one.

Noura : ❸ ....

Jana : The blue one is my favourite.

Noura : How many pairs of shoes do you have?

Jana : ❹ ....

Noura : Do you have any trainers?

Jana : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This material is soft and comfortable to ....
   a clear   b wear   c eat   d walk
2. We went to the island in a/an .... boat.
   a long, old, wooden   b wooden, long, old   c old, wooden, long   d old, long, wooden
3. We saw a / an .... statue in the museum.
   a old, gold, big   b big, gold, old   c gold, big, old   d big, old, gold
4. .... market it amazing! There are so many cool things here.
   a These   b That   c Those   d They
5. The man wore .... sunglasses.
   a green, pretty, plastic   b pretty, plastic, green   c pretty, green, plastic   d plastic, green, pretty
6. Those earrings are the .... my mum gave me.
   a ones   b none   c once   d one
7. A lot of .... buy from this shop every day.
   a customs   b costumes   c customers   d concerts

8. I can't find clothes to .... me in this shop.
   a keep   b fit   c hit   d try
9. We .... house to a bigger one last week.
   a grew   b turned   c moved   d helped
10. I'm saving these clothes for a special ....
   a occasion   b crop   c industry   d equipment

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. These glasses don't fit me. I want the red .... (one). القليوبية - طوخ 2022
2. Where did you buy .... (these) pair of socks?
3. This dress is the .... (smarter) one I have ever bought.
4. I bought .... (that) sunglasses when I was in London.
5. These aren't my books. Give me the .... (one) I lent you.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on: SB

اجابات عنه في آخر الوحدة !

"An advert for a mobile phone you want to sell"

....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:
- What is the advert about?
- What is the description of what you want to sell?
- How did you get it?   - How much is it?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- I'm selling a/an ....
- It's ....
- It was a present from ....
- It is .... pounds.

Azhar Exercises
تمرينات الأزهر الشريف

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Leila has .... pairs of sandals.
   a three b two c four d five
2. Leila bought them last ....
   a year b month c week d summer

2 Supply the missing parts in the following mini-dialogues:

1- Dalia : How many pairs of shoes do you own?
   Jana : ....
2- Ramy : ....
   Shopkeeper : Sure. The changing room is over there.
3- Salma : How much is this jacket?
   Amira : ....
4- Alaa : ....
   Marwa : My red shirt is my favourite one.

3 Write a paragraph of FIVE(5) sentences on:
(... في آخر الوحدة)

"Industry in Egypt"



Paragraphs & Emails

Paragraphs

1- An advert for a mobile phone I want to sell

I'm selling a mobile phone. It's new. I didn't use it. I already have one that is the same. It is very modern. It is black with a large touch screen. It can go on the internet. It has got an MP3. You can listen to music and watch videos on it. It can store 3000 phone numbers. It has got a wonderful camera. It can take many photos at one time. It's perfect for work or study. The price is LE 5000. If you are interested, email me for more information "hero55@yahoo.com".

2. Industry in Egypt

Egypt has many types of industry. Cotton industry is one of these. Egyptian cotton is famous all over the world. It is often used to make luxury clothes and things for homes. Many people work in the cotton industry.

3- A special occasion I am going to

I am going to a special occasion next week. My friend's sister is getting married next Sunday. He invited me to the wedding. It will be a big party. It will be at a big hotel. Unfortunately, I don't have something new to wear. I want to look smart in the party. I will go to a clothes shop tomorrow. I will buy a jacket. I saw it in its window last week. I will buy a new pair of shoes, too. I like black, leather shoes. I think these items will be perfect for this occasion.

Emails

1- A description of the clothes I usually wear

From : tamer505@yahoo.com
To : ihabomar22@gmail.com
Subject : A description of my clothes

Dear Ihab,

How are you and your family? I want to tell you something about the clothes I wear. I usually wear casual clothes. They are very comfortable. They look nice. I don't like wearing traditional clothes. I need clothes that help me move freely. I buy my clothes by myself at the clothes shops. They are a little expensive, but I like that. I want to hear from you soon.

Yours,
Tamer

2- A description of a room in my house

From : hani(a)@yahoo.com
To : redamail@gmail.com
Subject : A room in my house

Dear Hani(a),

How are you and your family? I want to describe my bedroom. My room looks great, especially when I moved the furniture around. Now, the first thing you see when you walk into the room is my bed. There's a bookshelf above my bed where I put my school books. To the right of my bed, there is a desk with a lamp on top. On the floor there is a yellow carpet. I hope you enjoyed this description of my room! Please, write to me about your bedroom.

Best wishes.
Yours,
Reda

Unit 10 Test

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال فى آخر الكتاب

1. .... is famous for growing crops to make material.
   a England b Lebanon c Egypt d France
2. The Ancient Egyptians grew .... by the Nile.
   a fruit b vegetables c trees d plants
3. Almost everyone in Ancient Egypt wore clothes made of ....
   a linen b leather c cotton d string
4. The Ancient Egyptians also used the plants to make ....
   a boxes b baskets c bags d shoes

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Belal is at a clothes shop. He wants to buy a shirt.

Assistant : Can I help you?

Belal : 1 ....

Assistant : What would you like to buy?

Belal : 2 ....

Assistant : 3 ....

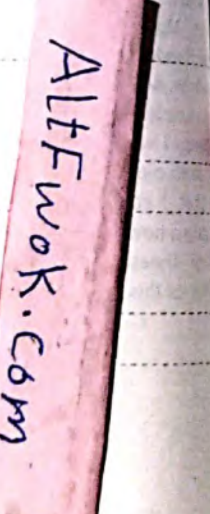
Belal : I want it blue.

Assistant : 4 ....

Belal : 5 ....

Assistant : It's 200 pounds.

Belal : Here you are. Thank you.



C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The type of clothes that is worn usually depends on the occasion. People that attend a wedding usually wear formal clothes. Men often wear suits and women wear dresses. Formal and smart clothes are often worn on special occasions. People often wear different clothes at work. Some jobs require people to wear special uniforms. People often choose to wear comfortable clothes inside their own homes. This choice of clothes may be very different to the clothes they would wear outside. People often wear clothes which match their size, style and their age.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
....
2. What do people in some jobs have to wear?
....
3. Do you usually wear formal or casual clothes? Why?
....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. People wear clothes depending on the ....
   a time b occasion c money d food
5. The underlined word "they" refers to ....
   a clothes b uniforms c people d homes
6. People often choose to wear comfortable clothes inside their own ....
   a homes b seas c streets d banks

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. These books are funny, but these .... are very boring! WB
   a ones b once c one d only
2. Drink much water every day, this is very .... for you.
   a useless b used c using d useful
3. I love wearing my .... galabeya, because it is very cool in the summer. WB
   a cotton, long, loose b long, cotton, loose
   c long, loose, cotton d cotton, loose, long
4. The rich lady is wearing an expensive .... of earrings.
   a pair b prize c twin d twice



5. I tried the shoes .... and they fitted me well.
a in b over c on d about

6. This handbag is very expensive. It's made of fine ....
a wood b leather c glass d paper

7. A lot of important .... are grown in Egypt.
a cars b chemicals c hobbies d crops

8. I borrowed .... story from the library yesterday.
a this b there c these d those

9. When did you and your wife .... married?
a come b has c get d take

10. They have to wear .... clothes in that special party.
a traditional b electric c wooden d dirty

5 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets**

1. He wore a .... (long, cotton, red) galabeya.
2. These shoes aren't good, I want those .... (one) in the window, pleas
3. Mohanad is one of the .... (cleverer) engineers in the compan
4. Can you see .... (these) birds on the tree over there?

E Writing

6 **Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on:** WB

جل عنه قبل الاختبار)

"A special occasion you are going to"

....

....

....

....

....

-يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- **What special occasion are you going to?**
- **Where will it be?**
- **What will you wear for it?**

-يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **I'm going to ....**
- **It will be in ....**
- **I'll buy a/an .... to wear for it.**

UNIT 11 The future of our planet

Objectives

Reading:
Online posts about helping the environment; texts about a school trip; an article about teenage inventors; a postcard

Writing:
A paragraph about an environmental problem; a holiday postcard

Listening:
Identifying what is going to happen; a radio programme about environmental problems; a teacher talking about drones; a discussion about making arrangements

Speaking:
Making predictions and future plans; suggesting solutions; giving opinions

Language:
be going to and *the present continuous* for the future

Life skills:
Problem solving; Negotiation; Collaboration

SB / WB Answers جميع أسئلة كتاب الطالب والتدريبات مجاب عنها في آخر الكتاب

Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 44-47 WB pages 100-101

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

solar panels	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية	reuse (d)	يعيد استخدام
rubbish	قمامة	save (d)	ينقذ/يوفر
plastic bottles	زجاجات بلاستيكية	reduce (d)	يقلل
wildlife*	الحياة البرية	damage (d)	يتلف/يدمر
roof	سطح المنزل	install (ed)	يركب/يثبت «جهاز أو تطبيق»
drought*	جفاف	pick (ed) up	يلتقط
wind turbines	توربينات الرياح (مولدات الطاقة من الرياح)	plant (ed)	يزرع
		repair (ed)	يصلح
recycle (d)	يعيد تدوير (تصنيع)	melt (ed)	يذوب/ينصهر

Nouns & Adjectives

Noun		Adjective	
environment	البيئة	environmental	بيئي
tradition	تقليد	traditional	تقليدي
music	موسيقى	musical	موسيقي
nature	الطبيعة	natural	طبيعي

Vocabulary

planet	كوكب	equipment	معدات
climate change	تغير المناخ	local people	سكان محليون
air pollution	تلوث الهواء	desert animals	حيوانات صحراوية
traffic	المركبات فى حركة المرور/المرور	sunlight	ضوء الشمس
roof garden	حديقة فوق السطح	trekking	رحلة شاقة «على الأقدام»
online post	منشور على الانترنت	washing machine	غسالة
race	سباق	electric cars	سيارات تعمل بالكهرباء
extra	اضافى/ زائد	events	أحداث
path	ممر	hunter	صياد
solution	حل	commentator	معلق التلفاز
intention	نية	approach (ed)	يقترب من
vehicle	مركبة «عربة»	flood (ed) (n)	يفيض/فيضان
finishing line	خط النهاية	improve (d)	يحسن/ يطور
wherever	فى أى مكان		

* الحياة البرية هى الكائنات التى تعيش فى البرية سواء حيوانات او نباتات

AltFwok.com

Words & Meanings

install يركب/ يثبت جهاز	put equipment[1] somewhere so it is ready to use	
reduce يقلل	make something less in amount[2] or size	
repair يصلح	fix[3] something that is broken[4]	
save ينقذ	make something safe from danger[5]	
solar panels الواح الطاقة الشمسية	equipment that changes the sun's light into electricity[6]	
wind turbine توربينات الرياح	equipment that uses the wind[7] to make electricity	
roof سطح المنزل	the top part of a building that protects it from rain, the sun, etc	

Arabic Meaning
1- معدات
2- كمية
3- يصلح
4- مكسور
5- خطر
6- كهرباء
7- رياح

Expressions & Prepositions

get worse	يزداد سوءاً	make money	يكسب مالا
later this year	فى وقت لاحق هذا العام	save ....from	ينقذ.... من
keep ....safe	يحافظ على سلامة.......	stop....from	يمنع..... من
throw away	يتخلص من	on your own	بنفسك/بمفردك
catch the bus	يلحق بالاتوبيس	dangerous for	خطير على
go to bed	يذهب للنوم	go for his holiday	يذهب فى اجازته
go trekking	يقوم برحلة على الأقدام	at the weekend	فى عطلة نهاية الاسبوع
come on quick	تعالى بسرعة	across the desert	عبر الصحراء
The alarm o'clock didn't go off	المنبه لم يرن	change into	يتحول الى

Word / Meaning / Opposite

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
drought	جفاف	dryness	flood	فيضان
repair	يصلح	fix	damage	يتلف
install	يركب/يثبت (جهاز/تطبيق)	set up	uninstall	يزيل تثبيت
local	محلى	national	international	دولى
reduce	يقلل	decrease	increase	يزيد

Unit 11 The future of our planet

Verbs & Nouns that go together

install solar panels	يركب الواح الطاقة الشمسية	reduce pollution	يقلل التلوث
recycle mobile phones	يعيد تصنيع هواتف محمولة	cause pollution	يسبب التلوث
pick up rubbish	يلتقط القمامة	damage the environment	يدمر البيئة
plant trees	يزرع اشجار	use too much water	يستخدم الكثير من الماء
reuse plastic bottles	يعيد استخدام زجاجات بلاستيك	leave rubbish	يترك القمامة
save wildlife	ينقذ الحيوانات والنباتات فى البرية	play music	يعزف موسيقى
		build hotels	يبني فنادق
		win a race	يفوز بسباق

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
catch	يلحق بـ / يمسك	caught	caught
win	يفوز	won	won
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
ring	يرن	rang	rung
throw	يرمى - يلقى - يتخلص من	threw	thrown

Language Notes

1) environment / environmental, nature / natural, music / musical, tradition / traditional

-يمكن ان نحول بعض الأسماء الى صفات باضافة (al) إلى الاسم:

Ex. It's a tradition to colour eggs in Sham el Nessim.

Ex. The galabeya is a traditional item of clothing in Egypt.

2) because of / because

- because of + noun بسبب

Ex. I was late because of the bad traffic.

- because + فاعل + فعل لأن

Ex. I was late because the traffic was bad.

3) The prefix "re-"

-نضيف البادئة "re-" لبعض الأفعال لتعطى معنى مرة أخرى "again" مثل:

reuse	يعيد استخدام	rewrite	يعيد كتابة
recycle	يعيد تدوير/تصنيع	redo	يعيد فعل

4) electric / electricity / electronic

- electric كهربى (يعمل بالكهرباء)

Ex. Electric cars are good for the environment.

- electricity كهرباء

Ex. Solar panels make electricity.

- electronic اليكترونى

Ex. My little brother likes electronic games.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Scientists are trying to solve .... problems.
   a environment b environmental c tradition d music
2. I was late .... the heavy traffic.
   a because b reason c cause d because of
3. We add the prefix .... to the verb "use" to give the meaning "again".
   a re- b dis- c un- d bi-
4. Is your cooker .... or gas?
   a electronic b electricity c electric d electrician



استمع إلى النصوص



The rivers in Kaziranga National Park[1] in India often flood[2]* and the problem is getting worse because of climate change[3]. Later this year, I'm going to help my father to save wildlife[4] from the flood water. This can be dangerous, but my father works in the park and he knows how to keep me safe!

There's a lot of air pollution[5]* from the traffic[6] in our city and this is very unhealthy. Trees are good for the environment and help reduce[7] air pollution - so next week, we're going to plant trees on the roof[8] of our school and make a school roof garden.

Arabic Meaning

1- حديقة كازيرانجا الوطنية (بالهند)
2- يفيض
3- تغير المناخ
4- الحياة البرية
5- تلوث الهواء
6- المركبات فى حركة المرور
7- يقلل
8- السطح

I love phones, but I know that throwing away[1] old phones can be bad for the environment. I started a project[2] in school to recycle[3] mobile phones. From tomorrow, people are going to bring us their old phones and we're going to reuse[4] parts from them to repair[5] other phones.

١- يتخلص من
٢- مشروع
٣- يعيد تصنيع
٤- يعيد استخدام
٥- يصلح

Say it correctly

- drought — تنطق الحروف (ought) في كلمة drought مثل كلمة (out).
- flood — ينطق حرفي (oo) في كلمة flood مثل حرف (u) في كلمة bus.
- pollution — ينطق حرف (u) في كلمة pollution مثل حرف (u) في كلمة (blue) وليس مثل (u) في كلمة (uniform).

Audio script SB Page (46)

Narrator (1)

Boy: Oh no! Look at the time! It's 9 o'clock! Come on quick!

Narrator (2)

Girl 1: The water's a bit[1] cold at first but it's lovely. Come on, Huda! Come and join me[2]!

Girl 2: OK, I'm coming!

Narrator (3)

Voice: We are now approaching[3] Station Square[4].

Boy 1: Is this our stop[5]?

Boy 2: Yes, it is. Come on.

Narrator (4)

Commentator[6]: And they're near the finishing line[7] now and suddenly Farida seems to be running faster. Nothing can stop her now. Just look at her go!

Narrator (5)

Boy: Oh, I'm tired. But it's only nine o'clock!

Woman: Yes, but you've got school in the morning, Omar.

Boy: You're right. Good night, Mum. Good night, Ola.

Arabic Meaning

١- قليلاً
٢- انضم إلى
٣- يقترب من
٤- ميدان المحطة
٥- محطة
٦- معلق تلفاز
٧- خط النهاية

SB Page (47)



Speaker: Wadi Rum[1] is a large area of desert in the south of Jordan. It's a very beautiful place with mountains, desert plants and wildlife. Unfortunately[2], Wadi Rum has some environmental[3] problems.

Tourists help the local[4] people make money[5], but when tourists go trekking[6] in the desert, they often leave rubbish[7], too.

Some tourists drive across the desert in cars: they don't use roads or paths[8], but drive wherever[9] they want to and this can damage[10] plants and wildlife.

The hotels use lots of water which can be a problem in the desert. But they are building new hotels so even more tourists will go there.

Another big problem is hunters[11] who kill the desert animals. They shouldn't do this but there aren't enough people to stop them. There is much less wildlife now than in the past and soon there won't be any.

Arabic Meaning

١- وادي روم بالأردن
٢- لسوء الحظ
٣- بيئي
٤- محلي
٥- يكسب أموال
٦- يقوم برحلة على الأقدام
٧- قمامة
٨- ممرات / مسارات
٩- حيثما
١٠- يتلف
١١- صيادون

Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Can .... produce electricity on cloudy days?
   a computers b mobile phones c washing machines d solar panels
2. The supermarket encourages people to .... plastic bags.
   a reread b redo c reuse d rewrite
3. Don't drop .... Put it in the bin, please.
   a rubbish b music c tradition d nature
4. Malak goes up the .... of her house to watch the stars every night.
   a ceiling b roof c garage d bathroom

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. The desert is a difficult .... to live in. (WB)
   a environment b environmental c tradition d music
2. There was a fire in the flats and firefighters .... a family. (WB)
   a recycled b saved c reduced d repaired
3. We like playing .... together. (WB)
   a tradition b musical c music d environment
4. My uncle helped us to .... a new washing machine this morning. (WB)
   a reduce b plant c leave d install
5. My mobile doesn't work, so I asked someone to .... it. (المنوفية - السادات 2022)
   a recycle b repeat c repair d replay
6. Green inventions don't .... the environment. (البحيرة - التحرير 2022)
   a help b clean c need d damage

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. We can get electricity from .... turbines.
   a wind b grass c wing d window
8. We should .... trees to clean the air we breathe.
   a recycle b burn c plant d cut down
9. We need to .... the amount of salt in our food because it isn't healthy.
   a increase b reduce c add d recycle
10. A .... is a piece of equipment that uses energy from the sun to make electricity.
    a solar panel b washing machine c tablet d laptop
11. We should .... plastic, paper and glass to help save the environment.
    a cycle b burn c recycle d kill

Grammar

Future Forms

(be) going to + inf. سوف

Form التكوين

I	am	(not) going to + inf. مصدر الفعل
He/ She / It / اسم مفرد	is	
We / You/ They / اسم جمع	are	

Usage الاستخدام

١- نستخدم (be) going to + inf.) للتعبير عن نية/خطة مستقبلية/قرار لفعل شئ فى المستقبل ويدل على ذلك الكلمات الآتية:

decide يقرر - decision قرار - plan يخطط/خطة - intend ينوي - intention نية

Ex. I'm going to help my father.

Ex. He isn't going to throw away his old phone.

٢- نستخدم (be) going to + inf.) أيضا للتنبؤ بأحداث فى المستقبل فى وجود دليل (نراه او نعرفه) ويدل على ذلك الكلمات الآتية:

predict يتنبأ - prediction تنبؤ - evidence دليل

Ex. It is going to rain. (I can see some dark clouds.)

Ex. The students are going to do very well in their exams. (They always get good marks.)

Question السؤال

(كلمة استفهام) + am / is / are + subject + going to + inf...?

Ex. What are you going to do?

Ex. Is she going to help the environment?

Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Be careful! This old tree ....
   a falls b is fallen c fell d is going to fall
2. The weather .... fine. The clouds are moving away.
   a is being b is going to be c be d were
3. I think Magdy .... the manager of the company. He is a hard working person.
   a is going to become b is becoming c became d becomes
4. .... to travel to Luxor?
   a You will b You are going c Will you d Are you going
5. How is she .... help the environment?
   a gone b going c going to d goes

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I .... (is going to) help in a charity. I've planned for that.
2. I .... (play) video games tonight with Fatma and Marwa. We decided that ten minutes ago.

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. .... your mobile phone when it is old? SB
   a Are you recycling b Do you recycle
   c Did you recycle d Are you going to recycle
2. What are you .... to do at the weekend? SB
   a go b going c goes d went
3. There .... a drought. SB
   a is going to be b is being c is going d going
4. He is late so he .... the bus. SB
   a isn't catching b isn't going to catch
   c catches d caught
5. Ali is .... next weekend with his aunt. It's planned. البحيرة 2022
   a spending b spent c going to spend d spends

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. The traffic is slow. We .... to be late.
   a gone b are going c going d are gone
7. It's very cold. I .... a jacket tonight.
   a am wearing b wear
   c am going to wear d wore
8. She .... to the clothes shop to buy a dress.
   a walk b walking c are walking d is going to walk
9. A: "Any plans for the weekend?"
   B: "Yes, I .... some furniture for my new flat."
   a is buying b am going to buy c buy d buying

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

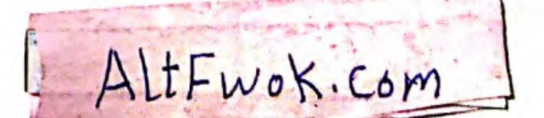
1. The boy and his father are going to .... (watching) a football match. WB
2. Mr Medhat is going to England in January. Why is he .... (go) to take a big coat? WB

Speaking

1 Talking about future plans التحدث عن الخطط المستقبلية

نسأل باستخدم (be) going to عن الخطط المستقبلية كالآتى:

What are you going to do at the weekend?	ماذا ستفعل فى عطلة نهاية الاسبوع؟
Where are you going to go for your next holiday?	أين ستذهب فى اجازتك القادمة؟
How are you going to improve your English?	كيف ستطور لغتك الانجليزية؟
Are you going to recycle your mobile phone when it's old?	هل ستعيد تدوير (تصليح) هاتفك عندما يصبح قديم؟





2 Making predictions

للتعبير عن التنبؤ بناء على دليل كالآتي: (be) going to نستخدم

Evidence دليل	Prediction تنبؤ
- The students didn't do their homework.	- The teacher is going to be angry. - They are going to have to do extra homework tonight.
- My alarm clock didn't go off this morning.	- I'm going to be late for school.
- It's lunchtime but I forgot my lunch.	- I'm going to be hungry.
- It's nearly the end of the holidays.	- I'm going to go to school.
- Hanna's phone is ringing.	- She's going to answer it.

3 Suggesting solutions to environmental problems

اقتراح حلول للمشكلات البيئية

Environmental problems المشكلات البيئية

1- Tourists leave rubbish. يترك السائحون قمامة.

2- Some tourists drive across the desert which can damage plants and wildlife.
يقود بعض السائحون سياراتهم عبر الصحراء مما يمكن أن يتلف النباتات والحياة البرية.

3- Hotels use lots of water. تستخدم الفنادق الكثير من المياه.

4- Hunters kill desert animals. يقوم الصيادون بقتل الحيوانات الصحراوية.

نعبر عن الحلول للمشكلات البيئية كالآتي:

- Make... more expensive. نجعل .... أغلى ثمنا
- Stop people from...v-ing نمنع الناس من ....
- People should stop driving across the desert.
يجب أن يتوقف الناس عن القيادة عبر الصحراء.
- Use camels... نستخدم الجمال ....
- Recycle... نعيد تصنيع ....
- Ask local people to... نطلب من السكان المحليين أن ....
- Build .... نقوم ببناء ....

General Exercises on Lessons 1&2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed and Magdi are talking about the weekend.

Magdi : Hello! How are you?

Ahmed : I'm OK. ❶ .... ?

Magdi : I'm going to visit my uncle this weekend.

Ahmed : ❷ .... ?

Magdi : He lives in Alexandria.

Ahmed : How are you going to go there?

Magdi : ❸ ....

Ahmed : Are you going to go to the beach?

Madgi : ❹ .... I can't swim.

Ahmed : How about visiting the Alexandria Library?

Magdi : ❺ .... I like reading a lot.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... are equipment that changes sunlight into electricity. (البحيرة 2022)
   a Solar panels b Wind turbines c Firefighters d Coral reefs
2. I think electric cars will help to .... pollution in the future. (WB)
   a increase b add c win d reduce
3. This computer does not work. We need to ask someone to .... it. (WB)
   a repair b burn c break d drop
4. Where .... going to go for your next holiday? (SB)
   a you are b do you c are you d you do
5. How are you going to .... your English? (SB)
   a improve b improving c improves d improved

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. Mum is making a lot of food. Some people .... (visit) us today.
2. I feel terrible. I think I .... (go) to be sick.
3. What .... (is) you going to do in the future?

4 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words: ...ي في آخر الوحدة

to your friend Salah telling him what you think the weather's going to be today.

- **Your name is Rami and your email address is ramialaa@hotmail.com.**
- **Your friend's email address is salahzaki@yahoo.com.**

....

....

....

....



....

....

....

...يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الالكترونى:

- **Why do you send this email?**
- **How was the weather in the morning?**
- **I think it will be later?**

...يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **What do you think the weather ....**
- **The weather was .... in the morning.**
- **I think it's going to be ....**

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 48-50 WB pages 102-103

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



remote control	جهاز تحكم عن بعد	environment-friendly / green	صديق للبيئة
drone	طائرة بدون طيار	location	موقع
suitable	مناسب	chemicals	مواد كيميائية
mangrove	شجرة المانجروف	bacteria	بكتيريا (اسم جمع)
conservation	حماية/الحفاظ على الكائنات	invention	اختراع
lend	يقرض/يسلف	filter (ed) (n)	يفلتر- يصفى - مصفى / فلتر
system	نظام	control (led)	يتحكم فى

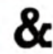
Vocabulary

seeds	بذور	underground water	مياه جوفية
forest	غابة	canal	قناة مائية
jungle	غابة استوائية	volunteer	متطوع
wind energy	طاقة الرياح	Egyptian tortoises	سلاحف مصرية
gate	بوابة	recycling bin	سلة اعادة التدوير
diving trips	رحلات الغطس	smart app	تطبيق ذكى
coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية	season	فصل من فصول السنة
sunhat	قبعة للوقاية من الشمس	irrigate (d)	يروى
suitcase	حقيبة سفر	solve (d)	يحل
ocean	محيط	determine (d)	يحدد
farmlands	اراضى زراعية	remove (d)	يزيل
sea life	حياة (حيوانات) بحرية	film (ed)	يصور فيلم/فيديو
midday	منتصف النهار	return (ed)	يعود
form	استمارة	kill (ed)	يقتل
STEM School	مدرسة العلوم والتكنولوجيا والهندسة والرياضيات	present (ed)	يقدم
		drop (ped)	يلقى - يُسقط

Words & Meanings

Word	Meaning
filters (n) فلاتر	tools[1] that take things out of liquids[2] such as water
filter (v) يفلتر/يصفى	pass a liquid or gas through a piece of equipment in order to remove solid[3] pieces
bacteria بكتيريا	microorganisms[4] that are everywhere[5] but are too small to see and can make you ill
system نظام	an organised[6] way of doing something
location موقع	the place or position[7] of a particular[8] area of land
chemicals مواد كيميائية	things you can make in chemistry[9]
green صديق للبيئة	good for the environment
conservation حماية/الحفاظ على الكائنات	the protection of natural things such as forests, birds and animals
control يتحكم فى	make a person, organisation[10] or object do what you want
suitable مناسب	acceptable[11] or right for someone or something
mangrove شجرة المانجروف	a tropical[12] tree, found near water, whose roots[13] grow partly above ground

Arabic Meanings
1- أدوات
2- سوائل
3- صلب
4- كائنات دقيقة
5- فى كل مكان
6- منظمة
7- موقع / موضع
8- محدد / معين
9- الكيمياء
10- مؤسسة
11- مقبول
12- استوائى
13- جذور

Expressions  Prepositions

Expressions

go on a trip	يذهب فى رحلة
take part in	يشارك فى
save water and energy	يوفر الماء والطاقة
complete a form	يكمل استمارة
make water safe	يجعل الماء آمن للاستخدام
make deliveries	يوصل الطلبات
make much noise	يحدث الكثير من الضوضاء
make / cause pollution	يسبب التلوث
drop seeds onto	يُسقط البذور على
solve problems	يحل مشكلات
present solutions for	يقدم حلول لـ ....

Prepositions

suitable for	مناسب لـ
leave for	يغادر لـ
take out ..... from	يستخرج ... من
work on a project	يعمل فى مشروع
in two hours	خلال ساعتان
in ten days' time	بعد عشرة أيام
(be) connected to	متصل بـ
according to	طبقاً لـ
fly over a place	يطير فوق مكان

Word	Meaning		Opposite	
remote	بعيد	far	near	قريب
suitable	مناسب	fit	unsuitable	غير مناسب
remove	يزيل	take away	add	يضيف

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
hurt	يجرح/يؤذى	hurt	hurt
lend	يقرض / يسلف	lent	lent
mean	يعنى/يقصد	meant	meant

Language Notes

1) information

- تعامل كلمة information معاملة المفرد ولا نضع قبلها اداة نكرة (a / an) ويأتي بعدها فعل لفاعل مفرد is / has

Ex. The information he gave me was important.

- وينطبق الكلام السابق على الكلمات news / advice / equipment

2) bacteria

- تعامل كلمة بكتريا bacteria معاملة الجمع ويأتى بعدها فعل لفاعل جمع ومفردها (bacterium).

Ex. Some bacteria cause diseases.

3) invent / discover

- **invent** يخترع شئ لم يكن موجود

Ex. Do you know who invented the mobile phone?

- **discover** يكتشف شئ موجود ولم يكن معروف

Ex. Dr Ahmed Zewail discovered the femtosecond.

Unit 11 The future of our planet

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My information .... that Mohammed Salah wants to stay with Liverpool.
   a are b were c is d have
2. Bacteria .... usually dangerous for us.
   a has b is c was d are
3. Graham Bell .... the telephone.
   a invented b recycled c discovered d hurt

Audioscript SB Page (48)

استمع إلى النصوص

Scientist: Drones[1] can fly, but they don't need a person to fly them: we can use remote control[2]. This means we can control drones from the ground. In the future, drones are going to help solve some environmental problems.

Boy: Really? How can we do that?

Scientist: Well, companies are going to use drones a lot instead of lorries to make deliveries[3]. This is going to help the environment because drones don't make much noise and they do... cause as much air pollution as lorries.

Boy: That's interesting.

Scientist: Yes, and we are also going to use drones to help wildlife. Drones can fly over[4] places where people can't go. We can see if there are any problems. For example, we can use drones to help save wildlife after floods or fires.

Boy: Can they help people, too?

Scientist: Of course! We can send drones to dangerous places. For example, we are starting to use drones to check[5] wind turbines. This is not an easy job. Wind energy[6] is much better for the environment and makes less pollution. We can even use drones to plant trees. Drones can drop seeds[7] onto the ground in places that people can't go to. And they don't need to stop and have a rest!

Arabic Meaning
- طائرة بدون طيار
- جهاز تحكم عن بعد
- توصيل الطلبات
- تطير فوق
- يفحص
- طاقة الرياح
- تلقي بالبذور

WB Page (102)

Khaled: It's 12 o'clock on Saturday, but I'm going to be busy for the next few days. So, what am I doing? This evening, I'm going to the theatre[1] to see a play[2]. Then tomorrow, I'm playing basketball in the park. The day after tomorrow, I'm helping my uncle in his shop after school. Then, next Saturday, we're taking my cousins to the desert. That should be fun[3]. But I'm really looking forward to[4] our holidays! We're flying to Greece[5], but that's in nine days' time. I can't wait!

Arabic Meaning
- ١- المسرح
- ٢- مسرحية
- ٣- ممتع
- ٤- يتطلع إلى
- ٥- اليونان

Reading SB P. (49)

موضوعات القراءة

Dear parents,

The bus will be leaving for Ras Mohammad from the school tomorrow at 6.30 am and returning in five days' time at 12.30 pm on Thursday 11th June. Please make sure[1] that your daughter has suitable[2] clothes for the swimming and diving trips to the coral reefs[3] on Monday and Tuesday. They will also need good trainers[4] and a sunhat[5] for the visit to the mangrove forest[6] on Wednesday. We will be taking part in[7] the conservation[8] project in the mangrove forest and helping to plant new trees.

Hi Laila
We aren't sharing[9] a room. Mrs Nagwa says that the older students have to help look after the younger girls. Can we meet at the school gates[10] tomorrow morning at 6 am? I need to give you the trainers I'm lending[11] you so that you can put them in your suitcase[12].
Habiba

Arabic Meaning
- ١- يتأكد
- ٢- مناسب
- ٣- الشعاب المرجانية
- ٤- حذاء رياضي
- ٥- قبعة واقية من الشمس
- ٦- غابة المانجروف
- ٧- يشارك في
- ٨- حماية/محافظة
- ٩- يشارك
- ١٠- بوابات
- ١١- يسلف
- ١٢- حقيبة سفر

SB Page (50)

Fantastic green inventions by teenagers



Green inventions are environment-friendly[1]. These inventions present solutions[2] to environmental problems without damaging the environment.

Boyan Slat was a student in Holland[3] when he invented a system[4] to take plastic rubbish from the sea. There is a lot of plastic in our seas, which kills lots of wildlife. Boyan's system is called Ocean Cleanup Array[5]. It uses machines whose arms

Arabic Meaning
- ١- صديقة للبيئة
- ٢- تقدم حلول
- ٣- دولة هولندا
- ٤- نظام
- ٥- نظام لتنظيف المحيط

have lots of filters[6] on them. These filters take the plastic out of the sea water without hurting sea life[7].

Deepika Kurup was 14 when she invented a green system[8] for cleaning water and making it safe for people to drink. When she visited her grandparents in India, Deepika saw children drinking water from a dirty canal. Before this, systems for cleaning water were expensive and used dangerous chemicals[9] which pollute the environment. Deepika's system is cheap and uses light from the sun to kill bacteria[10] in water.

Five Egyptian students from Kafr El-Sheikh STEM School were able to develop an app[11] to help small farmers save water and energy. In this app, farmers complete a simple form[12] with information about their farmlands[13]. This form is connected to a smart app which tells farmers the right amount of water that they need to irrigate[14] their lands. The app also determines*[15] the amount of energy and the number of workers the lands need, according to[16] their location[17] and the season[18].

٦- مصافي/فلاتر
٧- الكائنات البحرية
٨- نظام صديق للبيئة
٩- مواد كيميائية
١٠- بكتيريا
١١- يطور تطبيق
١٢- استمارة بسيطة
١٣- أراضي زراعية
١٤- يروي
١٥- يحدد
١٦- طبقاً لـ
١٧- الموقع
١٨- فصل من فصول السنة

Say it correctly

* determine — تنطق الحروف (mine) في كلمة determine مثل نطق كلمة (tin) مع اختلاف اول حرف.

Videoscript SB Page (50)

Narrator:

The Red Sea is very important. People visit from around the world to go scuba diving[1] and it's also home to many different species[2] of wildlife, such as fish, turtles and birds.

The Red Sea also contains many coral reefs. A coral reef is a collection[3] of colourful plants, animals and rocks that you can find under the sea near the coast[4]. Coral reefs are important because they are a habitat[5] for lots of underwater animals, like this sea anemone[6].. and this shark. But many coral reefs around the world are in danger. They are going to disappear because the water in the seas and oceans is getting warmer. The water in the seas and oceans is going to be too hot for coral reefs in the future. Plastic is also damaging the reefs.

There are conservation groups that want to conserve[7] the world's coral reefs. One of these is the Red Sea Environment Centre in Egypt. Scuba divers go to the coral reefs in the Red Sea twice a year to investigate[8] their condition[9].

The coral reefs in the Red Sea and all around the world are beautiful. We are going to lose them if we don't look after them.

Arabic Meaning

١- الغطس بمعدات تنفس
٢- سلالات
٣- مجموعة
٤- الساحل
٥- موطن
٦- شقائق نعمان البحر
٧- يحافظ على
٨- يتحقق من
٩- حالة/وضع

Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When did people first start using a .... for TVs?
   a mouse b remote control c keyboard d mirror
2. T-shirts and jeans are not .... for this party.
   a suitable b suitcase c cheap d suit
3. Mr Mohammed has developed a new .... for learning English.
   a filter b match c train d system
4. Tap water should pass through a .... before we drink it.
   a fan b filter c phone d plane

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. .... don't need pilots to fly them. (سوهاج - أخميم 2022)
   a Planes b Jets c Drones d Helicopters
2. A lot of animals live in the .... forests next to the sea. (WB)
   a improve b mangrove c roof d gloves
3. I love playing computer games because I can .... what the people do on the screen. (WB)
   a grow b irrigate c hurt d control
4. Scientists can use a .... to take out small pieces of plastic from rivers. (WB)
   a filter b spoon c gate d book

Bit by Bit Exercises

5. Farmers use .... to kill insects that destroy their crops.
   a juice b soup c sweets d chemicals
6. What do you think about Japan's educational ....?
   a stairs b system c canal d store
7. It's important to wash our hands to kill off bad ....
   a food b boys c bacteria d gases
8. I decided to join the .... project to help the environment.
   a conservation b ocean c directions d debate
9. He will sell his house for a good price because of its good ....
   a location b photo c situation d action
10. The drone is a fantastic ....
    a discovery b connection c invitation d invention

Grammar

1- The present continuous زمن المضارع المستمر ،للتعبير عن المستقبل،

Form التكوين

I	am	(not) verb + ing.
He/ She / It / اسم مفرد	is	
We / You/ They / اسم جمع	are	

Usage الاستخدام

يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن ترتيبات فى المستقبل (غالبا مع الاشارة إلى وقت أو تاريخ يدل على المستقبل) ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل:

arrange يرتب - arrangements ترتيبات - prepare يعد/ يجهز - preparation إعداد/تجهيز

Ex. I'm visiting the dentist at half past four next Thursday.
Ex. We're catching our train at 12.30. We aren't taking the bus.

- يستخدم المضارع المستمر ايضا للتعبير عن حدث فى الوقت الحاضر (أثناء الكلام)

Ex. She is drawing a picture now.

- يستخدم للتعبير عن احداث بدأت ولم تنتهى بعد (ولا يشترط أن تحدث وقت الكلام)

Ex. My sister is learning French.

- يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث مؤقتة.

Ex. They are painting the school this week.

Question السؤال

(كلمة استفهام) + am / is / are + subject + verb + ing?

Ex. When are you painting your house?
Ex. Are you travelling to Luxor tomorrow?

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

Look! انظر	Listen! استمع
now الآن	at the moment في اللحظة / في الوقت الحالي
at present في الوقت الحاضر	tomorrow
next (week-month-year) (الأسبوع - الشهر - العام) القادم	

(be) going to / The present continuous

ملاحظات

- لاحظ الفرق بينهما فى الاستخدام:
- لا نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن تنبؤ فى المستقبل

- Is it going to rain tonight? √ √ √ (الجملة صحيحة)
~~Is it raining tonight?~~ ××× (الجملة خطأ)

- نستخدم (be) going to للتعبير عن خطط مستقبلية حيث نتحدث عن معلومات غير مهمة وخطط غير مكتملة اما المضارع المستمر يعبر عن خطط مستقبلية مكتملة ومرتبطة بترتيبات كحجز تذاكر سفر او حجرة فى فندق.

- I'm going to travel to Alexandria next month.
(هذه نية المتحدث ولم يتخذ اى ترتيبات للسفر)
- I'm travelling to Alexandria next month.
(هذا يعبر عن ان المتحدث اجرى ترتيبات السفر مثل حجز تذاكر السفر ومكان الإقامة)

- لا نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن حدث خارج سيطرة البشر فى المستقبل

- Summer will be next month and the snow is going to melt. √ √ √ (الجملة صحيحة)
~~Summer will be next month and the snow is melting.~~ ××× (الجملة خطأ)

Ex. I'm travelling to Aswan now.
هنا المتحدث يقصد أنه يسافر إلى أسوان فى الوقت الحاضر

Ex. I'm travelling to Aswan tomorrow.
هنا المتحدث يقصد أنه سيسافر إلى أسوان غدًا

- لاحظ الفرق بين الجملتين السابقتين فى المضارع المستمر حيث تعبر الاولى عن حدث فى الوقت الحاضر ويدل على ذلك وجود كلمات مثل:

at the moment / now / Look! / Listen!

والجملة الثانية تعبر عن مستقبل ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل:

next (week-month-year) tomorrow - in ten minutes

2- Time Expressions التعبيرات الزمنية

- إدرس الشكل الآتى ولاحظ التعبيرات الزمنية المستخدمة من الحاضر حتى المستقبل:

Now → in five minutes → this afternoon / evening → tomorrow → the day after tomorrow → next week → in 10 days' time → in three weeks → Future

لاحظ

- حرف الجر (in) فى التعبيرات السابقة يعطى معنى (فى خلال (فترة) ....)
- تأتى عادة التعبيرات الزمنية إما فى آخر الجملة أو فى أولها.

Ex. I'm going to New York next week.
OR. Next week, I'm going to New York.

Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My father bought the tickets. He .... tonight.
   a is travelling b is going to travel c travelling d travelled
2. Look! A big bird .... in the sky.
   a flies b is going to fly c is flying d flew
3. Everything is arranged. I .... to the airport.
   a leaving b am going to leave c leave d 'm leaving
4. We .... the Eiffel Tower next Wednesday. We booked the tickets.
   a are visiting b are going to visit c visit d visited
5. What .... at the moment?
   a do you do b are you going to do c are you doing d will you do

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He .... (visit) the Egyptian Museum tomorrow. He bou... the tickets.
2. Mr Osman .... (watch) the match at the mom...

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. It's 1:55. Ayman .... to his 2 pm music lesson in five minutes.
   a goes b was going c went d is going
2. Judy is working on her project ....
   a tomorrow b yesterday c in the past d ago
3. My cousins .... at lunchtime tomorrow at 11 am.
   a arrived b are arriving c arrives d arriving
4. I .... forward to watching the stars in the desert this evening.
   a looks b looking c am looking d looked

Bit by Bit Exercises

5. I .... an interesting story at the moment.
   a reads b going to read c am reading d reading
6. I made all the arrangements. We .... early tomorrow.
   a are travelling b travel c are going to travel d travelled
7. Mum prepared the meal. We .... in five minutes.
   a were eating b eating c are eating d going to eat
8. The Minister .... our school next week. We made all the preparations.
   a is going to visit b visits c is visited d is visiting

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The students .... (do) an exam next Sunday. It's arranged.
2. At the moment, we .... (stay) in a small hotel near the lake. SB
3. We .... (take) the children to the beach this summer.
4. My father is arriving from abroad .... (at) three weeks.

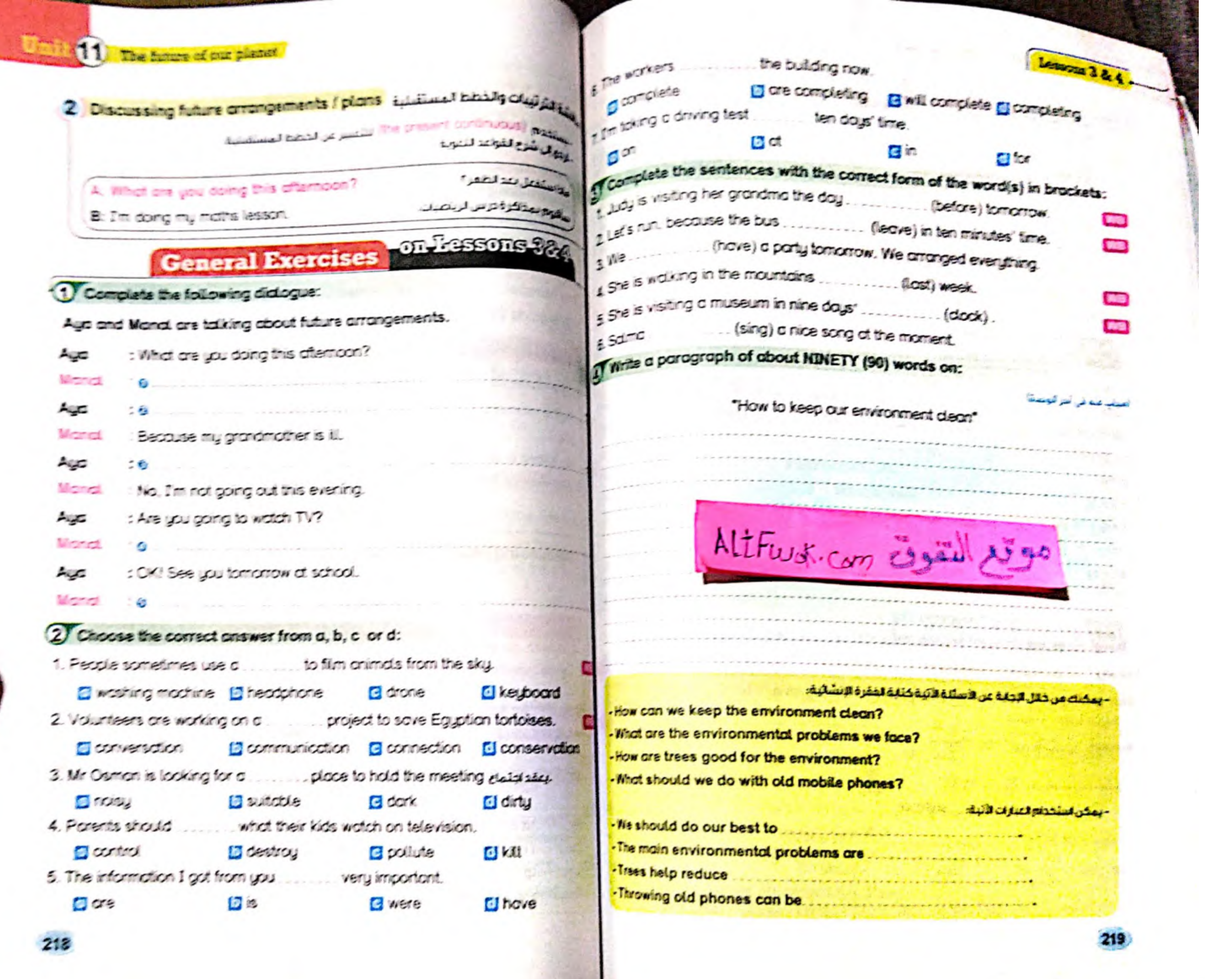
Speaking

1 Discussing inventions and environmental problems

مناقشة الاختراعات والمشكلات البيئية

نسأل ونجيب عن الاختراعات المستخدمة لحل المشكلات البيئية كالآتي:

Question	Answer
A: Which do you think is the best or most useful invention? ما هي أفضل/أكثر الاختراعات نفعاً في رأيك؟	B: I think drones are the best. أعتقد الطائرات بدون طيار هي الأفضل.
A: How can drones be a useful way to solve environmental problems? كيف يمكن أن تكون الطائرات بدون طيار مفيدة لحل المشكلات البيئية؟	B: They can be used to make deliveries. يمكن استخدامها في توصيل الطلبات.
A: How can that help the environment? كيف يساعد ذلك البيئة؟	B: They don't make much noise and they don't cause as much air pollution as lorries. لا يحدثوا ضوضاء ولا يسببوا تلوث الهواء مثل سيارات النقل.



2 Discussing future arrangements / plans مناقشة الترتيبات والخطط المستقبلية

A: What are you doing this afternoon?

B: I'm doing my maths lesson.

General Exercises on Lessons 3&4

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Aya and Manal are talking about future arrangements.

Aya : What are you doing this afternoon?

Manal : ....

Aya : ....

Manal : Because my grandmother is ill.

Aya : ....

Manal : No, I'm not going out this evening.

Aya : Are you going to watch TV?

Manal : ....

Aya : OK! See you tomorrow at school.

Manal : ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People sometimes use a .... to film animals from the sky.
   a washing machine b headphone c drone d keyboard
2. Volunteers are working on a .... project to save Egyptian tortoises.
   a conversation b communication c connection d conservation
3. Mr Osman is looking for a .... place to hold the meeting بعقد اجتماع.
   a noisy b suitable c dark d dirty
4. Parents should .... what their kids watch on television.
   a control b destroy c pollute d kill
5. The information I got from you .... very important.
   a are b is c were d have

6. The workers .... the building now.
   a complete b are completing c will complete d completing
7. I'm taking a driving test .... ten days' time.
   a on b at c in d for

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Judy is visiting her grandma the day .... (before) tomorrow.
2. Let's run, because the bus .... (leave) in ten minutes' time.
3. We .... (have) a party tomorrow. We arranged everything.
4. She is walking in the mountains .... (last) week.
5. She is visiting a museum in nine days' .... (clock).
6. Salma .... (sing) a nice song at the moment.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"How to keep our environment clean"

....

....

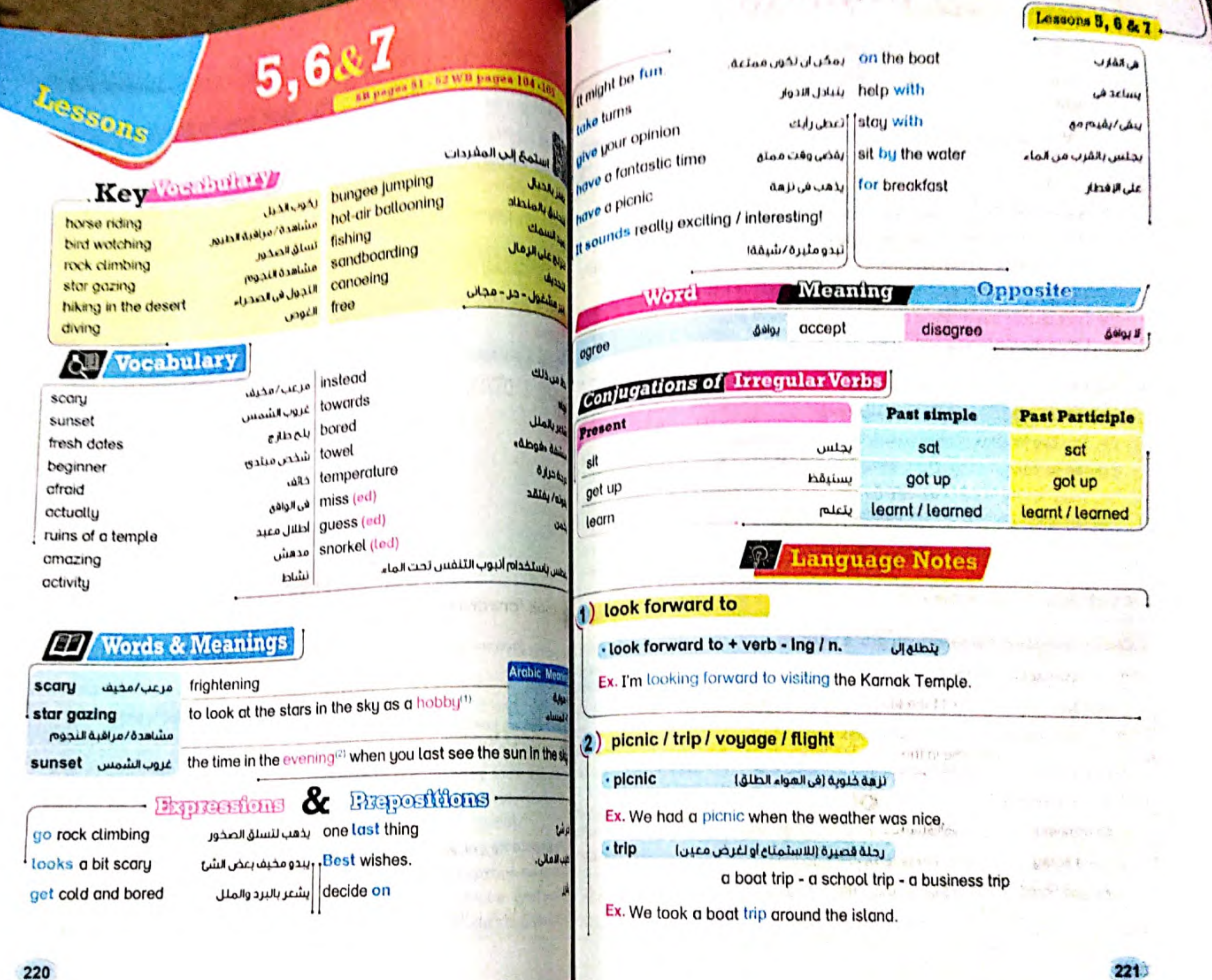
AltFwk.com موقع التفوق

....

....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:
- How can we keep the environment clean?
- What are the environmental problems we face?
- How are trees good for the environment?
- What should we do with old mobile phones?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- We should do our best to ....
- The main environmental problems are ....
- Trees help reduce ....
- Throwing old phones can be ....



Lessons 5, 6 & 7

SB pages 51 - 52 WB pages 104 - 105

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

horse riding	ركوب الخيل	bungee jumping	قفز بالحبل
bird watching	مشاهدة/مراقبة الطيور	hot-air ballooning	تحليق بالمنطاد
rock climbing	تسلق الصخور	fishing	صيد السمك
star gazing	مشاهدة النجوم	sandboarding	تزلج على الرمال
hiking in the desert	التجول في الصحراء	canoeing	تجديف
diving	الغوص	free	غير مشغول - حر - مجانى

Vocabulary

scary	مرعب/مخيف	instead	بدلا من ذلك
sunset	غروب الشمس	towards	نحو
fresh dates	بلح طازج	bored	يشعر بالملل
beginner	شخص مبتدئ	towel	منشفة/فوطة
afraid	خائف	temperature	درجة حرارة
actually	فى الواقع	miss (ed)	يفوته/يفتقد
ruins of a temple	أطلال معبد	guess (ed)	يخمن
amazing	مدهش	snorkel (ed)	يغطس باستخدام أنبوب التنفس تحت الماء
activity	نشاط		

Words & Meanings

		Arabic Meaning
scary مرعب/مخيف	frightening	
star gazing مشاهدة/مراقبة النجوم	to look at the stars in the sky as a hobby[1]	
sunset غروب الشمس	the time in the evening[2] when you last see the sun in the sky	

Expressions & Prepositions

go rock climbing	يذهب لتسلق الصخور	one last thing	
looks a bit scary	يبدو مخيف بعض الشئ	Best wishes.	
get cold and bored	يشعر بالبرد والملل	decide on	
It might be fun	يمكن أن تكون ممتعة	on the boat	فى القارب
take turns	يتبادل الأدوار	help with	يساعد فى
give your opinion	تعطى رأيك	stay with	يبقى/يقيم مع
have a fantastic time	يقضى وقت ممتع	sit by the water	يجلس بالقرب من الماء
have a picnic	يذهب فى نزهة	for breakfast	على الإفطار
It sounds really exciting / interesting! تبدو مثيرة/شيقة!			

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
agree	يوافق	accept	disagree	لا يوافق

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
get up	يستيقظ	got up	got up
learn	يتعلم	learnt / learned	learnt / learned

Language Notes

1) look forward to

- look forward to + verb - ing / n. يتطلع إلى

Ex. I'm looking forward to visiting the Karnak Temple.

2) picnic / trip / voyage / flight

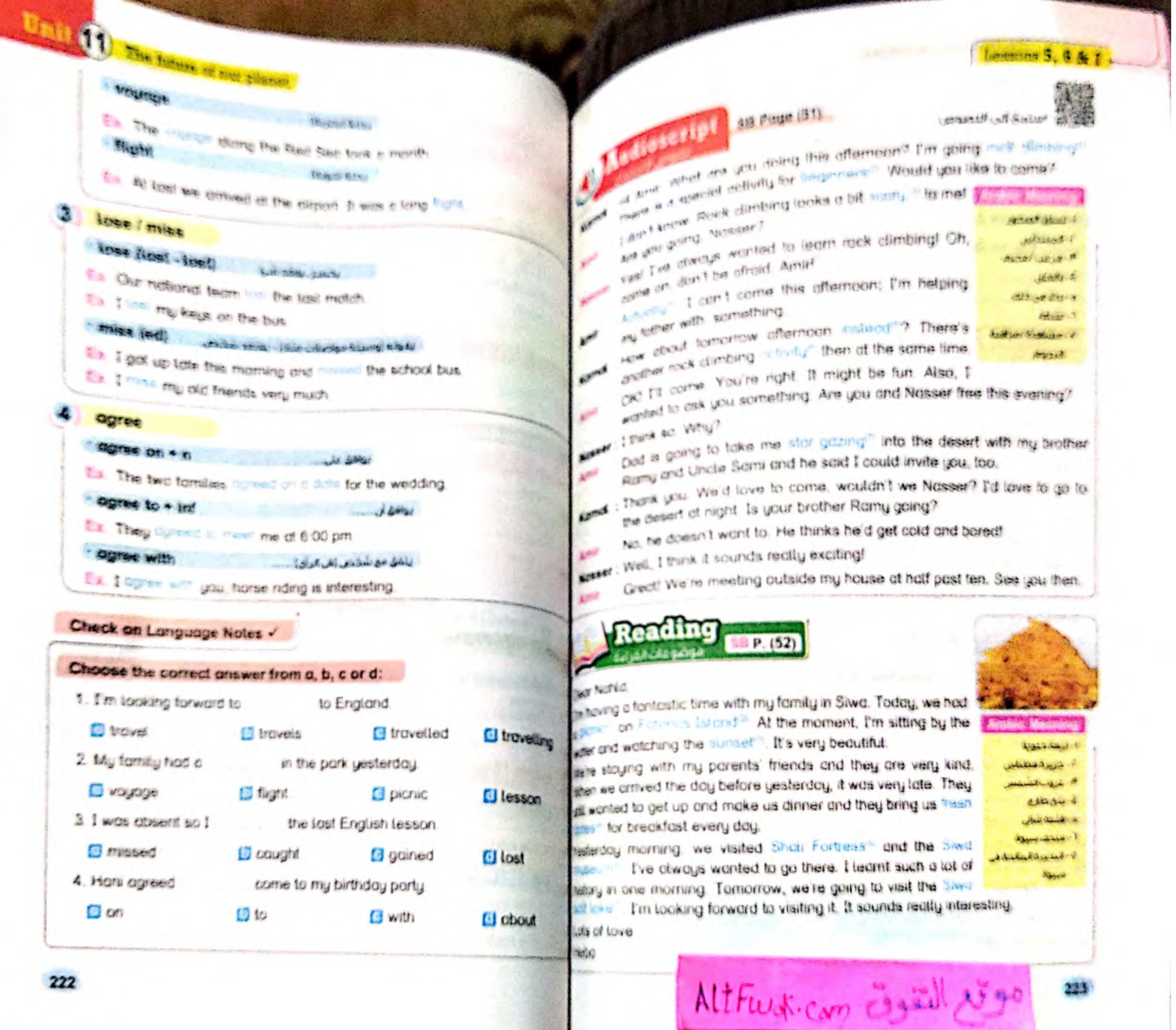
- picnic نزهة خلوية (فى الهواء الطلق)

Ex. We had a picnic when the weather was nice.

- trip رحلة قصيرة (للاستمتاع أو لغرض معين)

a boat trip - a school trip - a business trip

Ex. We took a boat trip around the island.



- voyage
  - Ex. The voyage along the Red Sea took a month.
- flight
  - Ex. At last we arrived at the airport. It was a long flight.

3 lose / miss

- lose (lost - lost)
  - Ex. Our national team lost the last match.
  - Ex. I lost my keys on the bus.
- miss (ed)
  - Ex. I got up late this morning and missed the school bus.
  - Ex. I miss my old friends very much.

4 agree

- agree on + n
  - Ex. The two families agreed on a date for the wedding.
- agree to + inf
  - Ex. They agreed to meet me at 6:00 pm.
- agree with
  - Ex. I agree with you, horse riding is interesting.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'm looking forward to .... to England.
   a) travel b) travels c) travelled d) travelling
2. My family had a .... in the park yesterday.
   a) voyage b) flight c) picnic d) lesson
3. I was absent so I .... the last English lesson.
   a) missed b) caught c) gained d) lost
4. Hani agreed .... come to my birthday party.
   a) on b) to c) with d) about

Audioscript SB Page (51)

Kamal: Hi Amir. What are you doing this afternoon? I'm going rock climbing[1]. There is a special activity for beginners[2]. Would you like to come?

Amir: I don't know. Rock climbing looks a bit scary[3] to me! Are you going, Nasser?

Nasser: Yes! I've always wanted to learn rock climbing! Oh, come on, don't be afraid, Amir!

Amir: [illegible] I can't come this afternoon; I'm helping my father with something.

Kamal: How about tomorrow afternoon instead? There's another rock climbing activity then at the same time.

Amir: OK! I'll come. You're right. It might be fun. Also, I wanted to ask you something. Are you and Nasser free this evening?

Nasser: I think so. Why?

Amir: Dad is going to take me star gazing into the desert with my brother Ramy and Uncle Sami and he said I could invite you, too.

Kamal: Thank you. We'd love to come, wouldn't we Nasser? I'd love to go to the desert at night. Is your brother Ramy going?

Amir: No, he doesn't want to. He thinks he'd get cold and bored!

Nasser: Well, I think it sounds really exciting!

Amir: Great! We're meeting outside my house at half past ten. See you then.

Reading SB P. (52)

Dear Nahla,

I'm having a fantastic time with my family in Siwa. Today, we had a picnic on Fatnas Island. At the moment, I'm sitting by the water and watching the sunset. It's very beautiful.

We're staying with my parents' friends and they are very kind. When we arrived the day before yesterday, it was very late. They still wanted to get up and make us dinner and they bring us fresh dates for breakfast every day.

Yesterday morning, we visited Shali Fortress and the Siwa Museum. I've always wanted to go there. I learnt such a lot of history in one morning. Tomorrow, we're going to visit the Siwa Salt Lake. I'm looking forward to visiting it. It sounds really interesting.

Lots of love

Heba

SB Page (53)

Hi

Are you busy? What are you doing this afternoon? Please could you call me later because I need some help with the English homework! I had to go to the dentist[1], so I missed[2] the last English lesson. What did you study in English class last week? One last thing: are you free on Saturday morning? I'm playing tennis in the park. Would you like to come?

Arabic Meaning
1. طبيب أسنان
2. فاتني
3. أخر شيء

WB Page (104)

Baher : Would you like to come diving next weekend, Imad? We are going to go to a coral reef[1]!

Imad : I don't know. Diving under water looks a bit scary[2] to me.

Baher : If you don't like going under water, you could stay on the boat.

Imad : I think I'd get cold[3] and bored[4], on the boat.

Baher : Why don't you snorkel[5]? Then you don't go under water but you can see the fish.

Imad : Yes, that might be fun[6].

Baher : Great! Let's all snorkel. We don't need a boat, we can go from the beach.

Imad : Thanks, I'd love to

Arabic Meaning
1. الشعب المرجانية
2. مخيف بعض الشئ
3. يصاب بالبرد
4. شاعر بالملل
5. يغطس بأنبوب للتنفس
6. متعة

WB Page (105)

Hi

Guess[1] where I am? At the moment, I'm walking in the desert in the Nabq Nature Reserve[2]. It's really interesting. Yesterday, we visited the mountains. It was very hot! The day before yesterday, we went diving in the coral reefs at Shoura al Manquata[3]. The fish were amazing. Tomorrow, we're going to visit Wadi Kid[4]. I'm looking forward to seeing the beautiful birds that live there. We're coming home in three days' time. What are you doing? Write to me and tell me your news.

Best wishes, Hamdi

Arabic Meaning
1. خمن
2. محمية نبق الطبيعة
3. منطقة شورى المنقطعة
4. وادي كيد

Exercises on Lessons 5, 6 & 7

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He likes horses so he goes .... once a week.
   a) swimming b) horse riding c) fishing d) sandboarding
2. Going in a hot-air .... is fantastic as the view from the top is magic.
   a) cartoon b) drone c) stone d) balloon
3. What do you do in your .... time?
   a) busy b) helpful c) free d) greedy
4. I'm .... a fantastic time with my family in Siwa.
   a) having b) doing c) owning d) buying
5. My uncle caught a lot of fish when he went .... last week.
   a) climbing b) fishing c) riding d) jumping

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Deserts are the best places to go .... because stars there are brighter.
   a) horse riding b) rock climbing c) star gazing d) bungee jumping
2. The .... at the Karnak Temple were amazing.
   a) rings b) ruins c) trains d) trainers
3. If the weather's fine, we'll go .... in the desert this weekend.
   a) diving b) canoeing c) fishing d) hiking
4. .... under water looks scary to many people.
   a) Diving b) Climbing c) Riding d) Hiking
5. Tourists go .... in the Great Sand Sea in Egypt.
   a) snorkelling b) sandboarding c) diving d) swimming
6. I enjoyed watching the .... yesterday. Then it got dark.
   a) sunrise b) sun cream c) solar system d) sunset
7. .... needs a special kind of boats.
   a) Canoeing b) Jumping c) Riding d) Reading
8. .... is a sport in which you jump off something very high with a long rope tied to your legs.
   a) Horse riding b) Star gazing c) Rock climbing d) Bungee jumping

Speaking

Doing activities

القيام بأنشطة

للسؤال عن رغبة شخص ما فى القيام بأنشطة كالآتى:

- Would you like to come? — هل تود أن تأتى ؟
- I invite you to come.......... — أدعوك أن تأتى............
- Why don't you..........? — لم لا.......؟

للإجابة بالموافقة أو الرفض نقول:

Agree	Disagree
- Yes, I've always wanted to..... نعم، دائماً ما أردت أن..........	- I don't know. It looks a bit scary. لا أعرف، يبدو مخيفاً بعض الشئ.
- OK! I'll come. حسناً! سوف آتى.	- I can't come. لا أستطيع المجيء.
- Thank you. I'd love to come. أشكرك. أود أن آتى.	- No, I don't want to. لا. لا أود.
- Yes, that might be fun. نعم، هذا يبدو ممتعاً.	

General Exercises on Lessons 5, 6 & 7

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ziad is going to the Red Sea next week.

Ziad : I'm going to the Red Sea next week.

Adel : Really! 1 ....

Ziad : With my family.

Adel : 2 ....

Ziad : At a hotel. Would you like to come?

Adel : 3 ....

Ziad : Why? We will go diving there.

Adel : 4 ....

Ziad : Why don't you stay on the boat?

Adel : OK. 5 ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We all agreed .... my father's suggestion to go for a picnic.
   a from b on c in d for
2. I had a really .... dream last night. I was frightened.
   a scary b nice c lovely d beautiful
3. I .... my family so much during my stay abroad.
   a lost b kept c missed d wasted
4. I'd love to go.......... under water in the Red Sea.
   a hiking b diving c climbing d riding
5. In summer, tourists can go rock .... or walking.
   a climbing b fishing c jumping d riding



Excel Yourself

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b c or d:

1. Our team plays well. I think they .... the match.
   a are winning b wins c are going to win d winning
2. It's cloudy. I think it is ....
   a raining b going to rain c rained d going to raining
3. I .... the movie tonight. I bought the tickets.
   a am watching b am going to watch c watch d watches

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We ....(get) married next month. Would you like to come?
2. He .... (travel) on the metro at the moment.

Review on unit 11

Key Vocabulary

solar panels	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية	location	موقع
rubbish	قمامة	chemicals	مواد كيميائية
plastic bottles	زجاجات بلاستيكية	bacteria	بكتيريا (اسم جمع)
wildlife	الحياة البرية	invention	اختراع
roof	سطح المنزل	hot-air ballooning	التحليق بالمنطاد
drought	جفاف	fishing	صيد السمك
remote control	جهاز تحكم عن بعد	sandboarding	التزلج على الرمال
drone	طائرة بدون طيار	canoeing	التجديف
suitable	مناسب	bungee jumping	القفز بالحبال
mangrove	شجرة المانجروف	free	غير مشغول - حر - مجانى
conservation	حماية/الحفاظ على الكائنات	recycle (d)	يعيد تدوير (تصنيع)
lend	يقرض/يسلف	reuse (d)	يعيد استخدام
system	نظام	save (d)	ينقذ/يوفر
horse riding	ركوب الخيل	damage (d)	يتلف
bird watching	مشاهدة/مراقبة الطيور	reduce (d)	يقلل
rock climbing	تسلق الصخور	install (ed)	يركب/يثبت «جهاز أو تطبيق»
star gazing	مشاهدة النجوم	pick (ed) up	يلتقط
hiking in the desert	التجول فى الصحراء	plant (ed)	يزرع
diving	الغوص	repair (ed)	يصلح
environment-friendly / green	صديق للبيئة	melt (ed)	يذوب/ينصهر
wind turbines	توربينات الرياح (مولدات الطاقة من الرياح)	filter (ed) (n)	يفلتر-يصفى - مصفى / فلتر
		control (led)	يتحكم فى

Nouns & Adjectives

Noun		Adjective
environment	البيئة	environmental
tradition	تقليد	traditional
music	موسيقى	musical
nature	الطبيعة	natural



1- (be) going to & The present continuous

1- Going to

Form التكوين

I	am	(not) going to + inf. مصدر الفعل
He/ She / It / اسم مفرد	is	
We / You/ They / اسم جمع	are	

١- نستخدم (be) going to) للتعبير عن نية / خطة مستقبلية / قرار لفعل شئ فى المستقبل ويدل على ذلك الكلمات الآتية:

decide - decision - plan - intend - intention

Ex. I'm going to watch a movie.
Ex. He isn't going to take a photo.

٢- نستخدم (be) going to) أيضا للتنبؤ بأحداث فى المستقبل فى وجود دليل (اما دليل نراه او نعرفه) ويدل على ذلك الكلمات الآتية:

predict - prediction - evidence

Ex. It is going to rain. (I can see some dark clouds.)
Ex. Our players are going to win the cup. (They always train well.)

Question السؤال

اداة استفهام + am - is - are + subject + going to + inf...?

Ex. Where are you going to spend your holiday?

2- The present continuous

Form التكوين

I	am	(not) verb + ing.
He/ She / It / اسم مفرد	is	
We / You/ They / اسم جمع	are	

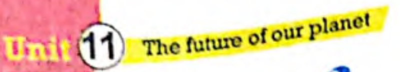
١- نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن ترتيبات فى المستقبل (غالبا مع الاشارة إلى وقت أو تاريخ يدل على المستقبل) ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل:

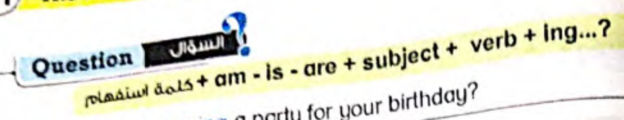
arrange - arrangements - prepare - preparation

Ex. My grandma is visiting us next week.
Ex. We're going to Spain for our next holiday. We aren't going to England.

٢- يستخدم المضارع المستمر ايضا للتعبير عن حدث فى الوقت الحاضر (أثناء الكلام)

Ex. She is doing her homework now.





كلمة استفهام + am - is - are + subject + verb + ing...?

Ex. (When) Are you having a party for your birthday?

3- Time Expressions التعبيرات الزمنية

ادرس الشكل الآتي ولاحظ التعبيرات الزمنية المستخدمة من الحاضر حتى المستقبل:

Now → in five minutes → this afternoon / evening → tomorrow → the day after tomorrow → next week → in 10 days' time → in three weeks → Future

Speaking

1) Talking about future plans تحدث عن الخطط المستقبلية

نسأل باستخدم (be) going to عن الخطط المستقبلية كالآتي:

What are you going to do at the weekend?
Where are you going to go for your next holiday?
How are you going to improve your English?

2) Making predictions التنبؤ

نستخدم (be) going to للتعبير عن التنبؤ بناء على دليل كالآتي:

Evidence دليل	Prediction تنبؤ
- The students didn't do their homework	- The teacher is going to be angry - They are going to have to do extra homework tonight.
- My alarm clock didn't go off this morning.	- I'm going to be late for school.

3) Suggesting solutions to environmental problems اقتراح حلول للمشكلات البيئية

نعرض الحلول للمشكلات البيئية كالآتي:

- Make... more expensive
- Stop people from...v-ing
- Use camels...
- Recycle...
- Ask local people to...
- Build ....

4) Discussing inventions and environmental problems مناقشة الاختراعات والمشكلات البيئية

نسأل ونجيب عن الاختراعات المستخدمة لحل المشكلات البيئية كالآتي:

Question	Answer
A: Which do you think is the best or most useful invention?	B: I think drones are the best.
A: How can drones be a useful way to solve environmental problems?	B: They can be used to make deliveries.
A: How can that help the environment?	B: They don't make much noise and they don't cause as much air pollution as lorries.

5) Discussing future arrangements / plans مناقشة الترتيبات والخطط المستقبلية

- يستخدم (the present continuous) للتعبير عن الخطط المستقبلية.

A: What are you doing this afternoon?
B: I'm doing my maths lesson.

6) Doing activities القيام بالأنشطة

نسأل عن رغبة شخص ما في القيام بأنشطة كالآتي:

- Would you like to come?
- I invite you to come..........
- Why don't you..........?

- للإجابة بالموافقة أو بالرفض نقول:

Agree	Disagree
- Yes, I've always wanted to.....	- I don't know. It looks a bit scary.
- OK! I'll come.	- I can't come.
- Thank you. I'd love to come.	- No, I don't want to.
- Yes, that might be fun.	

General Exercises on Unit 11

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Samir is going to the desert next week.

Samir : I'm going to the desert next week?
Diaa : The desert, why?
Samir : 1 ....
Diaa : Oh! Is rock climbing scary?
Samir : Yes. 2 .... But it's really exciting.
Diaa : 3 ....
Samir : Sure. You can come.
Diaa : 4 ....
Samir : Good idea, I'd love to go hiking, too.
Diaa : OK. 5 ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We'll need a ladder to get up on the .... of the house.
a stairs b bathroom c roof d ceiling
2. We are going to .... solar panels. They're good for the environment.
a burn b break c pollute d install
3. Habiba's bike isn't working, she is going to .... it.
a repair b redo c rewrite d repeat
4. Policemen do their best to .... us safe.
a remember b keep c plant d guess
5. It isn't a good idea to throw .... old mobile phones.
a way b road c a way d away
6. The .... removes dust from the air.
a mop b tablet c filter d drone
7. A .... looks like a plane but it doesn't have a pilot.
a kite b drone c balloon d ship
8. These shoes are not .... for running.
a suitable b angry c suitcase d sleepy
9. Omar went to bed early. He .... early.
a to get up b get up c getting up d is going to get up

10. Osama has a towel and is walking towards the sea. He is going .... swimming. WB
a to going b to goes c to go d go
11. Injy is ten minutes from the station and the train goes in five minutes. Is she .... the train? WB
a catching b going to catch c catch d caught
12. Don't use classroom 5 because some men .... it this afternoon. WB
a is going to paint b paints c are painting d paint

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Huda is .... (go) to bed.
2. We .... (go) snorkelling next weekend. Would you like to come?
3. I .... (looked) forward to having a rest this week.
4. What are you .... (do) this afternoon? SB

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words:

"Activities you want to do in the future" (مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:
- What activities can you do in Egypt?
- What do you want to do in the Red Sea?
- Why is going on a hot-air balloon exciting?
- What's the most dangerous activity?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- There are many exciting activities ....
- I want to .... in the Red Sea.
- I think the view ....
- .... is the most dangerous activity.

Azhar Exercises
تمرينات الأزهر الشريف

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Drones can fly by remote ....
   a tools b controls c people d ropes
2. We can fly drones from the ....
   a sky b sun c ground d star

2 Supply the missing parts in the following mini-dialogues:

1 - Amal : Where are you going to go for your next holiday?
Baher : ....

2- Fatma : ....
Ahmed : I think the drone is the best invention.

3- Hadeer: Why don't you go horse riding with us?
Rawan: ....

4- Huda: ....
Soad: We can plant trees to help the environment.

3 Write a paragraph of FIVE(5) sentences on:
... في آخر الوحدة

"Environmental problems"

....
....
....

يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What's the environment?
- How is the environment polluted?
- How can we keep our environment clean?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- The environment is ....
- Traffic and factories can ....
- We should reduce ....

Paragraphs

1- How to keep our environment clean

There are many environmental problems that we should face. The main problems are water and air pollution and climate change. There's a lot of air pollution from the traffic in cities and this is very unhealthy. Trees are good for the environment and help reduce air pollution, so we should plant more trees. We should recycle old mobile phones. Green inventions are environment-friendly. These inventions present solutions to environmental problems without damaging the environment.

2- Activities I want to do in the future

There are many exciting activities that I can do in Egypt. I want to go diving in the Red Sea. The coral reefs there are wonderful. Although diving is a bit scary, I want to try it. I want also to go on a hot-air balloon. I think the view from the top will be fantastic. I think it's dangerous but I'd like to try it one day. I hope I will try bungee jumping. I think it's the most dangerous activity. This activity isn't suitable for people who are afraid of high places.

3- Environmental problems (Azhar)

The world faces many Environmental problems. The main problem is climate change. It happens because of air pollution. All countries should do their best to solve this problem. They should reduce air pollution and plant more trees.

Emails

1- What do I think the weather is going to be today?

From : ramialaa@hotmail.com.
To : salahzaki@yahoo.com.
Subject : The weather today

Dear Salah,

How are you? What do you think the weather is going to be like later today? It was sunny in the mornings but it was a bit windy. I'm looking out of the window now. It's cloudy and cold. I think it's going to rain. Could you send me an email telling me about the weather in your town? I'm waiting. My regards to your family.

Yours,
Rami

2- My holiday

From : habiba2006@hotmail.com.
To : salma2007@gmail.com.
Subject : My holiday

Dear Salma,

I hope you're having a good time. I'm having a good time with my family in Aswan. Today, we had a picnic on Elephantine Island. At the moment, I'm sitting by the water and watching the sunset. It's very beautiful. We're staying with my parents' friends and they are very kind. Yesterday morning, we visited Abu Simbel temple and the Nubian Museum. I've always wanted to go there. Tomorrow, we're going to visit Lake Nasser. I'm looking forward to visiting it. It sounds really interesting. See you soon.

Lots of love,
Habiba

Unit 11 Test

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال فى آخر الكتاب

1. There's a lot air pollution from the traffic in our ....
   a school b house c city d farm
2. Air pollution is very ....
   a good b light c healthy d unhealthy
3. .... are good for the environment and help reduce air pollution.
   a Trees b Plants c Apples d Oranges
4. Next ...., we're going to plant trees on the roof of our school.
   a year b month c week d day

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Tamer is going to buy his friend Omar a present for his birthday.

Tamer : Our friend Omar's birthday will be tomorrow.
Ayman : Really! 1 ....
Tamer : Yes, I'm going to buy him a present.
Ayman : What're you going to buy?
Tamer : 2 ....
Ayman : Great! 3 ....
Tamer : I know a mobile shop near our house. What will you buy him?
Ayman : 4 ....
Tamer : 5 ....
Ayman : I hope so, too.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Dirty water can be dangerous to drink. It causes diseases and makes people ill. It can damage the environment, animals and fish. People often throw rubbish into rivers. This makes rivers look <u>horrible</u> and affects the lives of birds and fish. We must keep the water in our rivers, canals and lakes clean. Smoke and gases from factories and cars mix with water vapour in the air and cause pollution. When the water vapour falls to the ground as rain, the chemicals in the smoke and fumes mix with the rain. This can kill trees, plants, fish and animals.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
....
2. How is pollution caused?
....
3. In your opinion, how can we solve the problem of pollution?
....

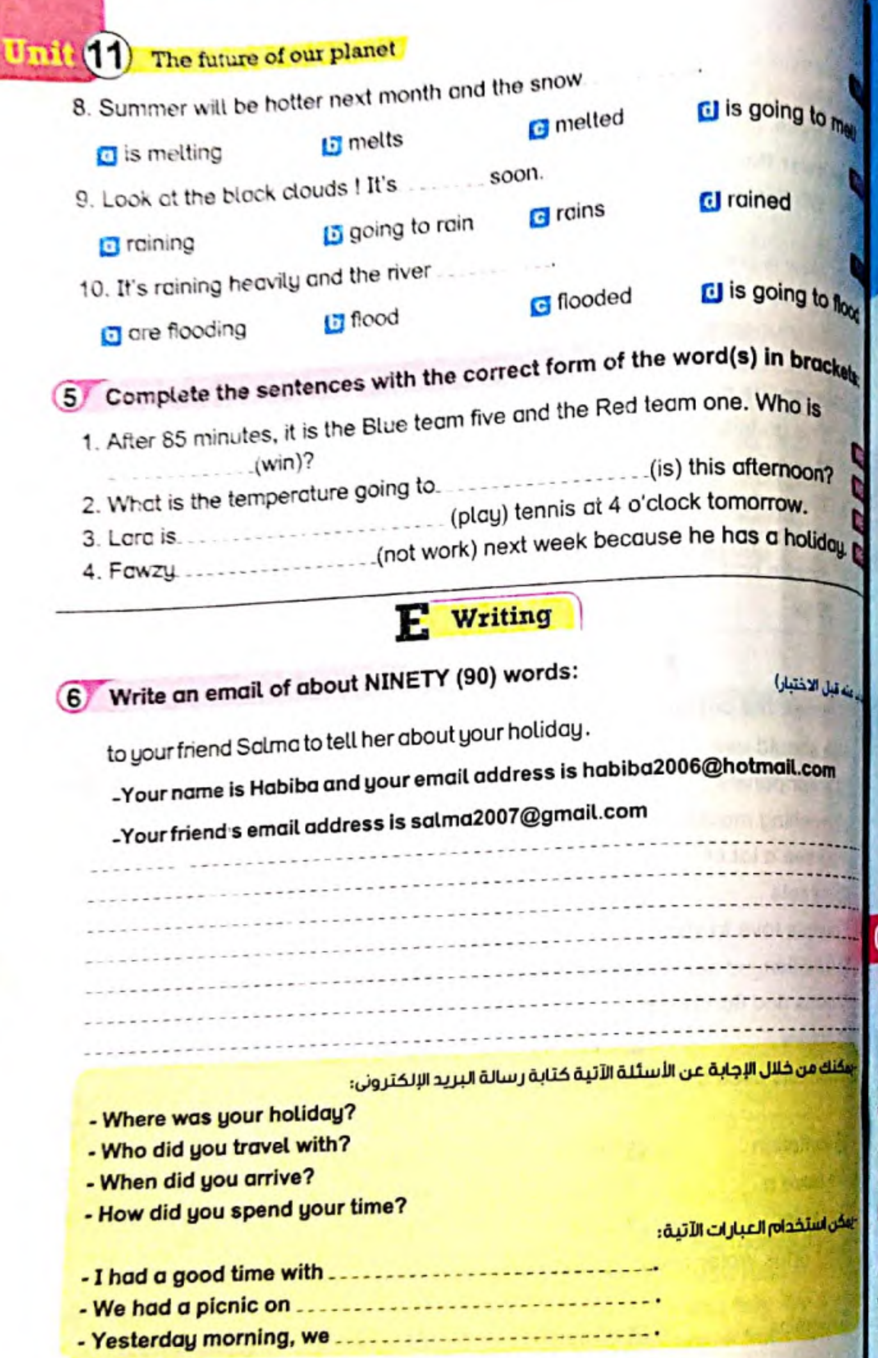
B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "horrible" means very ....
   a good b friendly c pleasant d bad
5. The underlined word "It" refers to ....
   a rubbish b dirty water c environment d water vapour
6. Smoke and gases .... with water vapour in the air.
   a fix b stir c mix d plant

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We should use .... on buildings in sunny countries like Egypt. WB
   a solar panels b snowboards c washing machines d tablets
2. You see a lot of .... in windy countries like England. WB
   a rockets b sewing machines c wind turbines d coins
3. Tourists love to visit .... villages. WB
   a tradition b traditional c nature d environment
4. Storms and floods are .... events. WB
   a nature b tradition c musical d natural
5. Scientists used the new app to determine the .... of underground water. WB
   a invitation b location c conversation d station
6. We have a .... for recycling in our house. WB
   a system b wind c rain d solar
7. Don't drink water from a canal because it can be full of dangerous .... WB
   a vitamins b proteins c bacteria d suitcases



8. Summer will be hotter next month and the snow ....
a is melting b melts c melted d is going to melt

9. Look at the black clouds ! It's .... soon.
a raining b going to rain c rains d rained

10. It's raining heavily and the river ....
a are flooding b flood c flooded d is going to flood

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. After 85 minutes, it is the Blue team five and the Red team one. Who is .... (win)?
2. What is the temperature going to .... (is) this afternoon?
3. Lara is .... (play) tennis at 4 o'clock tomorrow.
4. Fawzy .... (not work) next week because he has a holiday.

E Writing

6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

to your friend Salma to tell her about your holiday.

-Your name is Habiba and your email address is habiba2006@hotmail.com

-Your friend's email address is salma2007@gmail.com

....

يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكترونى:

- Where was your holiday?
- Who did you travel with?
- When did you arrive?
- How did you spend your time?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I had a good time with ....
- We had a picnic on ....
- Yesterday morning, we ....



UNIT 12 Languages and learning

Objectives

Reading:
A quiz about learning styles; an article about languages in Africa; an advert for a language school

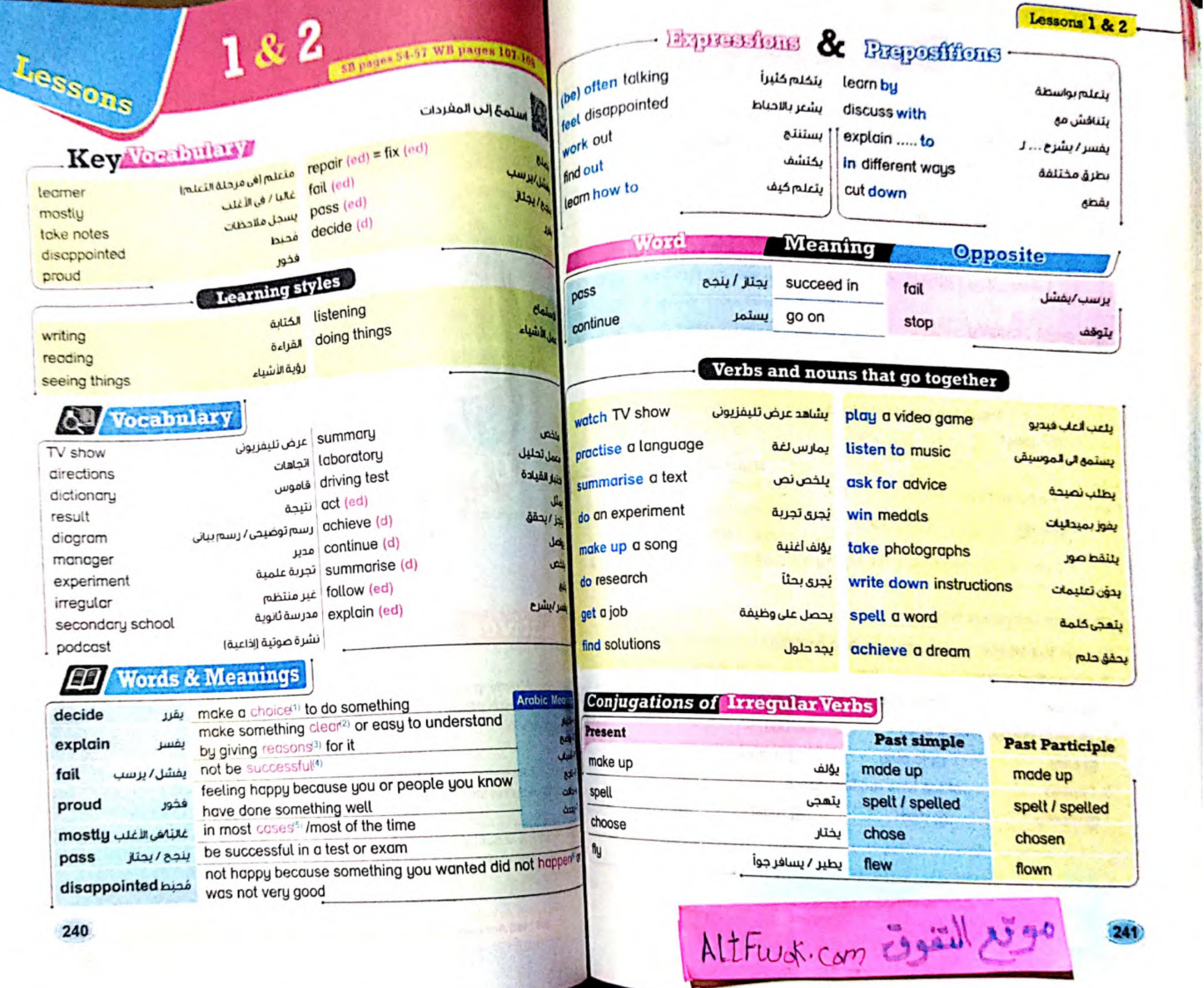
Writing:
An internet post giving advice; a study plan; an application form

Listening:
A conversation about future plans; a radio interview about animal communication

Speaking:
Talking about learning styles; a presentation about your studies; a discussion about study tips; giving advice, opinions and suggestions

Language:
A review of tenses

Life skills:
Self- management; Communication skills; Critical thinking



Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 54-57 WB pages 107-108

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

learner	متعلم (في مرحلة التعلم)	repair (ed) = fix (ed)	يصلح
mostly	غالبا / في الأغلب	fail (ed)	يفشل/يرسب
take notes	يسجل ملاحظات	pass (ed)	ينجح/يجتاز
disappointed	محبط	decide (d)	يقرر
proud	فخور		

Learning styles

writing	الكتابة	listening	الاستماع
reading	القراءة	doing things	عمل الأشياء
seeing things	رؤية الأشياء		

Vocabulary

TV show	عرض تليفزيوني	summary	ملخص
directions	اتجاهات	laboratory	معمل تحليل
dictionary	قاموس	driving test	اختبار القيادة
result	نتيجة	act (ed)	يمثل
diagram	رسم توضيحي / رسم بياني	achieve (d)	ينجز / يحقق
manager	مدير	continue (d)	يواصل
experiment	تجربة علمية	summarise (d)	يلخص
irregular	غير منتظم	follow (ed)	يتبع
secondary school	مدرسة ثانوية	explain (ed)	يفسر/يشرح
podcast	نشرة صوتية (إذاعية)		

Words & Meanings

			Arabic Meanings
decide	يقرر	make a choice[1] to do something	
explain	يفسر	make something clear[2] or easy to understand by giving reasons[3] for it	
fail	يفشل / يرسب	not be successful[4]	
proud	فخور	feeling happy because you or people you know have done something well	
mostly	غالبا/ في الأغلب	in most cases[5] /most of the time	
pass	ينجح / يجتاز	be successful in a test or exam	
disappointed	محبط	not happy because something you wanted did not happen[6] or was not very good	

Expressions & Prepositions

(be) often talking	يتكلم كثيرا	learn by	يتعلم بواسطة
feel disappointed	يشعر بالاحباط	discuss with	يتناقش مع
work out	يستنتج	explain ..... to	يفسر / يشرح ... لـ
find out	يكتشف	in different ways	بطرق مختلفة
learn how to	يتعلم كيف	cut down	يقطع

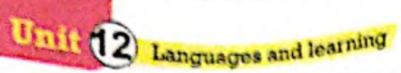
Word		Meaning	Opposite	
pass	يجتاز / ينجح	succeed in	fail	يرسب/يفشل
continue	يستمر	go on	stop	يتوقف

Verbs and nouns that go together

watch TV show	يشاهد عرض تليفزيوني	play a video game	يلعب ألعاب فيديو
practise a language	يمارس لغة	listen to music	يستمع الى الموسيقى
summarise a text	يلخص نص	ask for advice	يطلب نصيحة
do an experiment	يُجري تجربة	win medals	يفوز بميداليات
make up a song	يؤلف أغنية	take photographs	يلتقط صور
do research	يُجري بحثا	write down instructions	يدون تعليمات
get a job	يحصل على وظيفة	spell a word	يتهجى كلمة
find solutions	يجد حلول	achieve a dream	يحقق حلم

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
make up	يؤلف	made up	made up
spell	يتهجى	spelt / spelled	spelt / spelled
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
fly	يطير / يسافر جوا	flew	flown




Language Notes

1) busy

- busy + V-ing. مشغول فى ....

Ex. He is busy studying his lessons.

2) find it + صفة + to + inf.

Ex. I found it difficult / hard to learn Japanese.
Ex. I always find it hard to park my car.

3) most / mostly

- most (of) معظم / أكثر

Ex. She plays tennis most Fridays.
Ex. Most of the shops are closed today.

- the most الأكثر

تستخدم فى المقارنة مع الصفات الطويلة

Ex. He bought the most expensive car.

- mostly فى الأغلب (حال)

Ex. I am mostly interested in the history of Egypt.



Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My mother is busy .... lunch.
   a cook   b to cook   c cooks   d cooking
2. Mostafa always finds it easy .... football.
   a play   b to play   c playing   d played
3. I spend .... of the time reading books.
   a mostly   b must   c most   d mustn't



Reading موضوعات القراءة

SB P. (54)

استمع إلى النصوص

Quiz

What type of learner[1] are you?

Take the quiz to find out!

1. Which of these things do you prefer to do in your free time[2]?
   a. Read a book
   b. Watch a film or TV show[3].
   c. Play a video game
   d. Listen to music.
2. If you want to learn how to play a new sport, what do you do?
   a. Read online about how to play it.
   b. Watch a video of people playing it.
   c. Start playing and learn as you play.
   d. Ask for advice from someone who can play it.
3. You need to tell your class about a new English book. What would you prefer to do?
   a. Write a review[4] of it.
   b. Make a short video about it.
   c. Act some of the book with friends.
   d. Read some of the book to your class.
4. Someone asks you for directions[5]. What do you do?
   a. Write down instructions[6].
   b. Draw a map.
   c. Use your hands and body to explain[7].
   d. Tell them where to go.
5. If you don't know how to spell[8] a word, what do you do?
   a. Look in a dictionary.
   b. Try to work out[9] how to spell it.
   c. Write it down to see if it looks right.
   d. Say the word slowly to hear the sounds.

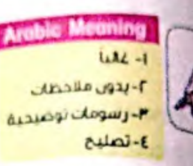
Arabic Meaning

١- متعلم
٢- وقت الفراغ
٣- عرض تليفزيونى
٤- مقال نقدى
٥- اتجاهات
٦- بدون تعليمات
٧- يشرح / يفسر
٨- يتهجى
٩- يستنتج



SB Page (55)

I chose mostly a:



- You learn best by reading and writing.
You like reading books or writing stories. You love words and learn best by reading about something and taking notes[1].

I chose mostly b:



- You learn best by seeing things.
You love to watch videos and look at diagrams[2]. You love films and art. You learn things better if you can see them.

I chose mostly c:



- You learn best by doing things.
You are always busy making and repairing[4] things. You learn things best by trying to do them and sometimes find it hard to understand by listening or reading.

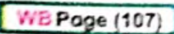
I chose mostly d:



- You learn by listening.
You love music and are often talking! You find it easier to learn by listening to people explain things to you and by discussing things with them.

SB Page (57)

When I was young, I wanted to be a scientist. Now I find science very difficult. I don't think I will be a scientist! I'm not really sure what I want to do, but my family is always telling me that school is very important and I need to study hard. I know I want to travel so I am learning lots of languages. Next year, I am starting French classes. I am going to take the exam to go to secondary school and I hope I will pass!



WB Page (107)

What sort of learners are the following?

1- Habiba likes summarising[1] a text. For example, if a text is 100 words long, she writes a summary[2] in about 15 - 20 words. Habiba learns best by writing.





2- Fares remembers things easily. I showed him a map of how to walk to my house yesterday. He says he can see the map in his head today! Fares learns by seeing things.



3- For Dareen, the best way to remember English grammar* is to make up[3] a song about it! Then she sings the song quietly to herself. She says it is a great way to remember irregular verbs[4]. Dareen learns best by listening.



4- Marwan finds it difficult to understand science books, but when he does an experiment[5] in the laboratory[6], he always understands what is happening! Marwan learns best by doing things.



Say it correctly

* grammar — ينطق حرف a في كلمة grammar مثل نطقه في كلمة man وليس مثل نطقه في كلمة car

WB Page (108)

My village didn't use to have any tourists but now lots of visitors come here every year. Today, lots of American tourists are taking photographs of the castle[1]. Last year, we had visitors from China and Japan, too! Next year, they are going to build a new hotel in the park. I am disappointed[2] about this, because I think they will cut down some of the trees to build it.



Audioscript نصوص الاستماع SB Page (56)

Fares : My name's Fares. When I was young, I didn't use to like studying. But, one day, I failed[1] an exam. My father was disappointed. He said that one day he wanted me to be the manager[2] of our family shop. He explained about all the skills[3] that I needed to work there: maths, reading, writing and English. Now I'm working hard to pass my exams so I can make my family proud[4]. Next year, I'm starting secondary school[5] and I'll continue to study hard!



Nevine : When I was nine, I was playing with my sister when I fell and hurt my arm. The doctor at the hospital was so clever and kind, so I decided I wanted to be a doctor too! I know it will be hard to achieve[6] my dream. I need to go to university and pass lots of exams. My uncle lives in the USA so I'm going to study there when I'm older and then I want to come back to Egypt and work in a hospital.

Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I was .... because I lost my favourite pen.
   a) pleased b) happy c) disappointed d) glad
2. Heba's parents are very .... of her. She is clever.
   a) disappointed b) angry c) sorry d) proud
3. You will find it easy to learn by .... your teachers.
   a) writing b) listening to c) reading d) playing
4. Salem turned on his computer to .... a video game.
   a) play b) pass c) explain d) act
5. Ali hopes he will .... his final exam.
   a) fail b) follow c) pass d) make

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. I always listen carefully to my teacher and .... notes. (الإدارة التعليمية 2022)
   a) hunt b) talk c) take d) fill
2. If you .... an exam, you will feel proud.
   a) fail b) fill c) succeed d) pass
3. .... study science three times a week during the school term.
   a) Learners b) Farmers c) Trainers d) Cleaners
4. If you .... an exam, you will feel disappointed.
   a) feel b) fail c) pass d) fall

Bit By Bit Exercises

5. .... books and stories is my favourite hobby.
   a) Reading b) Talking c) Speaking d) Listening
6. .... to music is enjoyable.
   a) Reading b) Speaking c) Listening d) Writing

7. My laptop is broken. I want to .... it.
   a) fail b) follow c) decide d) repair
8. Noha was .... excited by the Karnak Temple in Luxor.
   a) mostly b) friendly c) lovely d) silly
9. What did you .... to do after finishing your study?
   a) leave b) decide c) explain d) act
10. Mohanad could .... a solution to his problem.
   a) do b) lose c) play d) find



Review on Tenses مراجعة على الأزمنة

1- Present simple and present continuous

	Present simple المضارع البسيط	Present continuous المضارع المستمر
Form	I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + inf. He / She / It / اسم مفرد + verb + (s-es-ies)	I am He/ She / It / اسم مفرد is We / You/ They / اسم جمع are } verb + ing.
Usage	- يستخدم للتعبير عن حقائق أو عادات أو أفعال متكررة. - My uncle lives in the USA. - I play tennis every week. - The sun rises in the east.	- يستخدم ليدل على فعل يحدث أثناء وقت الكلام. - Im emailing my uncle now. - يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث لم تنتهي بعد (ولا يشترط أن تحدث وقت الكلام). - Im learning French. يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث مؤقتة. - They are painting the school this week.
Negative	Subject + don't / doesn't + inf. - I don't like playing tennis.	Subject + am/is/are not + verb + ing. - She isn't drawing pictures at the moment.
Question	(كلمة استفهام) Do/Does + فاعل + inf..? - What does she want?	(كلمة استفهام) Am/Is/Are + فاعل + verb + ing..? - What are you doing?
Keywords	every (day - week - month - year) always - usually - often sometimes - never	Listen! / now / at the moment Look! / at present

Check ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The sun .... in the morning every day.
   a is rising b rose c rises d will rise
2. The children .... now.
   a are sleeping b slept c sleep d sleeps

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I .... (take) photos at the moment.
2. My name .... (be) Osman.

2- Past simple and past continuous

	Past simple الماضي البسيط	Past continuous الماضي المستمر
Form	Subject + فعل في التصريف الثاني Subject + used to + inf. - نستخدم used to للتعبير عن عادة في الماضي وانتهت.	I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد was } verb + ing. We / You / They / اسم جمع were } verb + ing.
Usage	- يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث تم وانتهى في الماضي او عادة كانت في الماضي ولم تعد موجودة الآن. - I lived in Aswan when I was young. - I used to like tennis when I was young.	- يستخدم ليعبر عن حدوث فعل في الماضي أثناء حدوث فعل آخر. - I was playing chess with my sister when it started to rain. - يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمراً في الحدوث أثناء توقيت محدد في الماضي. - I was waiting for the match to start at 8 last night.
Negative	Subject + didn't + inf. Subject + didn't use to + inf. - I didn't watch the match yesterday. - I didn't use to like tennis! I used to like basketball.	Subject + was/were + not + verb + ing. - She wasn't listening to music when the light went out.
Question	(كلمة استفهام) Did + فاعل + inf.? (كلمة استفهام) Did + فاعل + use to + inf.? - Where did he travel? - Where did he use to live?	(كلمة استفهام) Was/Were + فاعل + verb + ing? - What were you doing when the bell rang?
Keywords	last (week-month-year) / yesterday / ago / in 2019 / in the past	While / As / Just as / When

- لا تستخدم used to مع حدث تم مرة واحدة في الماضي واستخدم الماضي البسيط بدلاً منه

Ex. Last Friday, we had visitors from China and Japan.

Check ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I .... pick up flowers when I was young.
   a was using to b use to c used to d am used to
2. They .... TV when it started to rain.
   a are watching b watch c watches d were watching

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. While she was playing, she .... (break) the window.
2. She .... (visit) the museum yesterday.

3- Future: will /(be) going to /present continuous

	will	(be) going to
Form	Subject + will + inf.	I am He / She / It / اسم مفرد is } going to + inf. We / You/ They / اسم جمع are } going to + inf.
Usage	- يستخدم للتنبؤ بحدوث فعل في المستقبل بناء على رأي شخصي دون وجود دليل. - اتخاذ قرارات سريعة - I think it will be hard but fun at university.	- تستخدم للتنبؤ بحدوث فعل في المستقبل مع وجود دليل. - تستخدم ايضا للتعبير عن نوايا او خطط مستقبلية. - I'm going to go to university. I'm not going to get a job.
Negative	Subject + won't + inf. - Osama won't work as a teacher.	Subject + am/is/are + not + going to + inf. - Basma isn't going to travel to Aswan because she is ill.
Question	(كلمة استفهام) Will + فاعل + inf.? - When will they take a test?	(كلمة استفهام) Am/Is/Are + فاعل + going to + inf.? - Who is going to help you?
Keywords	next (week - month - year) / tomorrow	next (week - month - year) / tomorrow / intend / intention / decide / plan

4- Present continuous

- نستخدم المضارع المستمر ايضا للتعبير عن خطط مستقبلية بناءا على ترتيبات (ويدل على ذلك كلمات) مثل:

arrange - arrangements - prepare - preparation

Ex. I'm visiting the museum next week. I arranged to do that.
Ex. Next year, I'm starting secondary school.

Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Listen! Salma .... the piano.
 a plays b played c was playing d is playing
2. My friends .... to school on foot last month.
 a will go b went c goes d go
3. I will .... to France next month.
 a travelled b travels c travel d travelling
4. While Leila .... along the street, she met Ola.
 a walked b walks c will walk d was walking
5. .... your father usually come home early?
 a Does b Do c Is d Have

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Are you .... (play) computer games right now?
2. Fatma sometimes .... (help) her mother with the housework.
3. I .... (reads) a funny story yesterday.
4. It's very hot in here. I .... (open) the window.

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. When I .... young, I wanted to be a scientist.
 a am b were c was d is
2. Ali is feeling ill, so I don't think he .... out this evening.
 a come b will come c came d comes
3. Next year, I .... French classes.
 a am going to start b starts c started d was starting

4. We .... to secondary school in two years.
 a went b going to go c are going to go d goes
5. Hala .... like fruit, but now she loves it. SB
 a don't b isn't c won't d didn't use to
6. What .... now? WB
 a are you doing b you are doing
 c are you going to do d you are going to do
 الجيزة - شمال الجيزة 2022

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. Mona .... to school by bus next year.
 a go b going c goes d will go
8. .... your father work in a factory?
 a Is b Do c Does d Was
9. A: Where do you live? B: I .... in Giza.
 a lived b live c am living d lives
10. I .... my homework after school.
 a doing b does c did d done
11. She isn't talking on the phone now, she .... her homework.
 a is doing b did c does d was doing

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Did you .... (used) to drive a car?
2. I .... (visit) Rome in 2010. شمال الجيزة 2022
3. My mother .... (look) for her keys now. البحيرة - وادي النطرون 2022
4. Just as I .... (go) to school, it rained. البحيرة - التحرير 2022
5. I want to travel so I .... (learn) lots of languages. سوهاج - أخميم 2022
6. We .... (watch) TV last night. SB
7. My brother .... (play) chess every Monday.



Speaking

Talking about learning styles

التحدث عن طرق التعلم

نسأل ونجيب عن طرق التعلم كالآتى:

Question	Answer
A: How do you prefer to learn? كيف تفضل أن تتعلم؟	B: I like to learn in different ways. I don't like always doing the same thing. أحب التعلم بطرق مختلفة. لا أحب عمل الشئ نفسه على الدوام.
A: What type of classes are your favourite? ما انواع الحصص التى تفضلها؟	B: I like classes when we get to do things and don't only read or listen. أحب الحصص التى نقوم فيها بعمل اشياء ولا تقتصر الحصة فقط على القراءة أو الاستماع.
A: What type of learning would you like to do more? ما نوع الطرق التعليمية التى تريد القيام بالمزيد منها؟	B: I like to do listening activities more. أحب القيام بأنشطة الاستماع بشكل أكثر.
A: What would you like to do less? Why? ماذا تريد أن تقلل منه؟ لماذا؟	B: I'd like to do less writing activities because I'm not interested in learning by writing. أريد أن اقلل من انشطة الكتابة لأنى غير مهتم بالتعلم عن طريق الكتابة.

General Exercises on Lessons 1&2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mustafa is talking about his favourite singer.

Ragab : What do you prefer to do in your free time?
Mustafa : ❶ ....
Ragab : ❷ ....
Mustafa : My favourite singer is Amr Diab.
Ragab : ❸ ....
Mustafa : Because he has a very lovely singing voice.
Ragab : What kind of music do you like?
Mustafa : ❹ ....
Ragab : Do you usually go to concerts?
Mustafa : ❺ ....

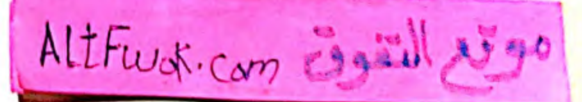
Lessons 1 & 2

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What .... they doing in the garden? (البحيرة - وادى النطرون 2022)
 a have b do c are d did
2. When was the last time you .... disappointed? SB
 a felt b fall c filled d fell
3. It was .... cloudy today. There wasn't much sun. WB
 a hardly b never c rarely d mostly
4. At the moment, my brother .... in a bank. WB
 a worked b is working c will work d work
5. Students need to .... what job they want to do. SB
 a travel b fix c repair d decide
6. I am going to take the exam to go to secondary school and I hope I ....! SB
 a will pass b was passing c passed d passes
7. When I was three years old, I didn't .... to school. SB
 a use to going b using go c use to go d used to going
8. Fares likes geography. He looks at maps and never forgets the information. He learns by ....
 a listening b doing things c seeing things d writing
9. I study grammar easily through .... I learn best by seeing things.
 a songs b grams c experiments d diagrams
10. A / An .... helps me a lot when I don't have enough time to read all my lessons.
 a summary b newspaper c letter d article

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. When I was young, I .... (use riding) a bike. (سوهاج - أخميم 2022)
2. Look! A cat .... (climb) a tree. (البحيرة - 2022)
3. Now I find science very difficult so I don't think I .... (be) a scientist!
4. Ahmed .... (study) for his maths exam at the moment. SB
5. Last Tuesday, my uncle .... (fly) to Paris. WB



4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"What sort of learner you are"

موقع التفوق AltFwok

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:
- How many learning styles are there?
- What are they?
- How do you remember English grammar?
- How do you understand science books?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- There are many ....
- These learning styles are ....
- The best way to remember English grammar is ....

SB pages 58-60 WB pages 109-110

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

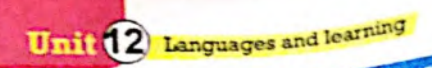
body language	لغة الجسد	national	قومى / محلى
eye contact	تواصل بصرى (بالنظر)	dialect	لهجة
multilingual	متعدد اللغات	advantage	ميزة
facial expressions	تعبيرات الوجه	identity	هوية
sound	صوت (شئ)	connect (ed)	يصل/يربط
voice	صوت (بشرى)	touch (n) (ed)	اللمس / يلمس
expert	خبير		

Vocabulary

difference	اختلاف	frightened	خائف/مرعوب
suggestion	اقتراح	field	ملعب - حقل
spoken	منطوقة/مُتحدث بها (لغة)	scared	خائف/مرعوب
home	وطن	lovely	جميل/فاتن
community	مجتمع	Switzerland	سويسرا
international	عالمى / دولى	communication	اتصال / تواصل
normally	بشكل طبيعى	communicate (d)	يتواصل
soft voice	صوت رقيق	copy (ied)	يقلد/ينسخ
professor	أستاذ جامعى	miss (ed)	يفتقد / يفوته
bright	ساطع/لامع - ذكى	believe (d)	يعتقد/يصدق
serious	جاد - خطير	wait (ed)	ينتظر

Languages

French	اللغة الفرنسية	Portuguese	اللغة البرتغالية
German	اللغة الألمانية	English	اللغة الإنجليزية
Italian	اللغة الإيطالية	Romansh	اللغة الرومانشية بسويسرا



Words & Meanings

Word	Arabic	Meaning
dialect	لهجة	- a way of speaking used in one area - a form of a language that people speak in a particular part of a country.
national	قومي/محلي	relating(1) to or typical(2) of a whole(4) country and its people
advantage	ميزة	a good thing about something
expert	خبير	someone who has a lot of skill in or knowledge about something
multilingual	متعدد اللغات	be able to speak more than two languages
connect	يصل/يربط	bring(5) things / people together, join
identity	هوية	the thing that makes you different to other people
body language	لغة الجسد	the way you move your body, that shows people what you are feeling
touch	يلمس	put your hand onto something or someone
voice	صوت (بشري)	the sounds that are made when people speak or sing
eye contact	تواصل بصري (بالنظر)	if two people make eye contact, they look at each other at the same time
facial expression	تعبير الوجه	the look on someone's face showing what they feel or think

Expressions & Prepositions

Expressions		Prepositions	
have advantages	لديه مميزات	careful about	حريص بشأن
make (a) noise	يُحدث ضجيج	on a farm	في مزرعة
make eye contact	يتواصل بصرياً «بالنظر»	on the internet	على الانترنت
home language	اللغة الرسمية في البلد	go away	يذهب بعيداً
feel different	يشعر بشيء مختلف (مميز)	spend time with	يقضي وقت مع
head down	مطأطئ الرأس	disappointed with	محبط من
that's true	هذا صحيح	communicate with	يتواصل مع
copy sounds	يقلد الأصوات	walk into	يدخل مكان
bring together	يجمع	connect to	يصل/يربط بـ
from my point of view	من وجهة نظري	different to	مختلف عن
		at the front door	عند الباب الأمامي

Word		Meaning	Opposite	
quiet	هادئ	calm	noisy	صاخب/ضوضائي
inside	في الداخل	indoors	outside	في الخارج
advantage	ميزة	merit	disadvantage	عيب
true	حقيقي	real	untrue	غير حقيقي

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
spend	يقضي وقت - يصرف مال	spent	spent
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
leave	يغادر	left	left

Language Notes

1) voice / sound

- **voice (n)** صوت (بشري)

Ex. He was ill so I could hardly hear his voice.

- **sound (n)** صوت (شيء)

Ex. Please, turn the sound of the radio down a little.

- **sound (v-ed)** يبدو

Ex. That sounds a good idea.

2) communicate / connect

- **communicate (with)** يتواصل (مع)

Ex. We live in different cities and we communicate with each other by email.

- **connect (to)** يصل/يربط (بـ)

Ex. Our home language connects us to our country.

3) dialect / accent

- **dialect** لهجة (تشير إلى الاختلافات فى القواعد أو مفردات لنفس اللغة من منطقة لأخرى)

Ex. There are many dialects in Egypt like Saidi and Bedouin.

- **accent** لكنة (تشير إلى الطريقة التى ينطق بها الأفراد كلمات أو عبارات معينة)

Ex. Although he spoke English well, I knew he was Indian from his accent.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The kids repeated the song in high ....
   a) sounds b) voices c) talks d) touch
2. Our computer is .... to the internet.
   a) connected b) communicated c) consisted d) contained
3. People in north Egypt speak coastal ....
   a) voice b) language c) dialect d) sound

Audioscript (النصوص الاستماع) SB Page (58)

استمع إلى النصوص

Munir: What do you know about animals? Do you think they understand you? Today I'm talking to Dr Ahmed who is going to tell us about how animals communicate[1]. Hello, Dr Ahmed.

Dr Ahmed: Hello.

Munir: Let's talk about the animals that you often see on a farm. My brother is a farmer[2] and I think that his cat understands him sometimes. Is that possible?

Dr Ahmed: I'm sure the cat understands when he is angry[3] and understands words like 'dinner', for example.

Munir: But of course, the cat can't talk to him.

Dr Ahmed: No, animals can't speak in the way people can, but some animals communicate, both to us like birds can copy[4] sounds. But animals do communicate, both to us and to each other. One way animals communicate is by using body language[5]. For example, horses touch noses to say hello to another horse they like and bees dance when they find a good flower.

Munir: So can I learn to communicate better with animals then?

Dr Ahmed: From my point of view[6], it's important to watch and listen to what animals are trying to tell you. You should be careful about how you use your body and voice[7]. So, if an animal is scared[7], you should move slowly and use a soft voice[9]. How about listening to the way your cat makes a noise? Does it sound different if it wants some food? I think it will!

Arabic Meaning
١- يتواصل
٢- مزارع
٣- غاضب
٤- يقلد
٥- لغة الجسد
٦- من وجهة نظرى
٧- صوت بشرى
٨- خائف / مرعوب
٩- صوت رقيق

WB Page (109)

Ola: I'm looking after my baby cousin Lina today. Isn't she lovely[1]?

Injy: Yes, but how can you understand what she wants?

Ola: From my point of view, you should first look at the baby's facial expressions[2], so you know if they are happy or sad.

Injy: That's true.

Ola: I think Lina's tooth is hurting her. You can see from her body language.

Injy: What should we do?

Ola: Let's try to make her laugh.

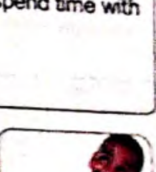
Injy: Good idea. How about singing a funny song!

Arabic Meaning
١- جميل
٢- تعبيرات الوجه

Reading (موضوعات القراءة) SB P. (59)

Can anyone give me some advice? I have an older sister (she's three years older than me). We used to be best friends, but now she doesn't want to talk to me very much. She is always on the internet or talking to people on her phone.
She tells me to go away if I try to talk to her. How can I get her to spend time with me again?
Please give me some advice!
Yours, Radwa.

SB Page (60)



Multilingual Africa[1]

Experts[2] believe that there are more than 2,100 languages spoken[3] in Africa. Many African people speak three languages: their dialect[4] (or home language), the national[5] language and another European[6] language such as English, French or Portuguese[7] that they learn at school. This means they are multilingual! Of course, many people speak more than three languages!

People who speak different languages have lots of advantages[8]. If you speak more than one language, you can talk to different people in different places and in different ways. When you are multilingual, you are able to understand both your home and the world better.

Arabic Meaning
١- أفريقيا متعددة اللغات
٢- خبراء
٣- منطوقة
٤- لهجة
٥- قومى / محلى
٦- أوروبى
٧- لغة برتغالية
٨- مميزات

It also gives people different identities[9]. If you speak your home language, it connects[10] you to your community[11]. Your national language connects you to your country and all the other people in it. An international[12] language, like English, connects your to an international community.

٩- هويات
١٠- يربط
١١- مجتمع
١٢- دولى

WB Page (109)

Form of communication[1]

1- Shady is waiting at the front door[2] of his friend's house. He knows someone is inside the house because he can hear sounds.
2- It's the end of a football match. All the players in the blue team are leaving the field[3] very slowly. They all have their heads down[4]. We know they are disappointed with the result[5] by their body language.
3- A blind[6] man walks into a clothes shop and buys a shirt. He chooses the shirt by touch[7].
4- Malak and Randa are sitting on different sides[8] of a busy library. They must be quiet in the library. Randa knows that Malak wants to leave because she makes eye contact[9] with her.
5- Some children are watching a film. We know the film is scary[10] by their facial expressions.

Arabic Meaning
١- تواصل / إتصال
٢- باب أمامى
٣- ملعب
٤- مطاطئ الرأس
٥- نتيجة
٦- كفيف
٧- اللمس
٨- جوانب
٩- تواصل بصرى «بالنظر»
١٠- مرعب/مخيف

WB Page (110)

The languages of Switzerland

Switzerland[1] is a small European[2] country. Here, you do not need to be an expert to speak many languages. That is because nearly all people in Switzerland are multilingual: they speak the country's four national languages. That is because each area of Switzerland has always had its own identity and its own language.

The parts of Switzerland near Italy speak Italian[3], the parts near Germany[4] speak German[5] and the parts near France speak French[6]. In the southwest[7] of Switzerland, they also speak a dialect called Romansh[8]. Each language connects the people with their area, but they are also very proud of their country.

Arabic Meaning
١- سويسرا
٢- أوربية
٣- اللغة الإيطالية
٤- دولة ألمانيا
٥- اللغة الألمانية
٦- اللغة الفرنسية
٧- جنوب غرب
٨- اللغة الرومانشية

Videoscript

SB Page (60)

Lessons 3 & 4

Hieroglyphics[1] was a form of writing that was used in Ancient Egypt. It used pictures to represent[2] letters and words. For example, this picture is the letter "A" in English.

We know how to read these pictures because of the Rosetta Stone[3], which was found in Rashid[4] in the 18th century[5]. The Rosetta Stone is special. It was - perhaps - the world's first language dictionary[6]. That is because the stone[7] has both hieroglyphics and writing in the language of Ancient Greece[8].

Before they found the Rosetta Stone, people didn't understand the meaning[9] of hieroglyphics. However, experts who understood Ancient Greek could work out what the pictures meant.

But did you know that many of us still[10] use a form of hieroglyphics today? These are emojis[11] and people sometimes use them when they are sending text messages to their friends. Like hieroglyphics, emojis use pictures to represent letters or words. This emoji 😊 means that the writer is happy...and this one 😢 means the writer is sad.

Some emojis even look like hieroglyphics, like this scarab beetle[12] and this ladybird[13]. They both mean different things, however. The scarab beetle was used to represent 'strong' and the ladybird is used to represent "good luck".

Arabic Meaning
١- اللغة الهيروغليفية
٢- ترمز الى
٣- حجر رشيد
٤- مدينة رشيد
٥- قرن (١٠٠ عام)
٦- قاموس
٧- حجر
٨- اليونان القديمة
٩- معنى
١٠- مازال
١١- رسوم تعبيرية
١٢- جعران فرعونى
١٣- خنفساء الدعسوقة

Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In southern Egypt, people speak a .... called Saidi.
 a festival b game c tradition d dialect
2. The players understand each other through .... contact.
 a eye b ear c nose d mouth
3. In football, only goalkeepers can .... the ball with their hands.
 a smell b hear c touch d see
4. I could tell that she was angry from her body ....
 a contact b language c builder d work
5. My friends and I .... using "WhatsApp".
 a communicate b connect c copy d believe

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. The policeman asked me for my .... card. سوهاج - اخميم 2022
 a post b identity c wedding d idea
2. A sound that comes from your mouth is your .... SB
 a sound b hear c voice d touch
3. What is the .... language of Egypt? WB
 a fashion b occasional c emotional d national
4. A person who speaks lots of languages is .... SB
 a multilingual b greedy c lazy d national

Bit by Bit Exercises

5. I knew he was scared from his .... expressions.
 a station b nasal c social d facial
6. One of the .... of living in the countryside is the fresh air.
 a disadvantages b damages c advantages d harm
7. A .... is a form of a language that is spoken in certain areas.
 a dialect b sport c subject d colour
8. Muhammad should .... more time with his family.
 a go b walk c spend d do
9. Do you know how to .... my mobile to a TV?
 a spend b connect c miss d communicate
10. The violin gives a lovely ....
 a sound b language c dialect d voice

Speaking

Giving advice, opinions and suggestions لطلب النصح وتقديم الرأي والاقتراحات

استخدم العبارات التالية للتعبير عن النصيحة/الرأي/الاقتراحات:

Advice النصيحة	You should...	يجب عليك أن ...
Opinion الرأي	From my point of view, ... In my opinion, ... I think...	من وجهة نظري... في رأي... أعتقد...
Suggestion الاقتراح	Let's + inf.... . Why don't you / we + inf....? How about + v-ing .....?	هيا ... لما لا ...؟ ما رأيك في ...؟

General Exercises on Lessons 3&4

Lessons 3 & 4

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Yasser wants to buy a new laptop.

Yasser : I want to buy a laptop, dad.
Dad : 1 ....
Yasser : Do you think a tablet is better?
Dad : 2 .... It's easier to use.
Yasser : Good opinion, dad. 3 ....
Dad : Today, I'm busy. 4 .... ?
Yasser : Tomorrow? OK! Should we buy a modern or an old one?
Dad : 5 ....
Yasser : But a modern one is expensive.
Dad : No problem. I have enough money.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In Switzerland, you do not need to be an .... to speak many languages. WB
 a experiment b expert c experience d expect
2. Some children are watching a film. We know the film is scary by their .... WB
 a eye contact b facial expressions
 c touch d body language
3. Shady can hear .... inside the house . WB
 a sounds b smell c touch d taste
4. A blind man chooses the shirt by .... WB
 a sounds b sight c smell d touch
5. Your .... makes you different to other people.
 a house b identity c flat d sound
6. .... about going out for a walk? It's fine today.
 a When b Why c How d Where
7. .... my point of view, it's important to study new languages.
 a From b In c By d for
8. Some animals can .... sounds. WB
 a connect b feel c copy d spend

(جواب منه في آخر الوحدة) SB

3 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:
to your friend Radwa to advise her about the problem with her sister.
- Your name is Fatma and your email address is fatma345@gmail.com
- Your friend's name is Radwa and her email address is radwa898@yahoo.com

موقع التفوق AltFwok

-يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الالكتروني:
- What should Radwa tell her sister?
- What's your advice to Radwa?
- What would you do if you were Radwa?
- What should Radwa advise her sister not to do?

-يمكن أستخدام العبارات الآتية:
- You should tell your sister ....
- My advice to you is ....
- If I were you, I'd ....
- You should advise your sister not to ....

SB pages 61 - 62 WB pages 111 -112

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

summer school	مدرسة صيفية	spelling	الهجاء
context	سياق الكلام / سياق الحديث	punctuation	علامات الترقيم
volunteer	متطوع	pronunciation	النطق
personal statement	بيان شخصي	accent	لكنة
vocabulary	مفردات لغوية	improve (d)	يطور / يحسن
application form	استمارة / طلب تقديم	manage (d)	يدير / ينظم
study plan	خطة دراسية		

Important phrases

manage your time	نظم وقتك	sleep well	نم جيدًا
work alone	إعمل بمفردك	be organised	كن مُنظمًا
take a break	خذ فترة راحة		

Vocabulary

negative meaning	معنى سلبي	comments	تعليقات
title	لقب / عنوان (كتاب أو فيلم)	flashcards	بطاقات تعليمية مصورة
timetable	جدول مواعيد	furniture	أثاث
summer courses	دورات تدريبية صيفية	topic	موضوع
nationality	جنسية	news article	مقال إخباري
email address	عنوان البريد الإلكتروني	revise (d)	يراجع
bilingual	ثنائي اللغة	test (ed) (n)	يختبر/اختبار
friendly	ودود	realise (d)	يدرك
textbook	كتاب مدرسي	smoke (d) (n)	يدخن/دخان
interesting fact	حقيقة شيقة		

Words & Meanings

			Arabic Meaning
organised	منظم	- able to plan (1) things carefully (2) - arranged or planned	1- يخطط 2- بعناية 3- في المقابل
volunteer	متطوع	a person who helps others without getting anything in return (3)	
improve	يحسن/يطور	to get better at something	

Expressions & Prepositions

make a study timetable	يعمل جدول للاستذكار	have fun	يستمتع
the best way to + inf.	أفضل طريقة لـ	do sport / activities	يمارس رياضة/أنشطة
sounds fun	يبدو ممتع	from around the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم
walk past	يسير مارًا	at the same time	في نفس الوقت
come from	يأتي من (بلد ما)	organised by topic	منظم حسب الموضوع
look the same	يبدو متطابق/متماثل	best for	أفضل لـ
get better	يتحسن	listen for / to	يستمع لـ
English-language TV programmes	برامج تلفزيونية لتعلم الإنجليزية	good at	جيد في

Word Meaning Opposites

Word		Meaning	Opposites	
negative	سلبي	bad	positive	إيجابي
friendly	ودود	kind	unfriendly	غير ودود

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
break	يكسر	broke	broken
come	يأتي	came	come
spell	يتهجى	spelt / spelled	spelt / spelled

1) The prefix (dis)

• يضاف في بداية بعض الكلمات الإنجليزية مقاطع تعطي معنى مختلف للكلمة تسمى بادئات (prefixes).

• من هذه المقاطع البادئة (dis-) حيث تعطي معنى سلبي أو عكس الكلمة الأصلية:

organised	منظم	disorganised	غير منظم
connected	متصل	disconnected	غير متصل
advantage	ميزة	disadvantage	عيب

• لاحظ في الكلمات السابقة إذا حذفنا المقطع (dis) فإن الكلمة المتبقية ستكون ذات معنى وهو عكس الكلمة لكن لا ينطبق ذلك على كلمات أخرى مثل (disappointed).

2) too + adj (for...) + to + inf.

• يستخدم التعبير السابق للتعبير عن شيء كثير أو زائد لدرجة لا تتحمل (سعره - حرارته ....)

Ex. My house is too noisy to study in.

Ex. This shirt is too expensive for me to buy.

3) street / road

• street شارع في منطقة سكنية

Ex. We live in a quiet street.

• road طريق ممهد للسفر أو التنقل بين مكانين/مدينتين

Ex. The farm is on Cairo-Alexandria road.

4) Completing an application form بيانات لكمل استمارة لتقديم طلب

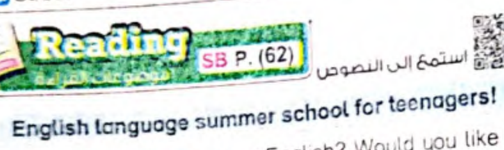
• عند التقدم بطلب الوظيفة/الالتحاق بمدرسة/جامعة/دورة تدريبية.... إلخ، تكمل استمارة بالبيانات الآتية:

- Name: .... الاسم:
- Age: .... العمر:
- Date of birth: .... تاريخ الميلاد:
- Nationality: .... الجنسية:
- Address: .... العنوان:
- Phone number: .... رقم الهاتف:
- Email address: .... عنوان البريد الإليكتروني:
- Personal statement: .... بيان شخصي:

Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The opposite of connected is ....
   a) disconnected b) connecting c) ilconnected d) inconnected
2. The tea is .... hot to drink.
   a) two b) toe c) to d) too
3. Take Ismailia Desert .... to travel from Cairo to Ismailia.
   a) Street b) Road c) Ocean d) Sky



Reading SB P. (62)

استمع إلى النصوص

English language summer school for teenagers!

Do you want to improve[1] your English? Would you like to study in England with other young people from around the world? Come and stay at Hapstone House, in the south of England, for our summer courses[2]! You can study every morning with our friendly[3], expert teachers and spend the afternoons doing sports or other activities. Every weekend we visit famous English places (like London or Oxford).

Learn English,
have fun,
visit England!

For more information, visit our website.

Arabic Meaning
١- يطور/يحسن
٢- دورات تعليمية صيفية
٣- ودود

WB Page (111)

Study plan[1]: how to learn English vocabulary[2]

1- Make flashcards[3] of words that you need to remember, organised[4] by topic[5] (for example, words for furniture)[6].
2- Write the words in context[7]: that means putting the word in a written sentence, so you can see how it works with other words.
3- Don't try to remember too many words at the same time: find how many words is best for you.
4- Watch English-language TV programmes or films and listen for known[8] words.
5- Read as many stories and news articles[9] as you can: it's the best way to learn vocabulary!
6- Work with a friend and try to test each other on important words.

Arabic Meaning
١- خطة دراسية
٢- مفردات لغوية
٣- بطاقات تعليمية
٤- منظم/مرتب
٥- موضوع
٦- أثاث
٧- سياق الكلام
٨- معروف
٩- مقالات إخبارية

WB Page (112)

Hi

My name's Mario. I am fourteen years old. My birthday is 14 February and I'm from Italy. My address[1] is 7 North Road, Rome and my phone number[2] is 889900. I don't have email (my parents don't like computers!). I want to improve my English because I want to do well[3] in my exams next year. I think that your course sounds fun and I think I will enjoy your activities. I love playing sports such as[4] football and tennis. I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours,
Mario Dollo

Arabic Meaning
١- عنوان
٢- رقم الهاتف
٣- يؤدي جيدًا
٤- مثل

WB Page (113)

When my father was younger, he used to help on his uncle's farm. One day, he was walking past[1] the building where the horses slept when he saw some smoke[2]. He realised[3] there was a fire. The horses were frightened[4] and they didn't want to leave the building. My father was very calm[5] and made eye contact with the horses. Then, he carefully took them from the building. When I heard this story, I decided that I wanted to become a vet[6]. Next year, I am starting studying at university. I think it will be difficult work, but I love animals. I'm looking forward to working with them in the future.

Arabic Meaning
١- يمشي بجوار
٢- دخان
٣- يدرك
٤- مرعوب
٥- هادئ
٦- طبيب بيطري

Exercises on Lessons 5, 6 & 7

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The books are .... alphabetically on the shelf.
   a) organised b) disappointed c) disconnected d) closed
2. I felt so .... when my parents didn't come to drive me home.
   a) connected b) disconnected c) disappointed d) organised
3. One of the .... of this job is that they offer a car to and from the factory.
   a) disadvantages b) damages c) bad points d) advantages
4. We learn a lot of .... in this lesson.
   a) volunteers b) vocabulary c) furniture d) breaks

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. When you get tired, you can .... a break.
   a) make b) take c) win d) do
2. Successful persons always .... their time.
   a) manage b) damage c) test d) revise
3. I want to .... my English because I want to do well in my exams.
   a) move b) include c) improve d) prove
4. The charity needs some .... like you. (2022 - مواقع أخطاء)
   a) vans b) fans c) voluntary d) volunteers

Bit By bit Exercises

5. The two cities are .... by a bridge.
   a) connected b) organised c) disorganised d) disappointed
6. We add the prefix "........" to give the opposite of "organised".
   a) ir- b) il- c) dis- d) in-
7. The question is .... difficult to answer.
   a) too b) two c) to d) twice
8. We should be .... to do better in our life.
   a) disorganised b) borken c) organised d) known

Speaking

A discussion about study tips (for an exam)

مناقشة حول ارشادات الاستذكار

استخدم العبارات والنصائح الآتية عند نصح شخص ما بكيفية الاستذكار

Be organised كن منظماً
- Know what you need to do and when to do it. اعرف ماذا تحتاج ان تفعل ومتى.

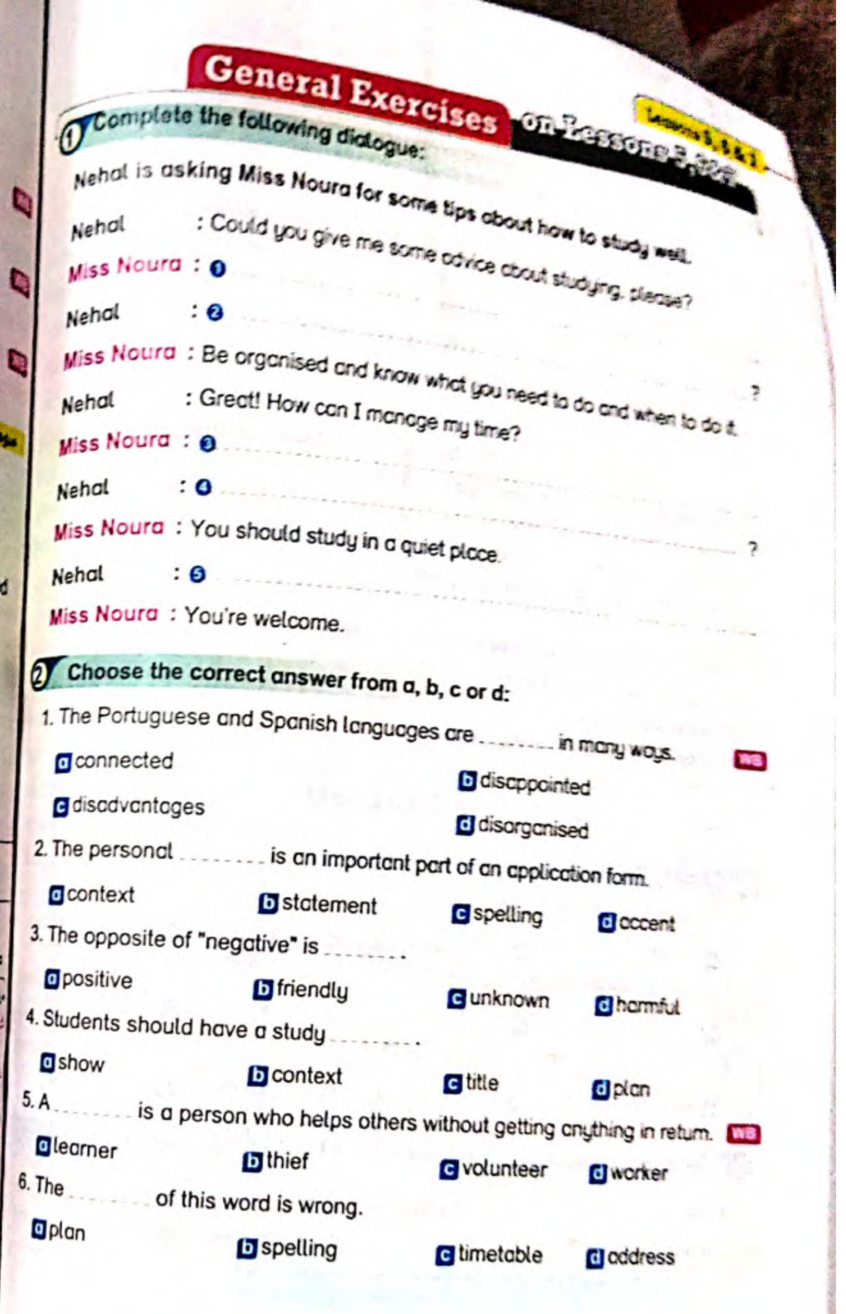
Manage your time نظم وقتك
- Make a study timetable. قم بعمل جدول للاستذكار.

Where do you study? اين تذاكر؟
- Find a quiet space to study. If your house is too busy, you could go to the library. اوجد مكان هادئ للاستذكار. اذا كان المنزل مزدحم يمكن ان تذهب للمكتبة.

Work alone or with friends. اعمل بمفردك او مع أصدقائك.

Take breaks. خذ فترات راحة.

Sleep well. نم جيداً.



General Exercises on Lessons 5, 6 & 7

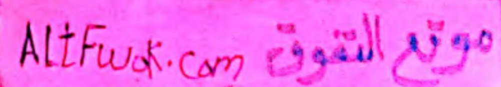
1 Complete the following dialogue:

Nehal is asking Miss Noura for some tips about how to study well.

Nehal : Could you give me some advice about studying, please?
Miss Noura : ❶ ....
Nehal : ❷ ....?
Miss Noura : Be organised and know what you need to do and when to do it.
Nehal : Great! How can I manage my time?
Miss Noura : ❸ ....
Nehal : ❹ ....?
Miss Noura : You should study in a quiet place.
Nehal : ❺ ....
Miss Noura : You're welcome.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Portuguese and Spanish languages are .... in many ways. (WB)
   a) connected b) disappointed c) disadvantages d) disorganised
2. The personal .... is an important part of an application form.
   a) context b) statement c) spelling d) accent
3. The opposite of "negative" is ....
   a) positive b) friendly c) unknown d) harmful
4. Students should have a study ....
   a) show b) context c) title d) plan
5. A .... is a person who helps others without getting anything in return. (WB)
   a) learner b) thief c) volunteer d) worker
6. The .... of this word is wrong.
   a) plan b) spelling c) timetable d) address



WB

3 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

(يجاب عنه فى آخر الوحدة)

"How to learn English vocabulary"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:
- What is the problem that most learners face?
- How can flashcards be used?
- Why should we watch English-language TV programmes?
- What's the best way to learn vocabulary?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- Most English-language learners face the problem of ....
- They can make flashcards of ....
- They should watch ....
- The best way to learn vocabulary is ....

Excel Yourself

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b c or d:

1. Look at those black clouds. It ....
a rained b rain c rains d is going to rain
2. I used to like ice cream, but now I ....
a am not b don't c didn't d wasn't
3. What .... at 8 p.m. last night?
a were you doing b are you doing c do you do d will you do

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He .... (reads) an interesting story yesterday.
2. I was tired and I .... (can't) do my homework.

Review on unit 12

Key Vocabulary

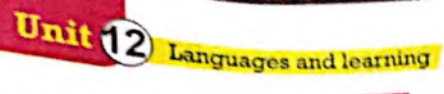
learner	متعلم (فى مرحلة التعلم)	expert	خبير
mostly	غالبا / فى الأغلب	national	قومى / محلى
take notes	يسجل ملاحظات	dialect	لهجة
disappointed	مُحبَط	advantage	ميزة
proud	فخور	identity	هوية
body language	لغة الجسد	spelling	الهجاء
eye contact	تواصل بصرى (بالنظر)	punctuation	علامات الترقيم
multilingual	متعدد اللغات	pronunciation	النطق
facial expressions	تعبيرات الوجه	accent	لكنة
sound	صوت (شئ)	repair (ed) = fix (ed)	يُصلح
voice	صوت (بشرى)	fail (ed)	يفشل/يرسب
summer school	مدرسة صيفية	pass (ed)	ينجح/ يجتاز
context	سياق الكلام/سياق الحديث	decide (d)	يقرر
volunteer	متطوع	improve (d)	يطور/ يحسن
personal statement	بيان شخصى	manage (d)	يدير/ ينظم
vocabulary	مفردات لغوية	connect (ed)	يصل/يربط
application form	استمارة / طلب تقديم	touch (n) (ed)	اللمس/ يلمس
study plan	خطة دراسية		

Learning styles

writing	الكتابة	listening	الاستماع
reading	القراءة	doing things	عمل الأشياء
seeing things	رؤية الأشياء		

Important phrases

manage your time	نظم وقتك	sleep well	نم جيدًا
work alone	إعمل بمفردك	be organised	كن منظّمًا
take a break	خذ استراحة		





1- The present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط

فاعل	إثبات	نفى	استفهام
I / We / You / They / اسم جمع	inf. مصدر الفعل	don't + inf. never + inf.	(كلمة إستفهام) Do + فاعل + inf.?
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	inf. + s / es / ies	doesn't + inf. never + inf + s /es / ies	(كلمة إستفهام) Does + فاعل + inf.?

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

every (day - week - month - year) - always - usually - often - sometimes - never

Usage الاستخدام

• يعبر عن حقائق - أفعال متكررة وعادات

Ex. We help mum at home.
Ex. We don't make noise.
Ex. Do they have a car?
- Yes, they do. / No, they don't.

- Ali lives in Giza.
- Mona doesn't live in Giza.
- Does Aya live in Giza?
- Yes, she does./ No, she doesn't.

2- The past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط

إثبات	نفى	استفهام
فاعل + الفعل فى التصريف الثاني	فاعل + didn't + inf.	(كلمة إستفهام) Did + فاعل + inf.?

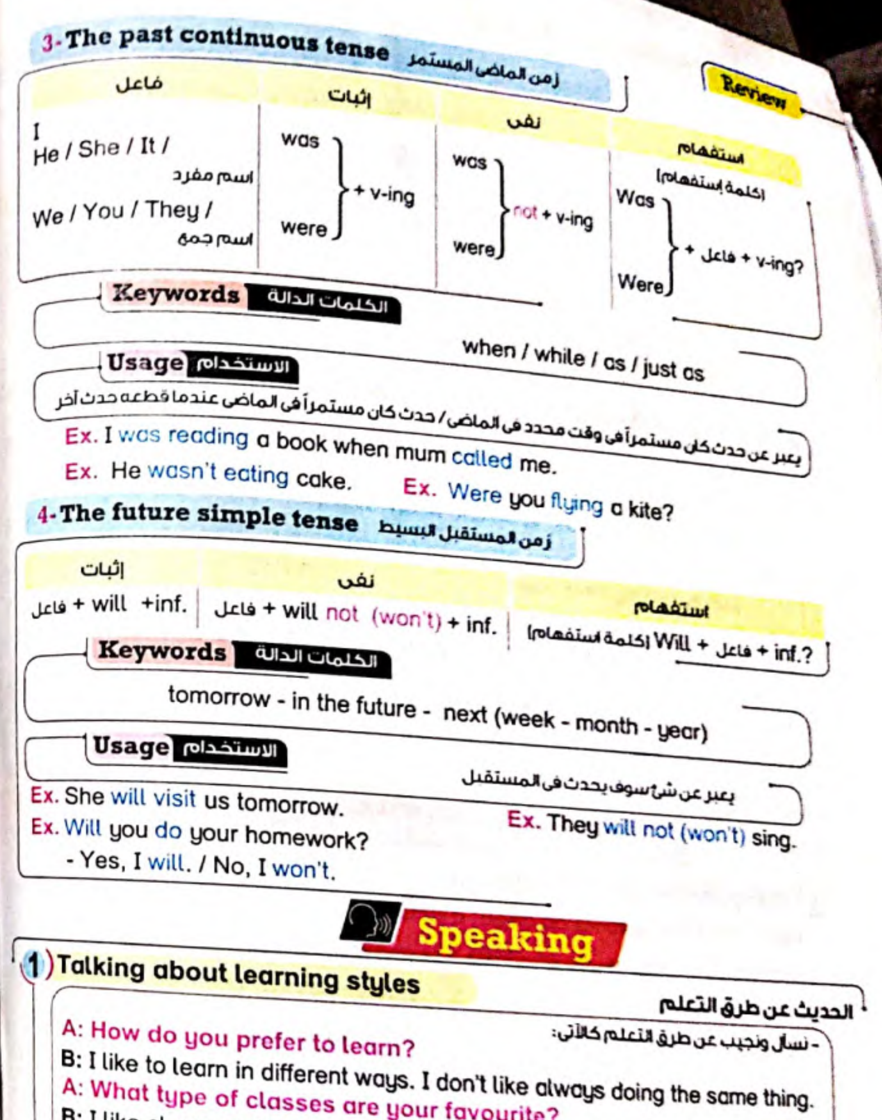
Keywords الكلمات الدالة

yesterday - last (week - month - year) - ago - in the past - once - in 2015

Usage الاستخدام

• يعبر عن فعل حدث وانتهى فى وقت محدد فى الماضى

Ex. She cooked fish yesterday.
Ex. She didn't cook meat yesterday.
Ex. Did she cook rice yesterday?
- Yes, she did. / No, she didn't.



3- The past continuous tense زمن الماضي المستمر

Review

فاعل	إثبات	نفى	استفهام
I He / She / It / اسم مفرد	was + v-ing	was not + v-ing	(كلمة إستفهام) Was + فاعل + v-ing?
We / You / They / اسم جمع	were + v-ing	were not + v-ing	Were + فاعل + v-ing?

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

when / while / as / just as

Usage الاستخدام

يعبر عن حدث كان مستمراً فى وقت محدد فى الماضى / حدث كان مستمراً فى الماضى عندما قطعه حدث آخر

Ex. I was reading a book when mum called me.
Ex. He wasn't eating cake.
Ex. Were you flying a kite?

4- The future simple tense زمن المستقبل البسيط

إثبات	نفى	استفهام
فاعل + will +inf.	فاعل + will not (won't) + inf.	(كلمة استفهام) Will + فاعل + inf.?

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

tomorrow - in the future - next (week - month - year)

Usage الاستخدام

يعبر عن شئ سوف يحدث فى المستقبل

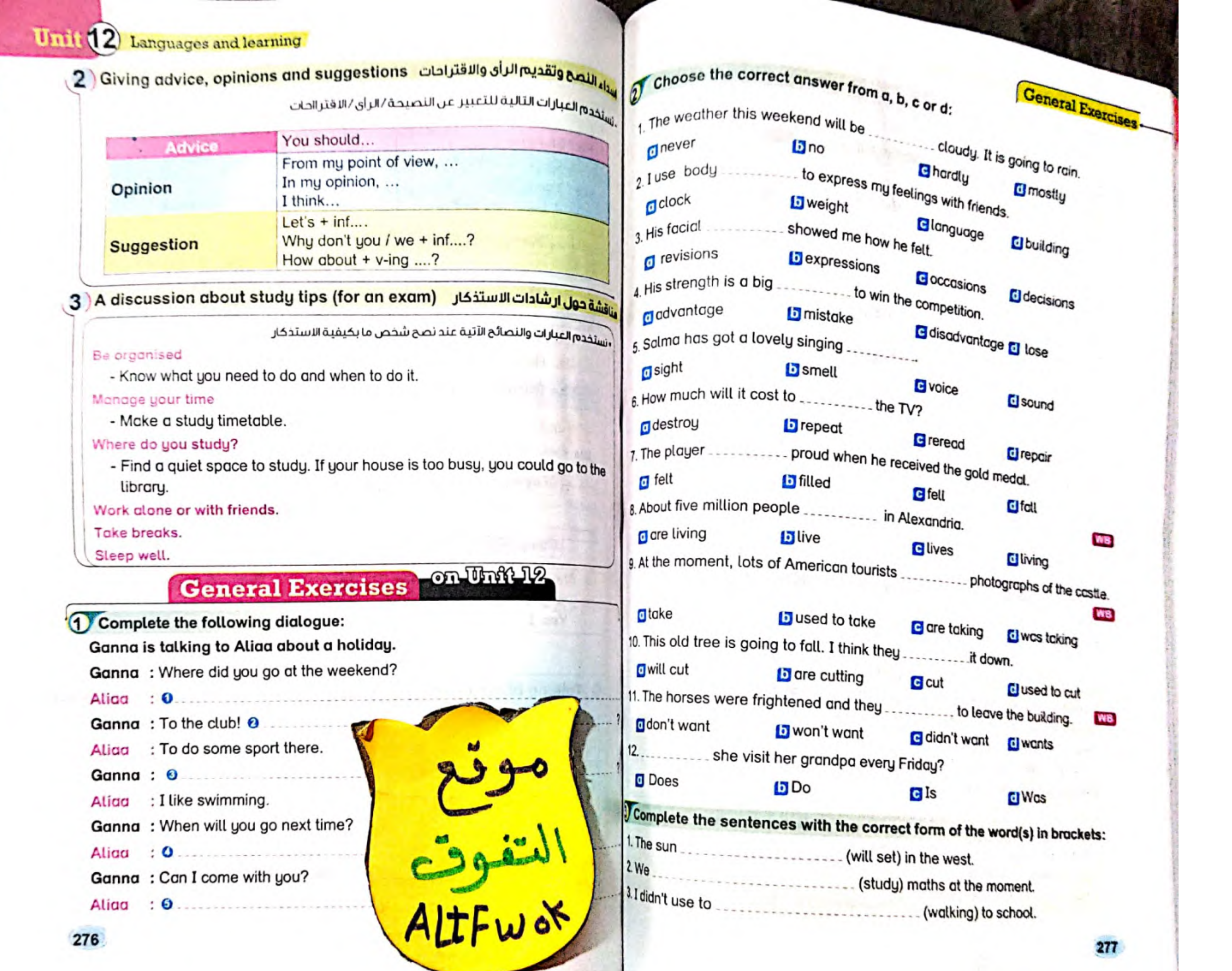
Ex. She will visit us tomorrow.
Ex. Will you do your homework?
- Yes, I will. / No, I won't.
Ex. They will not (won't) sing.

Speaking

1) Talking about learning styles الحديث عن طرق التعلم

- نسأل ونجيب عن طرق التعلم كالآتى:

A: How do you prefer to learn?
B: I like to learn in different ways. I don't like always doing the same thing.
A: What type of classes are your favourite?
B: I like classes when we get to do things and don't only read or listen.
A: What type of learning would you like to do more?
B: I'd like to do listening activities more.
A: What would you like to do less? Why?
B: I'd like to do less writing activities because I'm not interested in learning by writing.



2 Giving advice, opinions and suggestions إسداء النصح وتقديم الرأى والاقتراحات

نستخدم العبارات التالية للتعبير عن النصيحة / الرأى / الاقتراحات.

Advice	You should...
Opinion	From my point of view, ... In my opinion, ... I think...
Suggestion	Let's + inf.... Why don't you / we + inf....? How about + v-ing ....?

3 A discussion about study tips (for an exam) مناقشة حول ارشادات الاستذكار

نستخدم العبارات والنصائح الآتية عند نصح شخص ما بكيفية الاستذكار.

Be organised
- Know what you need to do and when to do it.

Manage your time
- Make a study timetable.

Where do you study?
- Find a quiet space to study. If your house is too busy, you could go to the library.

Work alone or with friends.

Take breaks.

Sleep well.

General Exercises on Unit 12

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ganna is talking to Aliaa about a holiday.

Ganna : Where did you go at the weekend?
Aliaa : ❶ ....
Ganna : To the club! ❷ ....?
Aliaa : To do some sport there.
Ganna : ❸ ....
Aliaa : I like swimming.
Ganna : When will you go next time?
Aliaa : ❹ ....
Ganna : Can I come with you?
Aliaa : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

General Exercises

1. The weather this weekend will be .... cloudy. It is going to rain.
   a never b no c hardly d mostly
2. I use body .... to express my feelings with friends.
   a clock b weight c language d building
3. His facial .... showed me how he felt.
   a revisions b expressions c occasions d decisions
4. His strength is a big .... to win the competition.
   a advantage b mistake c disadvantage d lose
5. Salma has got a lovely singing ....
   a sight b smell c voice d sound
6. How much will it cost to .... the TV?
   a destroy b repeat c reread d repair
7. The player .... proud when he received the gold medal.
   a felt b filled c fell d fall
8. About five million people .... in Alexandria. WB
   a are living b live c lives d living
9. At the moment, lots of American tourists .... photographs of the castle. WB
   a take b used to take c are taking d was taking
10. This old tree is going to fall. I think they .... it down.
   a will cut b are cutting c cut d used to cut
11. The horses were frightened and they .... to leave the building. WB
   a don't want b won't want c didn't want d wants
12. .... she visit her grandpa every Friday?
   a Does b Do c Is d Was

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The sun .... (will set) in the west.
2. We .... (study) maths at the moment.
3. I didn't use to .... (walking) to school.

4. While my mother .... (cooked), my father arrived home.

5. My father .... (going to) work because he's tired.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words: SB (مجاب عنه فى آخر الوحدة)

"Your study plans"

....

....

....



- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What should you do if you have a project or an exam?
- How can you make a study plan?
- How can you be organised?
- How can you manage your time?
- Where should you study?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- You should .... if you have a project or an exam.
- There are many steps you should follow to ....
- You should know what ....
- You should find a quiet place to ....

Azhar Exercises

تمرينات الأزهر الشريف

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال فى آخر الكتاب

1. The speaker wanted to be a/an ....
   a scientist b engineer c teacher d pilot
2. The speaker finds science very .... now.
   a easy b tiring c difficult d exciting

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1- Ayman : What do you do in your free time?
Basim : ....

2- Habiba : ....?
Salma : I like classes when we do things and don't only read or listen.

3- Doaa : What should I do to get high marks?
Lobna : ....

4- Ashraf : ....?
Kareem: It is a good idea.

3 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on: WB

(مجاب عنه فى آخر الوحدة)

"The importance of learning different languages"

....

....

....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Do you like learning languages? Why / Why not?
- Which languages do you like?
- Why is it important to learn different languages?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I like / don't like learning languages because ....
- The languages I like are ....
- It's important to learn different languages because ....

Paragraphs

1- What sort of learner I am

There are many different learning styles. Some prefer to learn by hearing, seeing, doing things, reading and writing. For me the best way to remember English grammar is to make up a song about it! Then I sing the song quietly to myself. I think it is a great way to remember irregular verbs! I learn best by listening. I also find it difficult to understand science books. When I do an experiment in the laboratory, I understand what is happening! I learn best by doing things.

2- How to learn English vocabulary

Most English-language learners face a problem. They find it hard to remember vocabulary. So, there are many ways that can help them. They can make flashcards of words that they need to remember. They should watch English-language TV programmes or films. They should read many stories and news articles. This is the best way to learn vocabulary. They can also work with friends and try to test each other on important words.

3- Your study plans

You should make a plan if you have a project or an exam. There are many steps you should follow to make a study plan. You should be organised. You should know what you need to do and when to do it. You should manage your time. You should make a study timetable. You should find a quiet space to study. If your house is too busy, you could go to the library. You should take breaks. You should sleep well.

4- The importance of learning different languages

I like learning languages. This helps me communicate with friends in different countries. I like English and French most. Learning different languages is important. I can read books written in these languages.

Emails

1- Advice about problems with my sister

From fatma345@gmail.com.
To radwa898@yahoo.com.
Subject Advice about problems with my sister

Dear Radwa,
I hope you are fine. You should tell your sister how you feel about her. You should tell her that you miss her so much. If I were you, I would share my hobbies and interests with her. You can read an interesting story together. You should tell her that talking on the phone for a long time is bad for her health. You should advise her not to waste her time on the internet. I'm looking forward to hearing from you.
Best wishes.
Yours,
Fatma

2- Communication with animals

From magda898@yahoo.com
To ola345@gmail.com.
Subject Communication with animals

Dear Ola,
My uncle is a farmer. I visit his farm every weekend. I look after the animals there. I like them very much because I think they understand me. Animals communicate, both with us and with each other. One way animals communicate is by using body language. For example, horses touch noses to say hello to another horse they like. Bees dance when they find a good flower. Some birds can copy sounds. I will be happy if you visit my uncle's farm.
Yours,
Magda



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. The speaker has an older ....
   a brother b sister c friend d cousin
2. The speaker's sister is .... years older than him/her.
   a two b four c three d five
3. The speaker's sister doesn't want to .... to him/her very much.
   a listen b speak c write d talk
4. The speaker's sister is always on the .... or talking to people on her phone.
   a internet b house c school d TV

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ayman wants to improve his English.

Ayman : I want to improve my English. What should I do?
Anwar : 1 ....
Ayman : Do you think watching English films is a good way?
Anwar : 2 ....
Ayman : 3 ....?
Anwar : Travelling to England is very useful but it costs a lot.
Ayman : 4 ....?
Anwar : Talking to English people on the internet is a good idea.
Ayman : 5 ....
Anwar : You're welcome.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Learning a new language has become important recently. Learning a new language always an exciting experience. There could be many reasons that lead to the need

to learn new languages but, the advantages are great. In other words, speaking more than one language can make people's lives easier. For example, people who can speak other languages can find jobs easily. They can work in tourism as tour guides, hotel managers and many other high paying jobs. In addition, those people can communicate with foreigners from different countries. Moreover, learning a foreign language is a great way to explore other cultures and see the world from different angles. In conclusion, learning another language has become a necessity recently.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
....
2. Who can find jobs easily?
....
3. What can people do to communicate with foreigners?
....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Learning a foreign language is a great way to .... other cultures.
a become b explore c work d pay
5. Speaking more than one language can make people's lives ....
a simple b hard c harmful d terrible
6. The underlined word "exciting" is the opposite of ....
a interesting b easy c amazing d boring

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Our car has broken down. I think we need someone to .... it.
a explain b burn c fail d repair
2. Medhat can't drive because he .... his driving test. WB
a passed b succeeded c failed d won
3. The family were .... when they found their hotel room was next to a factory! WB
a disappointed b proud c happy d pleased
4. The teacher thinks that all the students in our class will .... the test. WB
a sound b lose c pay d pass
5. The student understood me when he / she made .... with me.
a touch b eye contact c sounds d voice

6. Many people in Switzerland are ....: they speak four languages. Test WB
a blind b greedy c careless d multilingual
7. Our school needs .... to take part in the festival.
a volunteers b thieves c engines d farmers
8. Next year, they .... a new hotel in the park. WB
a build b built c were building d are going to build
9. When my father was younger, he .... on his uncle's farm. WB
a used to help b helps c is helping d will help
10. When my dad arrived home, we .... lunch.
a will have b were having c are having d have

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Sara .... (do) her homework when her friend visited her last night. SB
2. At the moment, I .... (do) an English exercise. WB
3. In the future, I think we .... (have) more lessons online. WB
4. The kids .... (play) a video game when the bell rang. WB

E Writing

6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words: WB

أجب عنه قبل الاختبار

to your friend telling her about communication with animals.
- Your friend's name is Magda and her email address is magda898@yahoo.com.
- Your name is Ola and your email address is ola345@gmail.com.

....
....
....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الالكتروني:
- What do you look after? Where?
- Why do you like animals?
- Do some animals communicate? How?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- I look after animals in ....
- I like animals very much because they ....
- Some animals communicate by ....

Review D

SB pages 64 - 65 WB pages 114 - 115

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

geography	جغرافيا/تضاريس	opening party	حفل افتتاح
Eco Shop	محل بيع منتجات صديقة للبيئة	communication	اتصال/تواصل
camping trip	رحلة تخييم	owner	مالك
luxury	شئ فاخر		

Audioscript SB Page (64)

نصوص الاستماع

استمع إلى النصوص

Next month is our school camping trip[1]. We're leaving in three weeks and camping for three nights. The bus is leaving at 8 am on the 10th May and we will be back on the 13th at 6 pm. As you know, we're going to the desert and it will be hot in the day[2] and cold at night. You will need to bring loose, cool clothes for the day and warm night clothes. You will also need comfortable trainers because we're going to do lots of walking. You're going to be learning about life in the desert and about the geography[3] of the area. You'll also need a camera, notebook and pen. Please take this letter for your parents which has all the information that you'll need.

Arabic Meaning

١- رحلة تخييم
٢- نهاراً
٣- جغرافيا/تضاريس

WB Page (114)

Guide : We're going to climb that big mountain today, Karim.

Karim : Do you mean the mountain with the snow on top?

Guide : No, we're going to climb the one with the tall, green trees on it.

Karim : It looks a bit scary to me!

Guide : From my point of view, it won't be scary if you wear the correct clothes.

Karim : OK, what should I wear?

Guide : You should wear these thick leather boots, and this hard, plastic hat.

Karim : This hat is too big. Do you have a smaller size?

Guide : Here you are. Does it fit?

Karim : Yes, thank you.

Guide : OK, let's go up the mountain!

Reading SB P. (65)

موضوعات القراءة

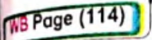
On Monday, an exciting new shop is opening in the city centre.

The Eco Shop[1] only sells things that are environment-friendly[2]. Last week, we talked to the owner[3], Mariam EL-Soory, about her new shop. "Lots of people want to help the environment but it is sometimes difficult to know what to buy. We are working with lots of people to help local industries[4], too. So, we're going to sell local fruit and vegetables, luxury[5], Egyptian cotton clothes and other local things that don't damage the environment. You can also bring glass, plastic and paper to the shop for recycling[6]. We will also have cooking and sewing classes at the shop soon".

Mariam worked for many years as a guide[7] at a beach. She was sad because she saw a lot of plastic bags used for things from other countries on the beach. When she was picking up some rubbish one day, she decided she wanted to do more to help the environment and had the idea of a shop. The shop is having an opening party[8] at 1 pm in three days' time.

Arabic Meaning

١- محل صديق للبيئة
٢- صديق للبيئة
٣- مالك
٤- صناعات محلية
٥- شئ فاخر
٦- إعادة تدوير
٧- مرشدة
٨- حفل افتتاح


WB Page (114)



New technology means that forms of communication are changing all the time.

For example, think about how phones have developed over the last 20 years. In the past, people used to type messages using special letters on their phones. Then, people started to touch the screens on their phones to type their messages. Now, phones are able to understand people's voices and many people are speaking to their phones to send messages. Some scientists think that phones are going to know what people think in the future. Perhaps our phones will read our facial expressions before they send a message!

WB Page (115)

Tarek is wearing a long, loose, cotton galabeya. He's also wearing a long, wool scarf.

Osama is wearing casual clothes, but I think he looks smart. He's wearing a T-shirt with a blue and white shirt over it. He's also wearing cotton trousers, but I don't think he's wearing a belt.

Deena is at a special occasion. She is wearing smart traditional clothes. I love her beautiful, white scarf. She's also wearing a loose, long, dress with flowers on it.

Test on Units 10,11 & 12



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. There is a lot of .... where the speaker lives.
   a pollution b rubbish c paper d people
2. The speaker's .... never recycle their rubbish.
   a friends b brothers c sisters d neighbours
3. In the speaker's view, it is important to ....
   a swim b live c recycle d walk
4. We should take .... and glass out of the bin and recycle them.
   a plastic b rubbish c leather d paper

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Amir and Hani are talking about Amir's school uniform.

Amir : What do you wear when you go to school?
Hani : ❶ ....
Amir : Where did you buy this uniform?
Hani : ❷ ....
Amir : ❸ ....?
Hani : It costs L.E. 200.
Amir : Wow! It's cheap. ❹ ....?
Hani : Sure. I can come with you.
Amir : ❺ ....
Hani : You're welcome.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

One summer evening, I was sitting by the window reading a story. After a time, it became too <u>dark</u> for me to read easily. When I got up to light the lamp, I heard a cry "help! help!" It seemed that the sound came from the garden. I looked out, but I couldn't see anything. I heard the cry again. I decided to go out and have a look because there might be someone that needed help. I took my torch and a walking stick. I looked everywhere, but there was no sign of anybody. I went back to my house. I started to read my book. I was scared by the sound "help, help" behind my shoulder. I dropped my book and jumped up. There, I saw a green and red bird. <u>It</u> was a parrot. It flew out of my window when I went out.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. Why couldn't the writer see anything from the window?
....
2. Who / What was shouting for help?
....
3. Why was the writer scared?
....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The best title for this passage is ....
   a The Open Window b My Torch
   c A Scary Evening d The Garden
5. The opposite of the word **"dark"** in line two is ....
   a heavy b light c far d cheap
6. The underlined pronoun **"It"** refers to the ....
   a garden b lamp c stick d parrot

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This material is .... for making luxury clothes.
   a perfect b wooden c interested d patient
2. The government is building new factories to help the Egyptian ....
   a tourism b education c industry d chemistry
3. Noha is the .... girl in our family.
   a as smart b smartest c smart d smarter
4. It's a .... car. SB
   a beautiful, black, long b black, beautiful, long
   c beautiful, long, black d long, beautiful, black

5. .... to English songs will improve your English.
a Listening b Reading c Writing d Speaking

6. The new road will .... traffic through the town by 30%.
a pollute b add c gain d reduce

7. .... use the wind to make electricity.
a Solar panels b Wind turbines
c Washing machines d Phones

8. Farida is running fast and she .... the race.
a is going to win b winning c won d win

9. I felt so .... when my son graduated from university.
a angry b proud c sad d disappointed

10. My sister .... to music now.
a listened b listens c is listening d was listening

5 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. Yesterday, I .... (play) football in the park.
2. It was raining when I .... (get up) this morning.
3. They are .... (brown, leather, old) boots.
4. Look out! .... (These) tree is going to fall.

E Writing

6 **Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on:**

"How to learn English"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

General Exercises

تمرينات عامة على المنهج تشتمل على تمرينات SB / WB

السؤال الرابع في ورقة الامتحان

SB & WB Exercises Vocabulary

1 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Do you think that it is easy to .... from Arabic to English?
a translate b move c find d stay

2. The road is not big enough for cars, but you can go down it on a ....
a lorry b ship c rocket d motorbike

3. .... are like planes, but they do not have wings!
a Cars b Cameras c Helicopters d Mobiles

4. Mona always wears .... on the bus because she loves listening to music.
a mobiles b headphones c dresses d tablets

5. There's a/an .... on this phone which tells me the weather in my city.
a app b screen c battery d charger

6. Do you think that we will .... a car that doesn't make any pollution?
a invention b predict c prediction d invent

7. That new hotel looks .... I really don't like it.
a nice b wonderful c horrible d fantastic

8. If you don't .... the lesson, you should tell the teacher.
a swim b visit c try d understand

9. You shouldn't .... in the sea if it is very cold.
a run b swim c visit d understand

10. The tourists took the road south by ...., but they wanted to go north.
a correction b lever c mistake d right

11. Our friends sent us some photos on ....
a social media b battery c keyboard d mouse

12. .... my point of view, too much technology can give you headaches.
a From b In c By d On

13. Technology can be bad .... your health.
a at b to c for d about

14. When they arrived at the hotel, they decided to .... its large gardens.
a invent b explore c expect d export

15. We can use solar .... to make electricity.
a doors b windows c panels d rooms

16. .... media are websites and apps that let people talk to each other on...
(a) Social (b) Careful (c) Electric (d) Expensive

17. My little sister is .... to sweets. She always wants to eat them!
(a) damaged (b) addicted (c) broken (d) hated

18. Do you think that there will be many .... in your English homework?
(a) correct (b) corrections (c) invent (d) inventions

19. I think people will visit other planets one day, but it is .... to go to the ...
(a) possible (b) probable (c) easy (d) impossible

20. The door was very heavy, so we had to .... it open.
(a) call (b) pull (c) lock (d) look

21. Don't touch the ...., or the machine will start.
(a) blackboard (b) glasses (c) telescope (d) lever

22. Do you .... that the weather will get hotter in the future?
(a) predict (b) prediction (c) invent (d) invention

23. It was cloudy this morning, but the clouds soon .... when the sun ... out.
(a) appeared (b) disappeared (c) hurt (d) damaged

24. I asked my teacher for help because I couldn't .... a new lesson.
(a) stay (b) visit (c) understand (d) try

25. You shouldn't .... outside for too long if it is very hot in the desert.
(a) visit (b) stay (c) swim (d) predict

26. The water in the sea is ....
(a) sweet (b) spicy (c) juicy (d) salty

27. .... is an example of fast food.
(a) Cheese (b) Pasta (c) Pizza (d) Cake

28. Sfenj has lots of fat and sugar in it and it is very ....
(a) high (b) sweet (c) salty (d) short

29. Falafel is really .... and it is very popular in Egypt.
(a) horrible (b) terrible (c) bad (d) delicious

30. Many people are allergic to ...., so they don't eat cakes.
(a) pizzas (b) nuts (c) salad (d) salt

31. Food is usually healthy and good for you when it is ....
(a) expensive (b) terrible (c) old (d) fresh

32. You need to .... eggs and milk before you make an omelette.
(a) chop (b) wash (c) beat (d) drink

33. Humans have 210 .... in their bodies.
(a) legs (b) backs (c) skeletons (d) bones

34. Meat, fish and eggs all have .... in them.
(a) sugar (b) protein (c) bones (d) skin

35. When I had a big lunch, I felt ....
(a) full (b) careful (c) empty (d) delicious

36. .... products like milk and cheese help us to have strong bones.
(a) Diary (b) Dairy (c) Dry (d) Wet

37. The soup is cold. Shall we .... it?
(a) cool (b) freeze (c) heat (d) wash

38. Which of these is not a dairy product?
(a) milk (b) rice (c) cheese (d) butter

39. Do you prefer to boil or .... your eggs?
(a) wash (b) pour (c) serve (d) fry

40. My grandparents always .... lunch in the dining room at 4 o'clock.
(a) serve (b) do (c) wash (d) play

41. .... is a vegetable that is very healthy.
(a) Sugar (b) Salt (c) Spinach (d) Apple

42. When Tamer is worried, he doesn't feel ....
(a) big (b) hungry (c) salty (d) cheap

43. A/An .... can be green, red or yellow.
(a) pepper (b) diet (c) omelette (d) spinach

44. Your .... is the kind of food that you eat every day.
(a) work (b) exercise (c) diet (d) homework

45. Eman never eats fast food or unhealthy ....
(a) sleep (b) exercise (c) snacks (d) restaurants

46. **A:** How about drinking tea in the garden? **B:** It's a good ....
(a) idea (b) food (c) meal (d) diet

47. Which of these do you use to make an omelette?
(a) sugar (b) rice (c) eggs (d) chocolate

48. Which of these is bad for your teeth?
(a) sugar (b) salt (b) eggs (d) vegetables

49. I don't put any salt on my food because I don't like .... food.
(a) sweet (b) big (c) fast (d) salty

50. If we don't use sugar to make food ...., what other things can we use?
(a) sweet (b) fast (c) salty (d) juicy

51. Samosas have .... vegetables inside them.
(a) spicy (b) careless (c) bright (d) fast

52. There is not protein in ....
(a) meat (a) milk (d) fish (d) apples

53. You need to .... the tomatoes into small pieces.
a beat b heat c chop d fry

54. .... isn't a dairy product.
a Milk b Cheese c Rice d Butter

55. We .... things when we put them in our mouths.
a see b smell c taste d hear

56. My dress is damaged, so my mother is .... it.
a acting b sewing c painting d playing

57. A .... is a funny drawing usually showing people or animals.
a cartoon b costume c script d carton

58. The children all wore funny .... to the family party. Ahmed was a firefighter!
a contents b costumes c concerts d customs

59. Which .... can you play?
a device b tool c instrument d concert

60. Mona can't answer the phone. She is doing her ....
a scenery b museum c wake up d make-up

61. The .... is fantastic in the play, you feel like you are in the mountains!
a century b scenery c make-up d costume

62. .... are clothes that you wear to look like someone or something else.
a Costumes b Scripts c Cartoons d Artists

63. A .... person is the person who can't hear.
a blind b fast c tall d deaf

64. My little sister started to .... after she fell and hurt her hand.
a smile b hide c laugh d cry

65. Lara always gives her grandmother a big .... when she sees her.
a skill b fire c hug d concert

66. A .... person is the person who is not able to see.
a blind b deaf c wise d stupid

67. A/An .... person is the person who is not able to use parts of the body in the way other people can.
a excited b delighted c interested d disabled

68. Don't .... your car outside the school.
a bark b land c mark d park

69. .... is the things that happen in a film.
a Action b Nation c Review d Picnic

70. The actor became a .... after he was in that famous film.
a thief b star c park d review

71. A .... park is a large park with machines to ride on, restaurants, etc.
a thin b same c scene d theme

72. Let's go to the .... and fly our kites.
a play b park c action d cinema

73. It is nearly dark. Look, I can see a/an ....
a star b review c sun d picnic

74. The blind man is not able to .... the traffic lights.
a hear b smell c see d taste

75. A .... is the words for a play.
a script b trip c photograph d sculpture

76. .... people cannot walk.
a Disabled b Deaf c Dumb d Strong

77. This deaf boy is not able to .... me.
a see b talk c walk d hear

78. It's a long, blue .... You wear it around your neck.
a belt b handbag c sandals d scarf

79. Are his clothes smart or ....?
a greedy b casual c clever d snowy

80. Do her clothes look .... or uncomfortable?
a comfortable b similar c gold d electric

81. In Ancient Egypt, clothes made of .... were popular.
a oil b plastic c linen d wheat

82. .... are jewellery that women wear around their necks.
a Handbags b Headscarves c Galabeyas d Necklaces

83. In Ancient Egypt, men and women didn't .... very differently.
a call b dress c cost d press

84. This cloth is made from a mixture of .... and cotton.
a wood b electricity c plastic d linen

85. Many people in Egypt work in the cotton ....
a environment b industry c occasion d electricity

86. If something is a special ...., it means it is an important event for you.
a size b environment c hobby d occasion

87. When you wear the same .... clothes as your sister, it means you can wear the same clothes.
a size b occasion c price d environment

88. .... are a large amount of plants that are grown to be sold.
a Chemicals b Baskets c Crops d Soils

89. Scientists used the new app to determine the .... of underground water.
a invitation b location c conversation d station
90. We have a .... for recycling in our house.
a system b wind c rain d solar
91. Don't drink water from a canal because it can be full of dangerous ....
a vitamins b proteins c bacteria d suitcases
92. I always listen carefully to my teacher and .... notes.
a hunt b talk c take d fill
93. If you .... an exam, you will feel proud.
a fail b fill c succeed d pass
94. .... study science three times a week during the school term.
a Learners b Farmers c Trainers d Cleaners
95. If you .... an exam, you will feel disappointed.
a feel b fail c pass d fall
96. When was the last time you .... disappointed?
a felt b fall c filled d fell
97. It was .... cloudy today. There wasn't much sun.
a hardly b never c rarely d mostly
98. Students need to .... what job they want to do.
a travel b fix c repair d decide
99. A sound that comes from your mouth is your ....
a sound b hear c voice d touch
100. What is the .... language of Egypt?
a fashion b occasional c emotional d national
101. A person who speaks lots of languages is ....
a multilingual b greedy c lazy d national
102. In Switzerland, you do not need to be an .... to speak many languages.
a experiment b expert c experience d expect
103. Some children are watching a film. We know the film is scary by their ....
a eye contact b facial expressions
c touch d body language
104. Shady can hear .... inside the house .
a sounds b smell c touch d taste
105. A blind man chooses the shirt by ....
a sounds b sight c smell d touch
106. Some animals can .... sounds.
a connect b feel c copy d spend

107. When you get tired, you can .... a break.
a make b take c win d do
108. Successful persons always .... their time.
a manage b damage c test d revise
109. I want to .... my English because I want to do well in my exams.
a move b include c improve d prove
110. The Portuguese and Spanish languages are .... in many ways.
a connected b disappointed
c disadvantages d disorganised
111. A .... is a person who helps others without getting anything in return.
a learner b thief c volunteer d worker
112. Medhat can't drive because he .... his driving test.
a passed b succeeded c failed d won
113. The family were .... when they found their hotel room was next to a factory!
a disappointed b proud c happy d pleased
114. The teacher thinks that all the students in our class will .... the test.
a sound b lose c pay d pass
115. Many people in Switzerland are .... : they speak four languages.
a blind b greedy c careless d multilingual
116. Our school needs .... to take part in the festival.
a volunteers b thieves c engines d farmers

SB & WB Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When Huda visits Cairo, she .... some new shoes.
a would buy b buying c will buy d bought
2. I think travelling in time .... impossible.
a be b would be c were d will be
3. Hassan won't use the internet to buy food when he .... older.
a is b was c be d are
4. If I .... everything online, I won't be able to go shopping with my friends.
a would buy b buy c will buy d bought
5. I think there .... no illnesses in the future.
a will be b be c won't be d was

6. I asked my aunt to .... a French internet article into Arabic.
a build b check c translate d damage

7. When you go to bed, you .... turn your phone off.
a won't b will c should d have

8. You should tell a parent or teacher if you .... worried about something.
a felt b will feel c are felt d feel

9. When you feel tired, you .... have a break.
a will b shouldn't c not d should

10. You shouldn't watch videos on the internet if your head ....
a will hurt b hurting c hurts d would hurt

11. If you .... someone, you shouldn't make friends with them online.
a didn't know b don't know c not know d won't know

12. If you see people being horrible online, you .... tell your parents.
a should b won't c are d shouldn't

13. If I go to the shops on Saturday, I .... some new headphones.
a buys b bought c would buy d will buy

14. If you want to get to the park quickly, you .... the bus.
a would take b take c should take d took

15. If you go to the Egyptian Museum, you .... see Ali because he is in Luxor.
a should b will c won't d don't

16. We won't go to the beach this weekend if it .... very windy.
a is b will be c was d should be

17. .... it be cold if I travel to England?
a Will b Does c Is d Was

18. When you .... online games, you should check that you can't buy anything.
a played b plays c playing d play

19. The tourists .... the Pyramids if they are in Cairo for the first time.
a would visit b are visited c visited d should visit

20. I'm not very hungry, but I'd like .... olives, please.
a a lot b a little c any d a few

21. My grandmother spends .... time cooking in the kitchen.
a a lot of b a few c lots d many

22. Has samosa got .... sugar or salt in it?
a some b any c a lot d many

23. She eats .... fish because it helps to make her strong.
a any b a lot of c lots d a lot

AltFwk.com موقع الفوك

24. Leila likes .... milk in her tea, but not very much.
a a few b any c a lot d a little

25. She drinks .... water.
a a little b any c many d a few

26. She eats .... sweets.
a much b a lot c a few d a little

27. If you meet other people, you .... stand 1.5 metres away from them.
a will b should c are d have

28. There are .... people on the bus.
a a few b much c a lot d any

29. Take the omelette and .... it with salad.
a serving b serves c serve d doesn't serve

30. .... the eggs in the bowl and beat them with a fork.
a To put b Puts c Putting d Put

31. .... the beans in the water until it boils.
a Heat b Heats c Heated d Heating

32. .... some lemon juice over the hot beans.
a Pours b Pour c Poured d Pouring

33. .... some beans and put them in a pan.
a Wash b Washing c Washes d To wash

34. Would you like .... more beans?
a some b lot c lot of d lots

35. .... the salad with the omelette.
a Serves b Didn't serve c Serve d Serving

36. I'd like .... cheese, please.
a a lot b a few c many d a little

37. "........ you like a sandwich?" "Thank you, but I'm really full."
a Are b Were c Would d Had

38. We sometimes eat sfenj with .... tea.
a an b some c many d a lot

39. Do you know .... to use a computer?
a what b who c how d which

40. .... you able to speak French?
a Do b Can c Can't d Are

41. A: .... you know how to play an instrument? B: Yes, I do.
a Do b Are c Is d Does

42. Where did you get .... sunglasses?
a those b that c this d then

43. Are you wearing your brown shoes or the black ....?
a once b one c two d ones

44. Can I buy .... earrings in the window?
a an b that c this d those

45. We went to the island in a/an .... boat.
a long, old, wooden b wooden, long, old
c old, wooden, long d old, long, wooden

46. We saw a / an .... statue in the museum.
a old, gold, big b big, gold, old
c gold, big, old d big, old, gold

47. .... market it amazing! There are so many cool things here.
a These b That c Those d They

48. The man wore .... sunglasses.
a green, pretty, plastic b pretty, plastic, green
c pretty, green, plastic d plastic, green, pretty

49. Those earrings are the .... my mum gave me.
a ones b none c once d one

50. These books are funny, but these .... are very boring!
a ones b once c one d only

51. I love wearing my .... galabeya, because it is very cool in the summer.
a cotton, long, loose b long, cotton, loose
c long, loose, cotton d cotton, loose, long

52. .... your mobile phone when it is old?
a Are you recycling b Do you recycle
c Did you recycle d Are you going to recycle

53. What are you .... to do at the weekend?
a go b going c goes d went

54. There .... a drought.
a is going to be b is being c is going d going

55. He is late so he .... the bus.
a isn't catching b isn't going to catch
c catches d caught

56. Where .... going to go for your next holiday?
a you are b do you c are you d you do

57. How are you going to .... your English?
a improve b improving c improves d improved

58. It's 1:55. Ayman .... to his 2 pm music lesson in five minutes.
a goes b was going c went d is going

59. Judy is working on her project ....
a tomorrow b yesterday c in the past d ago

60. My cousins .... at lunchtime tomorrow at 11 am.
a arrived b are arriving c arrives d arriving

61. I .... forward to watching the stars in the desert this evening.
a looks b looking c am looking d looked

62. Osama has a towel and is walking towards the sea. He is going .... swimming.
a to going b to goes c to go d go

63. Injy is ten minutes from the station and the train goes in five minutes. Is she .... the train?
a catching b going to catch c catch d caught

64. Don't use classroom 5 because some men .... it this afternoon.
a is going to paint b paints c are painting d paint

65. Summer will be hotter next month and the snow..........
a is melting b melts c melted d is going to melt

66. Look at the black clouds ! It's.......... soon.
a raining b going to rain c rains d rained

67. It's raining heavily and the river ....
a are flooding b flood c flooded d is going to flood

68. When I .... young, I wanted to be a scientist.
a am b were c was d is

69. Ali is feeling ill, so I don't think he.......... out this evening.
a come b will come c came d comes

70. Next year, I .... French classes.
a am going to start b starts c started d was starting

71. We ....to secondary school in two years.
a went b go c will go d goes

72. Hala .... like fruit, but now she loves it.
a don't b isn't c won't d didn't use to

73. At the moment, my brother .... in a bank.
a worked b is working c will work d work

74. I am going to take the exam to go to secondary school and I hope I .... !
a will pass b was passing c passed d passes

75. When I was three years old, I didn't .... to school.
a use to going b using go c use to go d used to going

76. About five million people .... in Alexandria.
a are living b live c lives d living

77. At the moment, lots of American tourists .... photographs of the coast.
a take b used to take c are taking d was taking

78. The horses were frightened and they .... to leave the building.
a don't want b won't want c didn't want d wants

79. Next year, they .... a new hotel in the park.
a build b built c were building d are going to build

80. When my father was younger, he .... on his uncle's farm.
a used to help b helps c is helping d will help

81. It's a .... car.
a beautiful, black, long b black, beautiful, long c beautiful, long, black d long, beautiful, black

82. Farida is running fast and she .... the race.
a is going to win b winning c won d win

السؤال الخامس في ورقة الامتحان

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets

1. This machine won't .... (being) able to fly very high.
2. I won't watch TV tonight if I .... (went) out.
3. If I buy everything online, I .... (not be able to) go shopping with my friends.
4. If we want to stop climate change, we should .... (stopped) cutting down trees.
5. A:" .... (Would) you like coffee?" B: "No, I don't. I prefer tea."
6. Wait a little. .... (Not pour) the eggs now.
7. .... (Adds) some water and salt to the beans.
8. .... (Serving) it with warm bread.
9. .... (Beats) two eggs in a bowl with little milk.
10. A firefighter .... (are) able to stop fires.
11. Can you .... (sewing)?
12. Maher is able .... (play) musical instruments.
13. .... (Able) you play football or tennis?
14. If you know how to cook, you .... (work) in a restaurant.
15. The galabeya that I bought yesterday is .... (the more comfortable).
16. It's a/an .... (cotton, old, striped) scarf.
17. Look at that .... (pretty, gold, long) necklace
18. It's a .... (linen, beautiful, new, blue) dress.
19. They are .... (more expensive) sunglasses in this shop.
20. Linen clothes are .... (nicest).
21. It's a .... (purple, nice, wool) jumper.
22. Which socks are you going to wear? These .... (one) or those ones?
23. I like .... (those) black, leather handbag! Is it new?
24. I bought .... (this) shoes last week at the market.
25. He wore a .... (long, cotton, red) galabeya.
26. The boy and his father are going to .... (watching) a football match.
27. Mr Medhat is going to England in January. Why is he .... (go) to take a big coat?
28. At the moment, we .... (stay) in a small hotel near the lake.
29. Judy is visiting her grandma the day .... (before) tomorrow.
30. Let's run, because the bus .... (leave) in ten minutes' time.
31. She is walking in the mountains .... (last) week.
32. She is visiting a museum in nine days' .... (clock).
33. What are you .... (do) this afternoon?
34. After 85 minutes, it is the Blue team five and the Red team one. Who is .... (win)?
35. What is the temperature going to .... (is) this afternoon?
36. Lara is .... (play) tennis at 4 o'clock tomorrow.
37. Fawzy .... (not work) next week because he has a holiday.
38. I want to travel so I .... (learn) lots of languages.
39. Now I find science very difficult so I don't think I .... (be) a scientist!
40. Ahmed .... (study) for his maths exam at the moment.
41. Last Tuesday, my uncle .... (fly) to Paris.
42. Sara .... (do) her homework when her friend visited her last night.
43. At the moment, I .... (do) an English exercise.
44. In the future, I think we .... (have) more lessons online.
45. They are .... (brown, leather, old) boots.

السؤال السادس في ورقة الامتحان

Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

1- "Are you for or against online shopping?"



2- How do you think life will change in the future?

3- "Positive and negative sides of using technology"

4- "Some unusual food that you have tried"

5- "What you can eat to stay healthy"

6- "Your favourite meal"

7- "A review of a museum you know "The Museum of Modern Egyptian Art"

8-"Difficulties that disabled people have"

9- "A review of a film you have just watched (Jurassic World)"

10- "An advert for a mobile phone you want to sell"

11- "A special occasion you are going to"

Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

1- to your friend Fatma telling her about a problem you had with an online delivery
- **Your friend's email address is fatma77@gmail.com.**
- **Your name is Mariam and your email address is mariam80@hotmail.com.**

2- to your friend telling her about your favourite snack.
- **Your friend's name is Hanaa and her email address is hanaa77@gmail.com.**
- **Your name is Judy and your email address is judy88@hotmail.com.**

3- to your friend Salah about someone in your family that you are proud of.
- **Your name is Ramy and your email address is ramypost@gmail.com**
- **Your friend's email address is salah666@yahoo.com**

4- to your friend Emad inviting him to your birthday party.
- **Your name is Hassan and your email address is hassanpost@gmail.com**
- **Your friend's email address is emad666@yahoo.com**

5- to your friend Radwa to advise her about the problem with her sister.
- **Your name is Fatma and your email address is fatma345@gmail.com**
- **Your friend's name is Radwa and her email address is radwa898@yahoo.com**

6- to your friend telling her about communication with animals.
- **Your friend's name is Magda and her email address is magda898@yahoo.com.**
- **Your name is Ola and your email address is ola345@gmail.com.**

End of Term Practice

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. What does Injy know how to cook?
   a a few things b many things c only cakes
2. Why do they decide to make a carrot cake?
   a Hala only eats vegetables.
   b Hala likes healthy food.
   c They find a recipe for it.
3. What will Amira do to make the cake?
   a mix the flour and sugar b add some eggs c cut the carrots
4. How many nuts should they put on the cake?
   a four b fourteen c ten

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Baher : Fares, I was wondering if you would like to come to my house today to work on our school project.

Fares : Great. What ❶ ....?

Baher : Around 7. We could research some information together.

Fares : ❷ ....?

Baher : I think it's better if we use the computer. Books won't give us all the information we need.

Fares : That's true. It's a ❸ .... to look at different websites.

Baher : Would you bring some paper?

Fares : Why do you want them? We are going to do online research!

Baher : ❹ ....

Fares : ❺ .... we need to take notes on important information.

3 Read the text. Then answer the questions:

When we taste food, our mouths tell us if the food is sweet, salty or spicy. But why do some people like some types of food and not others? There are many reasons. For example, some people don't like a type of food because they remember being ill after they ate it.

However, it is believed that you can change what you like. We often don't like unusual food because our brain doesn't understand it. So if you want to start liking food that is healthy, such as green vegetables, you should eat it more often. Then your brain will recognise it. You can also train your brain not to like something. For example, many people who stopped putting sugar on things found, after a time, that they didn't like sweet things.

So if you like sweets and don't like vegetables, you should train your brain to eat more healthily!

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do people often not like unusual food?
....
2. Why do you think people trained their brains not to like sugar?
....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. Some people don't eat certain food because ....
   a they ate it before and liked it b they ate it and didn't like it.
   c they didn't try it before.
   d some people told them that it wasn't tasty.
4. What do you think the word recognise means?
   a know because you have seen it before
   b photograph
   c learn about
   d like
5. If you want to stop liking unhealthy food, ...
   a eat healthy foods instead. b stop eating this type of food.
   c eat this type of food often. d a and b

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you feel ill, you .... a doctor.
   a will see b should see c see d would see
2. My grandfather had an accident when he was younger and .... to walk very well.
   a can't b doesn't know c is not able d won't
3. Please don't put .... salt on my food. I don't like it.
   a many b a lot c a few d any
4. Tarek is not very hungry, so he only wants .... rice with his chicken.
   a a few b a little c a lot of d any

5. Mona knows .... draw. Let's ask her to draw us a picture.

a how b to c how to d able to

6. This email is in Spanish. Are you able to .... it for me?

a translate b taste c say d waste

7. Waleed can't come out this morning because he needs to .... for a delivery.

a buy b pay c save d spend

8. People who do sport like to eat rice and pasta because they give them lots of ....

a fast food b salt c sugar d energy

9. Before you fry food, you should .... some oil in a pan.

a make b serve c heat d fire

10. Judy's little sister hurt her hand and started ....

a crying b laughing c hiding d wondering

5 Read and complete with the correct form of these words:

visit - add - invent - act

1. Ramy's .... saves a lot of water and helps the environment.
2. The story was very slow and there was very little ....
3. Don't .... too much salt. It's unhealthy.
4. Reham is .... the museum next weekend. Her mum gave her tickets.

6 Choose one of the following:

- Write a short review of about 90-100 words on a book, film or a place you like.
- Write an email of about 90-100 words on an environmental problem you have near you, and how you could help solve this problem.

....
....
....
....
....
....

Final Exams

امتحانات عامة على منهج الفصل الدراسي الثاني من ادارات المحافظات المختلفة

Exam 1

محافظة القاهرة ادارة الزاوية الحمراء

A Listening

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Where did Reda go last week?

a Aswan b Cairo c Sohag d Luxor

2. How did he go there? By ....

a car b train c plane d bus

3. How was his holiday? It was ....

a bad b not good c boring d nice

4. How long did he stay?

a a month b a year c a week d ten days

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mazen is talking to Nader about going to the cinema.

Nader : Hi, how are you?
Mazen : Hi, 1 ....
Nader : 2 ....?
Mazen : I went to the cinema.
Nader : 3 ....?
Mazen : I went there by taxi.
Nader : What did you see there?
Mazen : 4 ....
Nader : Did you enjoy the film?
Mazen : 5 ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

In the past, the ancient Egyptian people didn't dress very differently. **They** wore similar clothes. Men and women in Ancient Egypt both wore **loose** white, linen clothes with a belt. They didn't wear shoes but people sometimes wore expensive leather

sandals. Children didn't usually wear many clothes until they were about six years old. Then they started to wear the same clothes as their parents. Ancient Egyptians' clothes were simple. However, they loved to wear heavy, metal jewellery like some people today, they liked to wear beautiful gold necklaces and other jewellery.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea in this passage?

....

2. How were Ancient Egyptians' clothes similar?

....

3. Do you think Ancient Egyptians' clothes looked nice?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun **"They"** refers to ....
   a clothes b Ancient Egyptians c children d parents
5. The underlined word **"loose"** means not ....
   a small b expensive c big d tight
6. Ancient Egyptians liked to wear .... gold necklaces like some people today.
   a cheap b bad c beautiful d old

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Facebook is an example of ....
   a games b social media c subjects d food
2. My mother likes to .... clothes.
   a sew b saw c so d sow
3. A .... is a painting or photograph of a person's face.
   a statue b play c scenery d portrait
4. My sister wants to have a holiday to feel ....
   a ill b relaxed c sad d sick
5. My phone doesn't work, I need to .... it?
   a pair b prepare c repair d cure
6. Eating .... vegetables and fruits makes you healthy.
   a fresh b bad c salty d dairy
7. We use drones to help .... wildlife after floods and fires.
   a send b save c damage d fire

8. We are going to .... to France.
   a travel b travels c travelled d travelling
9. If you feel tired, you .... have a rest.
   a shouldn't b won't c should d mustn't
10. He .... see without his glasses.
   a can't b no able to c are not able to d don't know

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You shouldn't .... (talking) when you are at the library.
2. He .... (play) tennis now.
3. That pink jumper is the .... (ones) I bought last week.
4. There aren't .... (some) cars.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Healthy food"

....

Exam 2

محافظة الجيزة - إدارة العياط

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Nadia plays the ....
   a guitar b violin c piano d oud
2. Nadia likes ....
   a music b food c sport d juice
3. Nadia is ....
   a dumb b deaf c blind d weak
4. I'm .... of Nadia.
   a sad b angry c annoyed d proud

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Eman is talking to Heba who went to the Egyptian Museum yesterday.

Eman : Hello, Heba. How are you?

Heba : Hello, Eman. ❶ ....?

Eman : ❷ ....

Heba : I went to the Egyptian Museum yesterday.

Eman : ❸ ....?

Heba : I went by taxi.

Eman : What did you see?

Heba : ❹ ....

Eman : Did you enjoy it?

Heba : ❺ ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last month, I visited the Textile Museum in Cairo. The museum has lots of clothes from different times in history. I thought the clothes from ancient Egypt were **fantastic**. In my view, the statues showing people wearing the clothes really teach you about life in the past. My favourite thing was the Islamic area where you can see different kinds of calligraphy. I recommend looking at the clothes from other countries, too, such as Iran. They are very interesting. If you want to take photos, it is a good idea to take a good camera because the museum is quite dark.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the passage about?
....
2. When did the writer visit the Textile Museum in Cairo?
....
3. Why do you think a person needs a good camera to take photos in the museum?
....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "fantastic" means ....
   a) ugly b) terrible c) horrible d) cool
5. The Textile Museum is for ....
   a) sculptures b) clothes c) statues d) planes

6. In the Islamic area, you can see different kinds of ....
   a) mosques b) statues c) calligraphy d) photography

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How many .... do you speak?
   a) jobs b) subjects c) sports d) languages
2. Please, that's enough. I only like .... sugar.
   a) much b) a little c) a few d) many
3. Adel's little brother hurt his hands and started ....
   a) flying b) laughing c) crying d) hiding
4. A .... is able to stop fires.
   a) firefighter b) pilot c) manager d) vet
5. Is Mona going .... TV?
   a) watch b) watches c) watched d) to watch
6. The mobile is my favourite ....
   a) invention b) invitation c) food d) sport
7. If everyone .... online, the shops in our towns and cities will close.
   a) shop b) shops c) shopping d) shopped
8. The problem is getting worse because .... climate change.
   a) on b) in c) of d) off
9. We should use solar .... on buildings in sunny countries to make electricity.
   a) pans b) panels c) turbines d) brushes
10. People who can't see are ....
   a) blind b) short c) deaf d) crazy

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. .... (Washed) some beans and put them in a pan.
2. .... (Do) she able to drive her car every day?
3. They both wore .... (white, linen, loose) clothes with a belt.
4. Ayman used to be busy, but now he .... (don't).

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Your next summer holiday"

....
....
....
....



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Darein is ....
   a my sister b my friend c my cousin d my mother
2. Darein uses .... to chat with her friends.
   a the cassette b the radio c the TV d her mobile
3. She loves ....
   a drawing b playing c social media d tennis
4. She likes watching ....
   a games b videos c films d books

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Soha is asking Dalia about the place she is going to.

Soha : Hi! Where are you going, Dalia?
Dalia : Hi! ❶ ....
Soha : ❷ ....?
Dalia : Because there is a lecture.
Soha : ❸ ....?
Dalia : It's about musical instruments in Egypt.
Soha : Can I come with you?
Dalia : ❹ ....
Soha : What time should we meet?
Dalia : ❺ ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I prefer life in the country where one can enjoy a simple and quiet life. The villages in Egypt have improved lately. In the past, villages were just groups of poor houses. There was no electricity or clean water. There were very few schools. Sick people had to be carried to hospitals far from their villages. Now, it is very different. The houses are well built like the houses in towns and cities. They are supplied with electricity and clean water. There are primary, prep and secondary schools in every village. Villagers now use modern technology such as fridges, washing machines, computers and mobile phones that made their life better and more comfortable. Villagers are proud that the best places are called villages such as Smart Village and Tourist Village.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why does the writer prefer living in the country?
....
2. What are the houses of the Egyptian villages like now?
....
3. Why are villagers proud now?
....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ....
   a schools b houses c villagers d roads
5. Life in the Egyptian villages has changed. It has become ....
   a boring b uncomfortable c hard d comfortable
6. There weren't .... schools in the village in the past.
   a many b much c any d very few

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... food tastes hot.
   a Juicy b Spicy c Nice d Sweet
2. I like to be .... and feel relaxed in my clothes.
   a comfortable b nervous c worried d weak
3. Diving under water looks a bit ....
   a amazed b bored c scared d scary
4. He can speak different .... such as English and French.
   a books b ideas c languages d mirrors
5. Sometimes, my friends say .... things about me on social media that makes me angry.
   a horrible b nice c lovely d fantastic
6. Maged is 18 years old. He is a/an ....
   a infant b teenager c toddler d baby
7. My brother works as a reader to the .... as they can't see.
   a deaf b dwarf c blind d dumb
8. I don't like this soup. It has too .... salt in it.
   a few b many c enough d much
9. If everyone .... online, the shops in our towns and cities will close.
   a shops b shop c will shop d shopping
10. I am .... start work tomorrow.
   a can b able c able to d capable of

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Women like to wear .... (gold, beautiful) necklaces.
2. This T-shirt isn't suitable. I should buy another .... (ones).
3. I .... (travel) abroad 5 years ago.
4. Look at .... (these) newspaper here.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Modern technology in our life"

....

Exam 4 محافظة الشرقية - إدارة شرق الزقازيق

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ahmed is on the school .... team.
   a running b football c athletics d swimming
2. When does Ahmed go running?
   a In the morning b In the afternoon c At night d At the weekend
3. Ahmed eats good food to give him ....
   a athletics b energy c team d running
4. Ahmed eats .... for lunch.
   a chicken b meat c oranges d fish

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Sami is inviting Ali to attend his birthday party.

Ali : Hi, Sami.
Sami : Hi, Ali. It's my birthday party tomorrow.
Ali : ❶ ....
Sami : Will you come to the party?
Ali : ❷ .... ❸ ....?
Sami : It starts at 7 o'clock.
Ali : ❹ ....?
Sami : All our friends will come.
Ali : What present would you like for your birthday?
Sami : ❺ ....

C Reading Comprehension

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Learning a foreign language is not **easy**. Some people don't like learning a foreign language for this reason. Lots of people all over the world are learning English for different reasons. It is the most widely spoken language in the world. A tour guide needs to use English when **he** speaks to tourists from different countries in the world. Businessmen need to use English because they travel to many countries. People who work with computers need to know English because they do a lot of work on the Internet which is like a bank of information. Students need to learn English to be able to read books written in English.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
....
2. What does the underlined pronoun "he" refers to?
....
3. Do you think learning English is important for students? Why / Why not?
....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. .... people all over the world are learning English.
   a Many b Not many c Few d Some
5. A tour guide needs English to speak to ....
   a doctors b farmers c students d tourists
6. The opposite of the underlined word "easy" is ....
   a different b difficult c fast d amazing

D Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Most young people are .... to mobile phones.
   a interested b addicted c warned d amazed
2. Can you .... a script for the school show?
   a write b come c play d paint
3. This skirt is .... of cotton.
   a invented b built c found d made
4. Young children always try to .... many things without help.
   a spend b stay c do d take
5. .... are equipment that changes sunlight into electricity.
   a Coral reefs b Wind turbines c Firefighters d Solar panels

6. A balanced .... and good exercise are good for healthy life.
   a diet b date c bowl d fork
7. Ancient Egyptians' clothes were made of ....
   a leather b linen c silver d paper
8. .... is a nice T-shirt, I want to buy it.
   a These b Those c They d That
9. If you want to read a nice story, I have .... interesting stories and you can borrow one.
   a some b any c little d much
10. Hatim thinks that it .... cold tomorrow.
   a was b would be c is d will be

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Magda .... (able) play tennis.
2. How .... (you go) to school every day?
3. Look! A cat .... (climb) a tree.
4. If Nabil comes first, he .... (be) very happy.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"A visit to the Pyramids"

Exam 5 محافظة الغربية - إدارة كفر الدوار

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There is a lot of .... pollution in our city?
   a air b plant c water d tree
2. The pollution is caused by ....
   a rubbish b traffic c factories d dirt
3. Pollution is very ....
   a fantastic b good c healthy d unhealthy
4. Trees help .... the air pollution.
   a grow b produce c reduce d make

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Salem and Amir are talking about food.

Salem : What's your favourite food, Amir?
Amir : 1 ....
Salem : I like koshari, too, but I like falafel more.
Amir : 2 ....?
Salem : Falafel is made from beans and vegetables.
Amir : 3 ....?
Salem : Yes, I eat it with bread. Are you allergic to any kind of food?
Amir : 4 .... Nuts make me sick.
Salem : Is sugar healthy for us?
Amir : 5 ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Today I'm visiting a very special school in Cairo. It is a music school for girls. Students study their normal subject in the morning and then practise their instruments in the afternoon. Many of the students here join an orchestra called Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra. This orchestra plays concerts in Australia, Germany, China and all around the world. The orchestra is **amazing**. The most special thing about the school and the orchestra is that all the students here are blind. The orchestra plays international classical and Arabic music. All the students learn to read the music note using Braille, which is a system for reading by using hands. They can't read and play at the same time, so they have to remember the music.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to this passage.
2. Why do you think the students have to remember the music?
3. What does the underlined word **"here"** refer to?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The special school is in ....
   a Cairo b Aswan c Alex d Luxor
5. The word **"amazing"** means ....
   a bad b wonderful c terrible d boring

6. Blind students can't ....
a walk b swim c hear d see

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Don't use too much social media or you will be .... to them.
a interested b addicted c worried d excited
2. Milk, cheese and butter are .... products.
a dairy b diary c daily d fairy
3. The violin, the piano and the guitar are musical ....
a materials b machines c instruments d tools
4. We are building more factories to improve ....
a farming b environment c sports d industry
5. Cleopatra wore ...., white, linen clothes with a belt.
a lose b loose c lost d loss
6. I got up late because my alarm clock didn't .... this morning.
a go off b get off c go away d put away
7. We use drones to help .... wildlife after floods and fires.
a fire b send c damage d save
8. I like to wear this .... T-shirt.
a cotton, old b red, cotton c cotton, red d cotton, new
9. Would you like to buy .... cheese from the market?
a some b many c few d a few
10. If my father .... more free time, we will go out.
a had b have c having d has

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Adel, ... (turning) the lights off before you sleep.
2. Mona .... (able) speak French.
3. .... (That) books are my sister's.
4. Ali and I .... (going) to watch a match tomorrow.

E Writing

6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

to your friend Emad inviting him to your birthday party.

-Your name is Hassan and your email address is hassanpost@gmail.com

-Your friend's email address is emad666@yahoo.com



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What did Lama buy?
a A computer b A TV c A laptop d A mobile
2. She ordered it ....
a today b a week ago c last month d yesterday
3. Lama wants to ....
a fix it b make another order c open it d change it
4. The screen is ....
a OK b great c damaged d fine

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Camelia wants to buy a dress for her brother's wedding.

hopkeeper : Can I help you?
amelia : 1 ....
hopkeeper : A dress! 2 ....?
amelia : Yes, for a special occasion. It's my brother's wedding.
hopkeeper : 3 ....?
amelia : Blue.
hopkeeper : 4 ....
amelia : I think this one is great. How much is it?
hopkeeper : It's 500 pounds at a discount.
amelia : 5 ....

C Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

On the walls of the temples, you can find a lot of information about how people ressed. In Ancient Egypt, men and women wore similar clothes. They both wore ose, white, linen clothes with a belt. Most of the time, Ancient Egyptians didn't use oes but some of them had expensive leather sandals. Children didn't usually wear ry clothes until they were about six years old. Then they started to wear the same thes as their parents.

lthough Ancient Egyptians' clothes were simple, they loved to wear heavy metal ellery. Like some people today, men and women liked to have beautiful necklaces other jewellery which were designed perfectly using gold and silver.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. How did we learn about clothing in Ancient Egypt?

2. What did people use to wear in their feet?

3. How were men and women similar in the way they dressed?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Linen is a kind of ....
   a metal b cloth c wood d jewellery
5. The underlined word "loose" means very ....
   a large b beautiful c small d dirty
6. Ancient Egyptians used .... to make their jewellery.
   a wool and gold b glass and iron c gold and silver d leather and cotton

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... are small living things that sometimes cause diseases.
   a Sand b Salt c Bacteria d Air
2. If you are ill, you should .... a doctor.
   a talk b see c go d take
3. I always ask my teacher when I don't .... a lesson.
   a understand b visit c try d swim
4. What are you going ....?
   a do b to do c doing d did
5. Some disabled people move .... wheelchairs.
   a about b for c of d in
6. A: .... you like to listen to a famous orchestra on the radio?
   B: Great idea.
   a Can b Would c Should d Does
7. Huda's father has bought a / an .... car.
   a new, red, electric b electric, red, new
   c red, new, electric d old, big, electric
8. From my point of ...., this is the best place to visit.
   a review b preview c view d interview
9. What is Nader .... next week?
   a to doing b to do c does d doing
10. I'm not very hungry, I'll take .... cheese in a sandwich.
   a many b a little c a few d a lot

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Ali is able to speak English .... (good).
2. We .... (have got) any bread.
3. My baby sister .... (not can) feed herself.
4. A: .... (How) kind of food gives you energy? B: Nuts.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Your last summer holiday"

Exam 7 محافظة البحيرة - إدارة كوم حمادة

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What did Amr order?
   a A new car b A new book c A new game d A new tablet
2. When did Amr order it?
   a Last year b Last night c Last month d Last week
3. Who did Amr want to play the game with?
   a His uncle b His friends c His father d His teacher
4. How old are Amr and his friends?
   a 13 or 14 b 6 or 7 c 7 or 8 d 8 or 9

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed is asking Tamer about the weekend.

Ahmed : Where did you go last Friday?
Tamer : 1 ....
Ahmed : To Alexandria! Why?
Tamer : 2 ....
Ahmed : 3 ....?

Tamer : My uncle is a doctor.

Ahmed : ❹ ....

Tamer : Yes, I enjoyed the weekend very much.

Ahmed : When did you come back?

Tamer : ❺ ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Reading is a very helpful habit. It gives us new ideas and improves our language. When you read, you need to be in a quiet place. It is better to wear your reading glasses if it is necessary. You should read different topics. To remember what you read, it is a good idea to have a pen in your hand to underline or circle the important points. Try to discuss what you have read with your friends. People read for different goals. Some people read for **enjoyment**, just to feel happy and spend a nice time. **Others** read for work. Students read for their study or research. All of us read the news and the weather report. We also read messages, emails, and letters that we receive.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
....
2. Why do you think you need to read in a quiet place?
....
3. How can you remember what you read?
....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. What do you think the underlined word "**Others**" refers to?
   a goals b people c points d glasses
5. The underlined word "**enjoyment**" means ....
   a discussion b mysteries c sadness d pleasure
6. Students read for their study or ....
   a search b rich c research d reach

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Don't touch the ...., or the machine will start.
   a liver b lever c river d diver
2. My little sister is .... to sweets. She always wants to eat them!
   a discovered b translated c invented d addicted
3. I don't put any salt on my food because I don't like .... food.
   a salty b sweet c juicy d fatty
4. Humans have 210 .... in their bodies. The biggest ones are in our legs.
   a spices b skills c bones d apples
5. A/An .... is a person who paints or draws for a job.
   a artist b vet c pilot d farmer
6. She usually wears a heavy gold .... around her neck.
   a sandal b scarf c necklace d belt
7. You can see a lot of wind .... in windy countries like England.
   a panels b turbines c drones d bacteria
8. If I go to the shops on Saturday, I .... new headphones.
   a buys b bought c was buying d will buy
9. Can I have some more sugar, please? There is .... in this tea.
   a too much b too many c not enough d a few
10. It's a ....
   a nice, blue, shirt b shirt, blue, nice c blue, nice, shirt d blue, shirt, nice

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I'm going to .... (helps) my father.
2. Are you wearing your brown shoes or the black .... (one)?
3. .... (Be) you able to play music?
4. A: .... (Will) you like a cup of coffee? B: Yes, please.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Your favourite meal"

....
....
....

Exam 8 محافظة المنوفية - إدارة أشمون

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Make sure you have a / an .... diet.
 a balanced b boiled c fried d allergic
2. Eat some of all .... of food.
 a seeds b tastes c types d smells
3. To be healthy, you should .... well.
 a play b sleep c study d fry
4. Don't .... too much.
 a worry b bring c go d use

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mona and Nada are talking about technology.

Mona : What are you reading, Nada?
Nada : 1 ....
Mona : Do you know much about technology?
Nada : 2 ....
Mona : 3 ....?
Nada : The type of technology I use every day is the internet.
Mona : Do you think it is the most important invention?
Nada : 4 ....
Mona : 5 ....?
Nada : Because it helps us study and do research.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Emad. I'm fourteen years old. I'm allergic to nuts, so I must be careful what I eat. If I eat something with nuts in it, I will get ill. I eat a lot of fish and meat because they help to make me strong. I try not to eat too much fast food because it is unhealthy. I eat healthy snacks like fruit and vegetables. I'm lucky because my mother cooks many delicious foods at home.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. How old is Emad?
....
2. Why does Emad eat a lot of fish and meat?
....
3. What will happen if Emad eats something with nuts in it?
....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The word .... is the opposite of the underlined word "unhealthy".
 a strong b healthy c careful d allergic
5. Fruits and vegetables are healthy ....
 a nuts b sweets c snacks d clothes
6. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to ....
 a fish and meat b vegetables c fruits d nuts

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Meat and cheese have .... in them.
 a sugar b chips c protein d nuts
2. You should be careful when you use the ....
 a knife b towel c life d cup
3. The violin, the piano and the guitar are musical ....
 a tools b instruments c machines d materials
4. She is using .... to listen to music.
 a glasses b time machines c bowls d headphones
5. Please, ... some tea into my cup.
 a pour b pull c beat d fry
6. .... people can read using Braille.
 a Deaf b Strong c Blind d Old
7. " .... " is the opposite of old.
 a Famous b Modern c Strong d Awesome

8. Do you know how to .... music?
   a plays b played c playing d play
9. Our city has a lot of air pollution from the ....
   a traffic b fields c farms d plants
10. He looks .... with his nice clothes.
   a fat b bad c old d smart

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Are you going .... (visit) the museum?
2. Hoda won't go out if she .... (be) tired.
3. Would you like .... (any) coffee?
4. Ahmed eats too .... (many) fast food.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Your favourite type of clothes"

....
....
....
....
....

Exam 9 محافظة كفر الشيخ - ادارة فوه

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Who did Ali go to Luxor with? He went with his ....
   a friends b parents c family d teachers
2. Where did they stay? They stayed in a ....
   a hotel b village c valley d house
3. How long did they stay in Luxor? They stayed for ....
   a six days b three days c seven days d four days
4. When did Ali go to Luxor? He went ....
   a last month b last weekend c last year d yesterday

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Sama meets a tourist who wants to go to the Pyramids.

Tourist : Excuse me. Can I ask you some questions?
Sama : 1 .... ?
Tourist : 2 ....
Sama : The Pyramids are in Giza.
Tourist : Are they far from here?
Sama : 3 .... ?
Tourist : 4 ....
Sama : You can go on foot.
Tourist : Thank you very much.
Sama : 5 ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Technology plays an important role in our everyday lives. It affects the way we communicate, learn and think. Technology has positive and negative effects on our lives. On one hand, it improves businesses, saves our time and helps us shop online.

On the other hand, it has negative effects. People don't get enough sleep. They spend too much time checking social media or watching videos online late at night. Spending too much time on screens causes you headaches and also spending a long time sitting in the same place can cause back and neck pain.

Children sometimes overuse technology which affects their learning in a negative way. They use their mobiles and tablets to play online games for a long time and to check social media.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Suggest a title for this passage.
....
2. What are the positive things of technology?
....
3. What does the pronoun "It" refer to?
....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Children use their .... to play games online.
   a mobiles b tablets c radios d a and b
5. Because of using technology late at night, people don't get .... sleep.
   a enough b little c any d few
6. Sitting in the same place for a long time can cause ....
   a toothache b damage c sore throat d back and neck pain

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you feel ill, you .... a doctor.
   a would see b saw c sees d should see
2. Asmaa can't come out this morning as she needs to .... for a delivery.
   a buy b pay c save d spend
3. This email is in Spanish. Are you able to .... it for me?
   a translate b taste c invent d waste
4. Mr. Osman lives in a / an .... flat in Cairo.
   a big, old, nice b old, big, nice c nice, big, old d nice, old, big
5. Which of these is bad for you teeth?
   a salt b sugar c eggs d vegetables
6. A .... is a period of a hundred years.
   a century b country c scenery d centre
7. .... my opinion, eating too much food is bad for our health.
   a With b On c At d In
8. We use a knife to .... vegetables.
   a shop b chop c fry d cook
9. We wear heavy clothes in winter to .... warm.
   a protect b save c keep d take
10. Tokyo is the biggest .... in Japan.
   a village b city c continent d country

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Nadia used to play basketball when she .... (be) young.
2. My brother is going .... (travel) to London next week.
3. Does she .... (knows) how to take pictures?
4. Rania is one of .... (better) students in her class.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Your favourite sport"

....

Exam 10

محافظة بني سويف - ادارة ببا

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ziad likes the ....
   a shopping b clothes c noise d desert
2. The desert is always .... at night.
   a noisy b cold c hot d heavy
3. Ziad always wears .... clothes at night.
   a heavy b yellow c light d green
4. Ziad likes the desert because it is ....
   a worse b hot c quiet d noisy

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Shahd is asking Heba about her favourite hobby.

Shahd : What's your favourite hobby, Heba?
Heba : ① ....
Shahd : What musical instrument do you play?
Heba : ② ....
Shahd : ③ ....?

Heba : I started playing the violin last year.

Shahd : 4 ....?

Heba : No, it's very easy to play.

Shahd : Could you teach me how to play it?

Heba : 5 .... Let's start tomorrow.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name's Rehab. I always get up at half past six. I usually have a shower before I get dressed. I have breakfast with my family. My house is not far from my school, so I go to school on foot. I always arrive there before the bell rings. At break, I have some sandwiches and talk to my friends. I play with **them** in the playground. I come back home at about two o'clock. I usually feel tired then. My parents always come from work at about three o'clock. I like to help my mum make lunch. After lunch, I do my homework. I usually go to bed at nine o'clock.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What does Rehab usually do after she gets up?

....

2. What does Rehab do at break?

....

3. When does Rehab always get up?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Rehab's house is .... her school.

a near b far from c away d opposite

5. Rehab's parents come home at .... o'clock.

a 2 b 3 c 4 d 5

6. The underlined word "them" refers to ....

a Rehab's parents b Rehab's family c sandwiches d Rehab's friends

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I think my brother isn't sleeping. I can hear his ....

a sound b language c voice d idea

2. People use blankets to keep .... in cold weather.

a big b warm c cold d cool

3. Scientists .... that we won't use oil in the near future.

a build b produce c invent d predict

4. Don't use too much social media or you will be .... to them.

a addicted b worried c useful d allergic

5. I can't find my watch. It's ....

a hurt b disappeared c sent d found

6. Nurses help .... to get better at hospitals.

a medicines b wards c players d patients

7. I .... a new phone online yesterday.

a saved b made c ordered d took

8. There are .... students in class today.

a a little b little c much d a few

9. .... you able to carry this heavy box?

a Are b Is c Do d Can

10. My cousin .... with us at the moment.

a stays b is staying c stayed d staying

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What's .... (this) over there?
2. Sally is going .... (spend) a week in Alexandria.
3. It's a .... (red, wool, nice) jumper.
4. Did you .... (used) to eat shrimps?

E Writing

6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

to your friend Radwa to advise her about the problem with her sister.

- **Your name is Fatma and your email address is fatma345@gmail.com**
- **Your friend's name is Radwa and her email address is radwa898@yahoo.com**

....



Exam 11

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We have .... air pollution in our country.
   a a lot of — b little — c few — d many
2. .... can reduce pollution.
   a Traffic — b Trees — c Cars — d Planes
3. Trees are good for the ....
   a pollution — b houses — c traffic — d environment
4. People should .... trees.
   a reduce — b cut — c plant — d burn

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ebrahim and a tourist are talking about the Egyptian Museum.

Tourist : Excuse me. Can you help me?

Ebrahim : ❶ ....

Tourist : ❷ ....?

Ebrahim : The Egyptian Museum is in the city centre.

Tourist : ❸ ....?

Ebrahim : No, you should take a taxi.

Tourist : Is it far from here?

Ebrahim : ❹ ....

Tourist : I think the Ancient Egyptians were great people.

Ebrahim : ❺ ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Maher. I was born in Giza in 2008. I am a pupil at El Salam Prep School. My favourite subject is English. I like watching foreign films and reading short stories. I'd like to be a TV reporter. A TV reporter talks to different people in front of a camera. I have got one sister and two brothers. My father is a hotel manager. He makes sure that all rooms are clean and comfortable. He also looks after visitors. My mother's a scientist at Cairo University.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Where was Maher born?
....
2. What would Maher like to be?
....
3. How old is Maher?
....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Maher's father works as a ....
   a hotel manager — b scientist — c TV reporter — d farmer
5. Maher's favourite subject is ....
   a history — b Arabic — c German — d English
6. The underlined word "He" refers to ....
   a Maher's brother — b Maher's father — c Maher's uncle — d Maher

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The internet is a useful ....
   a invent — b invention — c predict — d prediction
2. We need someone to sew the ....
   a costumes — b customs — c glasses — d colours
3. The tap has a .... to get hot and cold water.
   a liver — b bag — c lever — d cover
4. A .... is able to stop fires.
   a police officer — b pilot — c manager — d firefighter
5. This .... is made of expensive leather.
   a handbag — b earring — c necklace — d glass
6. He is .... to nuts, he can't eat any of them.
   a usual — b addicted — c useful — d allergic
7. We can make electricity from the sun using solar ....
   a windows — b robes — c panels — d pans
8. I think life .... easier in the future.
   a will be — b was — c is — d were

9. .... write on your desk, keep it clean.

a Doesn't   b Didn't   c Aren't   d Don't

10. A: .... you able to speak French? B: Yes, I am.

a Was   b Are   c Can   d Will

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Look! A cat is .... (climb) a tree.
2. That pink jumper is the .... (ones) I bought last week.
3. I need .... (a few) salt but not too much.
4. Shall we .... (going) to the cinema?

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Healthy food"

....

Exam 12 محافظة قنا - ادارة قفط

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What does the charity help to clean?

a Streets   b Roads   c Beaches   d Houses

2. What do they pick up on the beach?

a Rubbish   b Grass   c Sand   d Flowers

3. Why do they collect plastic bottles?

a To sell them.   b To burn them.

c To drink them.   d To recycle them.

4. Does Yasser like his work?

a No, he doesn't.   b Yes, he does.   c I don't know.   d Never.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Asmaa would like to buy a new dress.

Shopkeeper : Can I help you?
Asmaa : Yes. ❶ ....
Shopkeeper : ❷ ....?
Asmaa : Black, please, but can I try it on first?
Shopkeeper : ❸ ....
Asmaa : ❹ .... Do you have a bigger one?
Shopkeeper : Yes, here you are.
Asmaa : That's great, ❺ ....?
Shopkeeper : It's 200 pounds.
Asmaa : OK, I will take it.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Keeping the environment clean is important for everyone who lives on the Earth. Man has invented a lot of useful things that serve all people but at the same time they are harmful to the environment. Cars are useful because they carry us from place to place but they are harmful to the environment because they cause air pollution. Factories make good things to us , but there are some factories that throw their waste and rubbish into water and this kills huge numbers of fish too. So we should plant more trees and stop cutting them down because trees are a source of life as they give out oxygen and take in carbon dioxide.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
....
2. Where do some factories throw their waste and rubbish?
....
3. What do you think we should do to keep the environment clean?
....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Keeping the environment .... is important for everyone.
   a dirty b polluted c clean d ugly
5. We live on the ....
   a sea b moon c sky d Earth
6. The underlined word "they" refers to ....
   a people b trees c factories d fish

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This email is in French. Can you .... it into Arabic, please?
   a translate b taste c smell d waste
2. People sometimes use a .... to film animals from the sky.
   a kite b drone c bike d train
3. The Ancient Egyptians used .... to make clothes.
   a glass b metal c linen d leather
4. There are .... people on the beach. Let's not go there today.
   a too many b too much c any d a little
5. My dress is damaged, so my mother is .... it.
   a cleaning b sewing c tidying d washing
6. A .... is able to stop fires.
   a police officer b pilot c manager d firefighter
7. Esraa is going .... the race.
   a win b wins c to win d winning
8. Yasser is .... to coffee, he always wants to drink it.
   a addicted b kind c allergic d energy
9. A .... person is a person who can't see.
   a deaf b blind c mute d bold
10. Would you like to have .... tea?
   a many b any c some d an

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If you .... (not study) well, you won't succeed.
2. .... (Beating) two eggs in a bowl with little milk.
3. .... (This) earrings are my grandmother's.
4. She .... (know) how to cook delicious food.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Healthy food and healthy diet"

Exam 13 محافظة مطروح - إدارة مطروح

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Who went to Luxor with Ali?
   a His friends b His parents c His family d His teachers
2. They stayed in a ....
   a hotel b village c valley d house
3. How long did they stay in Luxor?
   a Six days b Three days c Four days d Seven days
4. When did Ali go to Luxor?
   a Last month b Last weekend c Last year d Last summer

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Eman is talking to Amany about the next summer holiday.

Eman : How are you, Amany?
Amany : ❶ ....
Eman : Where will you go on the next summer holiday?
Amany : ❷ ....
Eman : Sharm El-Sheikh! Who will you go with?
Amany : ❸ ....
Eman : ❹ ....?
Amany : We'll travel by bus.

Eman : ⑤ ....

Amany : At a hotel.

C Reading Comprehension

③ Read the following, then answer the questions:

I'm Kareem. I've got two brothers and three sisters. My father is an old farmer. My mother is a housewife. She spends all her time cooking and cleaning the house. They work day and night to help us live happily. We live in a nice house on the farm. My father grows a lot of vegetables. He also keeps some animals and birds. In my school, I have got a lot of friends. My school day begins at eight o'clock in the morning. After school, I usually help my father. I love looking after animals and birds. I'd like to study <u>farming</u> because I want to grow the main crops on our farm.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage.

....

2. How many people are there in Kareem's family?

....

3. Why do you think Kareem wants to study farming?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word **"farming"** means ....

a) weaving b) growing crops c) making clothes d) playing music

5. Kareem's mother works at ....

a) home b) a school c) a bank d) a company

6. The underlined pronoun **"They"** refers to ....

a) Kareem's brothers b) Kareem's uncles c) Kareem's grandparents d) Kareem's parents

D Vocabulary and Structure

④ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I need some medicine, please. I've a terrible ....

a) class b) mistake c) picnic d) headache

2. Omar .... 13 years old next year.

a) will be b) is c) has d) was

3. I always .... the washing up for my mum when she is tired.

a) build b) make c) do d) hurt

4. There are .... people on the bus.

a) much b) many c) any d) a lot

5. You look tired, dad. I think you must .... enough sleep.

a) give b) stay c) make d) get

6. Cars in big cities .... a lot of pollution.

a) cause b) reason c) take d) stop

7. Salma uses her .... to text her friends and send emails.

a) camera b) mobile phone c) drone d) remote control

8. The students .... the classroom at the moment.

a) leaving b) left c) are leaving d) leave

9. You must play ...., boys. I'm too busy studying here.

a) outside b) abroad c) overseas d) inside

10. I read a .... of the new film yesterday.

a) clip b) sight c) tape d) review

⑤ Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I will buy .... (these) hat, I like it.
2. Today is very hot, it .... (be) 35 degrees.
3. If she ....(pass) an exam, she will feel proud.
4. I have .... (few) salad. Please, give me some more.

E Writing

⑥ Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"A visit to a museum"

....

....

....

....



A Listening

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال فى آخر الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We will have electric cars ....
   a in the past b in the future c in the present d next week
2. The electric cars will use ....
   a petrol b gas c electricity d water

B Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini- dialogues:

1- **Kareem** : ....

Ahmed : I'd like to have eggs and cheese for breakfast.

2- **Noha** : What are you going to do at the weekend?

Mona : ....

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We don't have .... bread. Could you go and buy some?
   a some b many c a few d any
2. Mona always wears .... on the bus because she loves listening to music.
   a headphones b uniforms c mobiles d tablets
3. In Ancient Egypt, women wore .... clothes.
   a linen, white, loose b loose, white, linen
   c white, linen, loose d loose, linen, white
4. A / An .... is a painting or a photograph of a person's face.
   a sculpture b pottery c portrait d cartoon
5. I .... the dentist at half past four next Thursday, as arranged.
   a will visit b am going to visit c visit d am visiting

6. I'm very .... of my little brother. He always comes first at school.
   a proud b sad c interested d bored

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Holidays are important, but it is difficult to know where and how you can spend one. We always look for something new and exciting. Last midyear holiday, my father took us on a trip to Luxor and Aswan. We spent two days in Aswan where we visited Abu Simbel and the High Dam. Then we went to Luxor. We spent three days there, enjoying the warm weather and visiting the famous temples. Before the end of the holiday, we went back to Cairo by bus.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. When did they go to Luxor and Aswan?
....
2. What did they visit in Aswan?
....
3. How did they go back to Cairo?
....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. They spent .... days in Luxor and Aswan?
   a two b three c five d six
5. They enjoyed the .... weather in Luxor.
   a cold b hot c windy d warm

E Writing

5 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Healthy food"

....
....
....
....
....
....



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What did the speaker order?
   a A mobile b A TV c A radio d A car
2. The screen was ....
   a cleared b destroyed c cleaned d bought

B Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini- dialogues:

1 - A : How about bringing healthy food?
B : ....
2 - A : ....
B : I'd like to wear loose, white clothes.

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If I .... to the shops, I'll spend much money.
   a went b go c will go d goes
2. Would you like .... salt on your chips?
   a little b few c many d a
3. They listen carefully to their teacher and take ....
   a mistakes b away c notes d place
4. He .... drive so he failed his driving test.
   a could b may c should d couldn't
5. The deaf aren't able to ....
   a speak b hear c write d see
6. She hurt her hand and started ....
   a crying b laughing c hiding d wondering

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Last month, I visited the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art in Cairo. Egypt is famous for its ancient art, but I was interested in seeing art by Egyptians from the 20th and 21st centuries. The artists were really good because they showed what life was like in Egypt in the past and now.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. When did the writer visit the museum?
....
2. What was the writer interested in?
....
3. What did the artists show?
....

B. Choose the correct answer :

4. Egypt is famous for its .... art.
   a old b new c bad d terrible
5. The writer visited the museum last ....
   a year b month c week d day

E Writing

5 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"The importance of English language"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....



SB Answers

Lesson 1 — Page 2

Discuss

- Can you match the descriptions to these pictures of new inventions?

1. e   2. a   3. d   4. b

Find

- Look through the unit. What did Lama buy from the internet?

- She bought a new mobile phone.

Research

- Who was H. G. Wells? Why is he famous?

- H. G. Wells (1866–1946) was a British writer. He was famous for writing science fiction stories like The Time Machine and The War of the Worlds, which were also made into films.

Page 3

2 Match the inventions 1–4 on page 2 with the people who talk about them.

1. They are found along the coast of the sea.

Hatem : Picture 4
Mona : Picture 2
Tarek : Picture 1
Sawsan : Picture 3

3 Complete the sentences from the listening with will or won't.

1. won't   2. will   3. won't
4. will   5. will

Lesson 2 — Page 4

2 Match a word from A to a word from B to make useful phrases.

have : a delivery, time, money, a choice
save : time, money
spend : time, money
waste : time, money
wait for : a delivery

3 Read the article. Can you find any of the phrases from Exercise 2 in the text?

- save (me) time, spend (lots of) time, have (more) choice, waste time, waiting for a delivery

4 Complete the table with the reasons for and against shopping online. Can you add any more ideas to the table?

For : It saves time; There is more choice; It is better for the environment. There will be less pollution.
Against : You can't try things before you buy; You need to wait for a delivery; Shops and cafés will close.
Extra ideas :
For : Things are often cheaper online.
Against : It is less interesting than going shopping with your friends or family.

Page 5

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. go/will spend   2. visits/will buy
3. won't use/is   4. will look/gets
5. buy/won't be able to

6 Complete these sentences with your own ideas.

1. I will buy some new shoes.
2. I will go to the local shop.
3. I do my homework tonight.
4. I have school work to finish.

Lesson 3 — Page 6

1 Check the meaning of the words in bold in your dictionary.

addicted : liking something so much that you want to do or have it all the time
by mistake : something you do or say without intending to
headache : a pain inside your head
horrible : very bad, not nice at all
social media : websites and computer programs that allow people to communicate and share information in the internet using a computer or mobile phone

3 Listen to these four people talking about the problems they have with technology. Match them to the problems a – d above.

Shady : c   Hala : b
Randa : a   Adam : d

4 Complete the advice an expert gives to the people in Exercise 3.

1. a good idea   2. need to/should
3. is important   4. good friends/should

Page 7

Match to make sentences.

1c   2d   3a   4e   5b

Complete these sentences with your own ideas. Use should.

1. you should tell your parents.
2. you shouldn't chat to people you don't know.
3. you should tell his/her parents or a teacher.
4. you should turn off all your technology.

Lesson 4 — Page 8

Ask and answer the questions in pairs.

1. He or she travels through time.
2. Students' own answers.

Read part of the story The Time Machine and answer the questions.

1. They are in London, at the Time Traveller's house.
2. The Time Traveller.
3. They travel in time/go to the past and future

Look at the words in red. Use a dictionary to check their meanings. Write the words in your notebook.

impossible : if an action or event is impossible, it cannot happen or be done
pull : hold something and move it towards you
lever : a handle that you push or pull to make a machine work
disappear : suddenly go somewhere and become impossible to find
explore : look around a place where you have never been in order to find out what is there

Read the text again. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.

1. T
2. F (The small model of a machine disappears.)
3. T
4. F (The small machine travels to the future.)
5. F (It is not finished.)
6. T

Lesson 5 — Page 9

Complete the poster with these words.

1. watch   2. enough   3. headaches
4. headphones   5. video games   6. outside

Look at these sentences from a debate called Technology can be bad for your health. Are these opinions positive or negative?

Positive – sentences 1, 4, 6
Negative – sentences 2, 3, 5

Lesson 6 — Page 10

1 Read the email. What is it about?

It is about a damaged phone.

2 Read the email again and answer the questions.

1. Last week
2. Today
3. The screen was damaged.
4. She wants to change the phone/get a new phone.
5. How she can change the phone.

3 Which of these phrases are used to start or end a formal email? Write S (Start) or E (End).

1. S   2. E   3. S   4. E   5. E

Lesson 7 — Page 11

1 Match the verbs to the nouns to make phrases.

1. c   2. e   3. a   4. b   5. d

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs and should, shouldn't, will or won't.

1. are / should   2. listen/will
3. don't do/won't   4. want/should
5. are/should

WB Answers

Page 70

1 Complete the sentences with these words.

1. Helicopters   2. headphones
3. app   4. translate   5. motorbike

2 Choose the correct words.

1. corrections   2. invent
3. predict   4. translate

Page 71

1 Choose the correct words.

1. saves   2. spend   3. have   4. of

2 Match to make the questions that he asks his mother.

1. d   2. c   3. e   4. b   5. a

3 Complete with the questions from Exercise 2, then role-play the dialogue.

1. Who will meet me at the airport if the plane's late?
2. What clothes will I wear if it's cold?
3. Who will I talk to if I don't know anyone at the school?
4. What will the teacher say if I don't understand the lesson?
5. What will I eat if I don't like the food?

Page 72

1 Match the words and the definitions.

1. social media   2. by mistake
3. horrible   4. addicted to

2 Complete the sentences with words or phrases from Exercise 1.
1. addicted to 2. horrible
3. by mistake 4. social media

3 Complete the sentences with the correct verb.
1. visit 2. stay 3. try
4. understand 5. swim

4 Complete the sentences. Use should and if / when.
1. we should talk to him/her
2. if you are going to be late
3. you should go home
4. you should pick it up
5. you should stay in the house
6. we should work together

Page 73

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of these words.
1. disappeared 2. impossible 3. pull
4. lever 5. explore

3 Answer the questions about The Time Machine.
1. They meet at the Time Traveller's house.
2. They say that it's impossible.
3. He shows them a small model of a time machine.
4. It took him two years to build.
5. It disappears.
6. He will explore the past and the future.

Page 74

1 Choose the correct words in a debate called All computer games are bad for you.
1. don't 2. idea 3. opinion
4. play 5. From

2 Now listen and complete the dialogue with the correct sentences 1–5 from Exercise 1.
c.5 b.1 c.2 d.3 e.4

Page 75

1 Read the email and write the missing sentences a-c in the right places.
1. c 2. b 3. a

2 Read the email again and answer the questions.
1. It arrived today.
2. It was for children aged 6–9.
3. Because it did not say the game was for children of this age.
4. He wants a different game that he can play with his friends who are 13 or 14.
5. He wants to know how he can change the game.

Page 76

1 Complete the table.
Adjectives : addicted, horrible, useful
Inventions : headphones, motorbike, social media
Verbs : order, pull, translate

2 Complete with the words from Exercise 1.
1. pull 2. headphones 3. translate
4. social media 5. motorbike

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.
1. d 2. c 3. c 4. a 5. a

Unit 8

SB Answers

Lesson 1 **Page 12**

Quiz:
In which country do you think these snacks are popular?
- Sfenj: Morocco; Samosa: India; Chips: Britain; Roja: Malaysia; Falafel: Egypt

Find:
Look through the unit. What is Okinawa and where is it?
- It is an island in Japan

Page 13

1 Listen and put the snacks from page 12 in the order that you hear them. Were your answers to the quiz correct?
a. 3 b. 2 c. 4 d. 5 e. 1

2 Listen again and complete the sentences with these words.
1. sweet 2. delicious 3. salty
4. spicy 5. juicy

3 Choose the correct word. Then ask and answer the questions in pairs.
1. juicy 2. spicy 3. salty 4. sweet
- Students' own answers.

Lesson 2 **Page 14**

1 Read the texts about two teenagers and answer the questions.
1. Imad 2. Mustafa 3. Mustafa
4. Mustafa Imad 6. Students' own answers.

1 Complete the sentences with a lot, a little or a few.
1. a few 2. a little 3. a lot
4. a few 5. a little, a few

Page 15

1 Listen to Amal and Huda talking to their grandmother and answer the questions.
1. They are at their grandmother's house.
2. They are having dinner.
3. They are eating chicken and beans now.
4. They don't eat the rice pudding because they are (really) full.

3 Match to make questions and answers. Then listen again to check your answers.
1.c 2.d 3.e 4.a 5.b

4 Choose the correct words.
1. Would, full 2. Do
3. a few, Would 4. a little 5. Would, couldn't.

Lesson 3 **Page 16**

1 Complete the quiz.
1.c 2.a 3.b 4.c 5.b
6.a 7.b 8.a

3 Complete the sentences with the words in bold from the quiz.
1. bones 2. protein
3. fresh 4. dairy products

Page 17

4 Look at the photographs and complete the sentences with the correct cooking verbs.
1. heat 2. pour 3. serve
4. chop 5. fry 6. beat

5 Complete the recipes for an omelette and tomato salad with these instructions.

How to make an omelette	How to make a tomato salad
1 Beat two eggs in a bowl with little milk.	1 Take two big tomatoes and half an onion.
2 Add a little salt to the eggs and milk.	2 Chop all the vegetables into small squares.
3 Heat some butter in a frying pan.	3 Put the chopped vegetables into a bowl.
4 Pour the eggs into the frying pan and cook them in the butter.	4 Add a little oil, salt and lemon juice.
5 When the omelette is ready, take it out of the frying pan and serve with salad.	5 Serve the salad with your omelette.

Page 18

2 Read the article again and answer the questions.
1. Because they smell terrible
2. It's unusual to eat sweet and salty things together
3. Century eggs are black and green inside, and they have a salty taste
4. Durian (fruits) and century eggs smell a lot

3 Complete the meanings with the correct word from the article in bold.
1. Unusual 2. smell 3. taste 4. delicious

Lesson 5 **Page 19**

2 Listen again and answer the questions.
1. The cook in his parents' restaurant.
2. Because he helps in the kitchen at his parents' restaurant.
3. Because eating snacks isn't good for you.
4. She feels very hungry after athletics club.
5. Tamer is worried about his exams.
6. He can't tell his mother that she gives him too much food.

3 Read the advice and answer the questions.
1. Eman 2. Yes, it is good advice.
3. It's a good idea to; how about (bringing); why don't you try (eating); Perhaps you could (eat)

Lesson 6 **Page 20**

1 Read about Okinawa and answer the questions.
1. People in Okinawa eat a lot of fresh vegetables. They only eat a little meat and few dairy products.
2. The Okinawan breakfast is very healthy because it gives them a lot of energy to start the day.
3. The result of the Okinawans' healthy diet is that they live a long time.

2 Complete the table with the expressions that the writer uses to introduce each point.
1. Firstly 2. Furthermore
3. Another important thing 4. As you can see

Lesson 7 **Page 21**

1 Match the photos with these words and phrases.
1.c 2.a 3.b 4.e 5.f 6.d

2 Choose the correct words to complete the dialogue.
1. Is 2. any 3. little 4. Would
5. some 6. few 7. enough

3 Match to make sentences about how to make a fried egg.
1.c 2.f 3.d 4.b 5.e 6.a

WB Answers

Page 77

1 Match the words to the food. Add more examples.

1 c 2 a 3 d 4 b

Suggested answers

a. fish, nuts, chips
b. chocolate, sweets, cake
c. watermelon, oranges, grapes
d. samosas, curry, chillies

2 Complete the email with some or any.

1 some 2 some 3 some 4 any 5 any

Page 78

1 Match the definitions to their words.

1 c 2 d 3 a 4 b

2 Answer the questions with these words.

1 pasta 2 pizza 3 nuts

3 What other types of food are people often allergic to? Research the information.

People can be allergic to almost anything, but common types of food include milk/dairy products, wheat (gluten) and caffeine (in coffee or tea).

4 Circle the correct words.

1 any 2 a lot of 3 some
4 a lot of 5 a little 6 a few

5 Put the dialogue into the correct order.

c4 b2 c1 d3 e5 f7 g6

Page 79

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. a4

1 b 2 c 3 a 4 d 5 c

2 Answer the questions.

1 butter 2 water 3 meat 4 eggs

3 Match to make sentences.

1 c 2 d 3 a 4 e 5 b

4 Circle the correct words in the recipe.

1 Wash 2 Add 3 Heat 4 Pour 5 Serve

Page 80

1 Complete the diagram with these verbs for senses.

1 see 2 hear 3 smell 4 taste 5 touch

2 Listen to four people talking about food. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.

1 T 2 F (She likes them.)
3 T 4 F (She says it doesn't taste nice.)
5 T
6 F (He loves to smell cakes cooking but he never eats cakes at all because he's allergic to nuts.)

Page 81

1 Read about sleep and answer the questions.

1 very small babies
2 About ten hours a night
3 You need less sleep.
4 Suggested: Because it helps you to stay healthy.

2 Read the text again and circle the correct answers.

1 enough 2 enough
3 sleeps for too many 4 not enough
5 doesn't sleep for enough

Page 82

1 Complete the sentences with these words.

1 Spinach 2 Japan 3 pepper 4 ...

2 Complete the text with these expressions.

1 Firstly 2 Furthermore
3 Another important point 4 To conclude

Page 83

1 Can you add any words?

cooking words	types of food	words that describe food
add beat fry	fava bean omelette pepper	fresh juicy salty

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1 a 2 d 3 b 4 c 5 d 6 d

3 Complete the recipe for pizza with these verbs.

4 Cook 5 little 6 Serve



SB Answers

Lesson 1 Page 22

Discuss

1 c 2 f 3 b 4 a 5 d 6 e

Find

They are called Meg, Beth, Amy and Jo.

Research

- The Cairo Opera House in Cairo
- El Sawy Culture Wheel in Cairo.

Reading

- They are getting ready for an end-of-year school show.

Read the messages again and complete the table in your notebook.

They are getting ready for an end-of-year school show.

Activity	Name
Acting	Lamar with the drama club
Sewing costumes	Mariam and Azza
Doing make-up	Lara
Painting scenery	Manal
Playing music	Talia
Writing the script	Habiba

Lesson 2 Page 24

1 Match the photos to the different types of art.

1 drawing 2 photograph 3 pottery
4 portrait 5 cartoon 6 sculpture

Page 25

1 Read the review again and answer the questions.

1 He visited it last month.
2 No, it is also from the 20th century.
3 They are of important and normal Egyptians.
4 Al Madina. It made him feel happy/it was colourful.
5 It is free.
6 Students' own answers.

Can you think of any other phrases to add to the chart?

Description: famous, good, important, normal, cool, big, small, colourful, free, busy, interesting, exciting, boring, etc.

Giving opinions: From my point of view; I thought; It made me feel; In my opinion

Talking about preferences: My favourite thing; The best thing; I liked ... the most

Giving recommendations: I recommend; It's a good idea to; You should ...

Lesson 3 Page 26

1 Ask and answer the questions in pairs.

1 Classical music: Students' own answers.
2 Suggested: Yes, because it takes many hours of practice each day.
3 Suggested: Patience, musical ability
4 Students: own answers.

What is special about the orchestra?

The musicians are blind.

Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.

1 T
2 F (Only girls can go to the school.)
3 F (The students play music in the afternoon.)
4 T
5 F (All of the musicians are blind.)
6 F (The Orchestra plays Arabic and international music.)
7 T 8 T

Page 27

Life skills.

✓ Do not leave bags on the floor on public transport.
✓ Tell a blind person about objects on the street.
✓ Ask a person in a wheelchair if they need help.

7 Write a paragraph about a musician from Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra in your notebook.

The Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra is a school for blind girls in Cairo. Judy is one of the musicians. She is able to play the clarinet very well. She was born blind and started playing when she was eight. She likes playing in the orchestra because she loves meeting other people. Last year, she visited Oman and France with the orchestra. I would like to go to one of their concerts and I would recommend listening to them online or on the radio if you can.

Lesson 4 Page 28

2 Read the story and check your answers to Exercise 1.

1. They are reading and listening to a story.
2. They are at home (in the living room).
3. Yes, because they are all sitting together and look happy.

3 Look at the verbs in red in the text. Use a dictionary to check the meaning. Write them in your notebook.

wonder: think about something and want to know why it is true

hide: go to a place where you cannot be seen or found, or put something in a place where it cannot be seen or found

cry: produce water from your eyes, usually because you are sad, angry or hurt

hug: put your arms around someone and hold them closely, usually because you love them

5 Ask and answer the questions in pairs.

1. She wants them to hear it before they know she wrote it, perhaps to get a more honest answer from them.
2. Because she likes the story and is proud of her sister.
3-5 Students' own answers.

Lesson 5 Page 29

2 Listen to a telephone conversation between two friends and complete the notes.

1. Warda's house 2. Tonight
3. Watch Little Women 4. drinks (fruit juice)
5. 7 pm

3 Listen again. Complete these phrases from the conversation.

1. wondering 2. Would 3. bring
4. Could 5. should

4 Which of the phrases from Exercise 3 do you use for the following?

1 invitations: 1 and 2 2 requests: 2 and 4
3 offers: 3 4 asking for information: 5

Lesson 6 **Page 30**

1 Does the writer like the film or not?

The writer likes the action and the scary dinosaurs, but he doesn't like the story because it's not very interesting or new.

2 Read the review again and answer the questions.

1. It's an adventure film.
2. stars
3. It happens in a theme park.
4. Some dinosaurs escape.
5. The writer likes the scary dinosaurs.
6. He doesn't like the story. It is not interesting or new.

3 In what order does the writer put the following information in the review?

a4 b5 c1 d3 e2.

Lesson 7 **Page 31**

1 Complete the table.

Play	Concert	Verbs
costume make-up scenery	instrument musician orchestra	cry escape hug

3 Complete the conversation with the correct words. Then listen and check your answers.

1. wondering 2. Would 3. cool
4. Shall 5. could 6. should

WB Answers

Page 84

1 Match to make activities.

1.e 2.c 3.a 4.b 5.d

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of a word from Exercise 1.

1. is sewing 2. costumes 3. make-up
4. scenery 5. instrument

3 Reorder the words to make questions. Then answer the questions about yourself.

1. Can you sew? No, I can't.
2. Do you know how to use a computer? Yes, I do.
3. Are you able to speak French? No, but I can speak English
4. Can you play football or tennis? I can't play football, but I know how to play tennis.

Lesson 2 **Page 85**

1 Match the words with their meanings.

1.b 2.d 3.f 4.c 5.a 6.e

2 Complete the review of a museum with these words.

1. thought 2. point of view 3. favourite
4. recommend 5. idea

3 Read the review again and answer the questions.

1. She thought they were fantastic.
2. They really teach you about life in the past.
3. The Islamic area (where you can see different kinds of calligraphy).
4. She recommends looking at the clothes from other countries.
5. Because the museum is quite dark.

Page 86

1 Listen and choose the correct words.

1. blind 2. musicians 3. violin
4. playing 5. orchestra 6. amazing
7. read 8. concerts

2 Match the words with their meanings.

1.c 2.a 3.b

3 Look at the picture and complete the sentences about the difficulties disabled people can have.

1. see the traffic light.
2. go into the shop/up the stairs.
3. hear the other boy.

4 Write a list of four things that we can do to help some of the people in Exercise 3.

1. Someone could tell the blind man that the lights are green for him. / The traffic lights could make a noise so that the blind man knows when it is green.
2. Someone could put a slope/ramp on the stairs for the disabled woman so she can go in the shop.
3. The boy who is shouting could stand in front of the deaf boy so that he knows he is talking to him.
4. The boy who is shouting could learn sign language.

Page 87

1 Complete the sentences with these words.

1. cry 2. wonder 3. hide 4. hug.

2 Answer the questions.

2. Suggested: When they are frightened. / When they do not want people/other animals to see them.
3. Students' own answers.

1 Put the events in Little Women in the correct order.

a5 b3 c6 d4 e2 f1.

Page 88

1 Match to make sentences or questions.

1.d 2.e 3.b 4.a 5.c.

1 Put the dialogue in the correct order. Put the dialogue in the correct order.

a5 b7 c6 d2
e8 f3 g4 h1.

Research.

They are all also films. They have the same names (in English), except for Alice's Adventures in Wonderland which was called Alice in Wonderland as a film

Page 89

1 Match the words with their meanings.

1.c 2.d 3.b 4.a

1 Some words have more than one meaning. Complete the sentences, using each word two times.

1. park 2. star 3. park
4. view 5. star 6. view

1 Put this review of a book into the correct order.

a4 b1 c3 d2.

Page 90

Review

1 Write the words. What is the word in the blue column?

		1	c	a	r	t	o	o	n		
		2	c	r	y						
3	c	o	s	t	u	m	e				
	4	b	l	i	n	d					
			5	s	c	r	i	p	t		
6	p	h	o	t	o	g	r	a	p	h	y

1 Complete the sentences. Write what these people can/know how to/are able to do well.

1. stop fires.
2. paint pictures.
3. can play musical instruments.
4. knows how to act in films.
5. is able to teach us English.

1 Look at the pictures and answer the questions.

1. Number 1 is a drawing;
2 is a portrait;
3 is pottery and 4 is a sculpture.
2-4 Students' own answers.

Review C

SB Answers

Lesson 1 **Page 32**

1 Read the medical advice and complete the sentences with should.

1. you should stand 1.5 metres from them.
2. you should use the correct doors.
3. you should take a test for Covid-19 every 72 hours.
4. you should wear a mask.
5. you should have it online.

2 Choose the correct words.

1. lot of 2. are able to 3. a few
4. a lot 5. know how to

3 Complete the review with these words.

1. play 2. costume 3. scenery
4. acting 5. action 6. script

4 What did the writer like about the play? What didn't he like? Write in your notebook and say why.

Liked about the play	Didn't like about the play
Caesar's costume. It made him look very important. The scenery. It looked like Ancient Rome. The acting. It was very good.	The story was sad. It made him cry. There was not much action. It was mostly talking. It was very long. It lasted three hours. The language was difficult. It is not modern English.

Lesson 2 **Page 33**

2 Listen to Heba and Sara talking about food. What do they spend too much time doing?

They spend too much time playing computer games/ being online.

3 Listen again and complete the table.

	Heba	Sara
Favourite food	mangos	falafel
Knows how to make	omelettes and salad	cakes
Problems	Eats too many cakes Doesn't do enough exercise Spends too much time online in the evening	Eats too many cakes Doesn't eat enough fruit Spends too much time playing computer games in the evening

WB Answers

Page 91

1 Look at the picture and choose the correct words.

1. a few
2. a lot of
3. A few
4. a little
5. a lot of

2 Match to make sentences.

1.f 2.e 3.c 4.c 5.b 6.d

3 Complete these sentences with should and a suitable verb.

1. you should practise every day.
2. you should ask them first.
3. you should watch Jurassic World.
4. you should end it with Yours sincerely.
5. you should do it again.
6. you should do more exercise / eat more fruit.

Page 92

5 Listen again. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences..

1. T
2. T
3. F (She will beat eight eggs.)
4. F (She should chop it really small.)
5. F (They can all have a little.)

6 Read and complete the reviews with these words.

1. costumes
2. scenery
3. recommend
4. photographs
5. cartoons
6. buy
7. point of view
8. sculptures
9. phones
10. action
11. made
12. best

7 What are the reviews from Exercise 6 for? Read and match.

a4 b2 c3 d1

Unit 10

SB Answers

Lesson 1 Page 34

Quiz

Find these items in the photos. Who can finish first?

a. sunglasses, belt, handbag, earrings
b. belt, trainers
c. headscarf
d. galabeya, sandals, headscarf

Research

What type of material is best for a hot climate?

- cotton

Find

Look through the unit. Why is Egypt good for growing cotton?

- The climate is perfect for growing cotton.

Page 35

2 Match the people with the photos on page 34.

1.a 2.d 3.c 4.b.

3 Listen again and answer the questions.

1. Comfortable and relaxed
2. Her mother
3. When he is helping his father outside.
4. They keep him cool and protect him from the sun.
5. She bought it at the market.
6. It is a cool colour.
7. Because he is going for a special meal with his grandparents.
8. His father (when he's going to work).

Lesson 2 Page 36

1 Discuss these questions in pairs.

2. The Ancient Egyptian clothes are made of linen, the sandals are made of leather, the jewellery is made of metal/gold.
3. Students' own answers.

2 What did the people love to wear?

They loved to wear heavy, metal jewellery.

3 Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.

2. F (Clothes made of linen were popular.)
3. T
4. F (Children did not usually wear clothes until they were about six years old, then wore the same clothes as their parents.)
5. T
6. F (They wore gold necklaces.)

4 Discuss these questions in pairs.

1. Now, clothes are usually made of cotton, and are not just white. People do not wear jewellery very much.
2. People still wear loose, white clothes with a belt, leather sandals and some jewellery.
3. Students' own answers.

Page 37

5 Put the adjectives in the correct order.

1. It's a beautiful, blue skirt.
2. It's a colourful, cotton scarf.
3. It's a short, old, gold necklace.
4. They are some strange, big, leather shoes.
5. They are expensive, black, plastic sunglasses.
6. It's a nice, purple, wool jumper

Lesson 3 Page 38

Read the blog. Where did the three people get the clothes they talk about?

Noha: from a shop in Cairo
Ayman: from his dad
Dalida: her grandmother made it

Read the blog again. Tick (✓) the correct people.

Who ...	Noha	Ayman	Dalida
1 chooses clothes that are good for a hobby?		✓	
2 often wears the same clothes?			✓
3 has clothes someone else used to own?		✓	
4 is trying to change how they shop?	✓		
5 has their clothes made by a family member?			✓

Page 39

Read and correct the underlined words..

1. those
2. one
3. this
4. these
5. ones

Write about a special item of clothing.

One special item of clothing is my blue, cotton shirt. My mother bought it for me when my cousin got married. I always wear it for other special events like weddings and birthdays. It always makes me feel happy when I wear it.

Lesson 4 Page 40

Read the article. Did the Ancient Egyptians make the same types of material as now?

No, they made linen.

Look at the words in bold in the text. Match the words and the definitions.

1. soft
2. luxury
3. picked
4. crops
5. chemicals
6. perfect
7. industry
8. environment

Read the article again and match paragraphs 1-4 with the headings a–d.

a2 b4 c1 d3

Discuss these questions in groups.

1. Farmers could use fewer chemicals on their land and use recycled water.
2. The oil industry, car making, textiles, construction, chemicals, pharmaceuticals (medicines)
3. Yes, because it is important not to create pollution. Businesses should help the world stay green.

Lesson 5 Page 41

2 Listen to a conversation in a shop and answer the questions.

1. A dress.
2. She wants it for her brother's birthday.
3. She doesn't like yellow.
4. It is a bit big/It is the wrong size.
5. She tries it on and then buys it.
6. It is a beautiful, blue dress.

3 Listen again and put these phrases in the order that you hear them.

a 6 b 2 c 7 d 3
e 1 f 5 g 4

Lesson 6 Page 42

1 Read the advert and answer the questions.

1. Suggested: A school girl
2. It was a present but she already has one that is the same.
3. Students' own answers.

2 Read the advert again and complete the first half of the table.

To sell:	a handbag
Age:	new
Colour:	black
Material:	leather
Size:	large
Price:	LE 500

Lesson 7 Page 43

2 Write a description of four things using two or more adjectives.

1 She is wearing a nice, long, blue scarf.
2 She is wearing a long, thin, leather belt.
3 She has a small, brown, leather handbag.
4 She is wearing casual, blue cotton trousers.
5 She is wearing a long, expensive, gold necklace.
6 She is wearing a smart, black, cotton top.

3 Choose the correct word.

1. this
2. ones
3. those
4. that
5. ones/ones
6. This

4 Complete the conversation in a shop.

1. help 2. like 3. try 4. changing
5. fit 6. size 7. take

5 Write a short advert to sell these sunglasses.

I'm selling a pair of cool, new, blue plastic sunglasses. Good for a beach holiday! The price is only LE 150. Email me for more information.



WB Answers

Page 93

1 Complete the table with the items of clothing. Can you add any words?

head / face	legs	feet	body / neck
head scarf	trousers	trainers	belt
sunglasses	skirt	sandals	necklace
earrings	shorts	boots	galabeya
		shoes	scarf

2 Describe the two people below. Think about the following.

In photo 1, the woman is wearing a white blouse and a headscarf. I think she is wearing a black skirt, too. Her clothes are smart and traditional. I think her clothes look comfortable and I like what she is wearing because she looks nice.

In photo 2, the man is wearing a galabeya and a headscarf. His clothes are casual and traditional. They are not very colourful. I think his clothes look comfortable for his work; he is perhaps a fisherman and he is outside in the hot sun. I like what he is wearing, because I prefer to wear jeans.

Page 94

1 Match the objects with the materials they are usually made of.

1.c 2.d 3.a 4.b 5.f 6.e

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1.a 2.b 3.c 4.b 5.a

3 Describe the things in the pictures using the words in brackets.

1. It's a long, striped, plastic snake.
2. It's a beautiful, long, black car.
3. They're old, brown, leather boots.

Page 95

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1.c 2.a 3.a

2 Choose the correct words to complete the dialogue.

1. These 2. those 3. ones
4. ones 5. this 6. one

Page 96

1 Match the opposites. You can use a dictionary.

1.d 2.b 3.a 4.c

2 Complete the article with these words.

1. crop 2. industry 3. perfect
4. picked 5. chemicals 6. soft
7. luxury 8. take

3 Read the article again and answer the questions.

1. It makes a lot of money.
2. People often use chemicals before they can use it to make clothes. Bamboo material is not very soft.
3. Because cotton is softer than bamboo.
4. Students' own answers.

Page 97

1 Match to make phrases.

1.c 2.e 3.d 4.a 5.b.

2 Complete the dialogue with these words.

1. special 2. smart 3. that 4. one
5. changing 6. fit 7. try 8. take

Lesson 6

Page 98

1 Complete the table with these words.

adjective	material	object
cool	leather	chest of drawers
fantastic	linen	handbag
old	metal	headphones
striped	plastic	jacket
useful	wooden	tool

2 Which of the objects in Exercise 1 is it trying to sell?

chest of drawers

3 Read and correct the underlined words in this advert.

1. buy 2. one 3. wood 4. expensive

Page 99

1 Complete the sentences with these words.

1. casual 2. trainers 3. occasion
4. smart 5. cotton 6. earrings
7. try 8. belt

Read the descriptions. Can you add an adjective?

1. linen 2. brown 3. wooden
4. gold 5. big

Make these sentences plural.

1. How much are those necklaces in the window?
2. Those birds are flying very high.
3. Should I buy the red chairs or the black ones?
4. I really like these pairs of trousers.
5. These books are funny, but those ones are very boring!

Unit 11

SB Answers

Lesson 1

Page 44

Discuss:

a plant trees b pick up rubbish
c reuse mobile phones d install solar panels
e save wildlife f recycle plastic bottles

Find:

They want to plant new trees in the mangrove forest.

Page 45

1 Match each post with one of the photos from page 44.

1.e 2.a 3.c

Read the posts again. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?

1. T
2. F (He says it is dangerous to save wildlife from the flood water, but his father knows how to keep him safe.)
3. T
4. F (They are going to plant trees on the roof of the school.)
5. F (It is best to reuse parts of old mobile phones.)

Choose the correct word.

1. later this year 2. next week 3. tomorrow.

Make questions about your future intentions. Then ask and answer the questions in pairs.

1. What are you going to do at the weekend?
2. Where are you going to go for your next holiday?
3. How are you going to improve your English?
4. Are you going to recycle your mobile phone when it's old?

Lesson 2

Page 46

1 What is going to happen? Match the photos with the sentences.

1.e 2.d 3.f 4.a 5.c 6.b.

2 Listen and complete the sentences with the correct form of these verbs to say what is going to happen.

1. They are going to be late.
2. Huda is going to go swimming.
3. He's going to get up.
4. They are going to get off the bus.
5. Farida is going to win the race.
6. Omar is going to go to bed.

Page 47

5 Listen to a radio programme about beautiful places in the world and check your answers to Exercise 4.

1. It is Wadi Rum in Jordan.
2. It is a desert with mountains, desert plants and wildlife.
3. There are problems with rubbish, water, tourists damaging wildlife and hunters killing animals.

6 Listen to the programme again and complete the table.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROBLEMS	1. Tourists leave rubbish. 2. Some tourists drive across the desert which can damage plants and wildlife. 3. Hotels use lots of water. 4. Hunters kill desert animals.

Lesson 3

Page 48

2 Listen to a science teacher talking about drones and check your answers to Exercise 1.

1. They can be used for fun, for taking photos and for deliveries.
2. They are going to be used for deliveries, for helping wildlife, for doing some dangerous jobs and for planting trees.

3 Listen again and answer the questions.

1. It means you can control drones from the ground.
2. They don't make much noise or cause as much air pollution.
3. They can see if there are any problems in places where people can't go.
4. Checking wind turbines.
5. They can drop seeds onto the ground in places that people can't go to.

5 Put the time expressions in the correct order from now to the future.

1 in five minutes 2 this afternoon/evening
3 tomorrow 4 the day after tomorrow
5 next week 6 in 10 days' time
7 in three weeks

Page 49

1 Complete the sentences. Use a dictionary if you don't know the meaning of a word.

1 tomorrow / 11th 2 8.30 am Sunday
3 coral reefs 4 mangrove forest
5 Hotshbe / 6 am 6 sharing

Lesson 4 Page 50

1 Discuss this question in pairs.
It is about young people who have invented things to help the environment.

2 Look at the words in bold in the article. Match the words and the definitions.
1 filters 2 bacteria 3 system
4 location 5 chemicals 6 green

4 Read the article again and answer the questions.
1 It kills wildlife.
2 It has arms with filters on them. These filters take the plastic out of the sea water, without hurting sea life.
3 She saw children in India drinking water from a dirty canal.
4 She uses light from the sun.

Lesson 5 Page 51

1 Discuss these questions in pairs.
a star gazing b bird watching
c hiking in the desert d diving
e rock climbing f canoeing

2 Which two of the activities from Exercise 1 do they talk about?
rock climbing, star gazing

3 Listen again and answer the questions.
1 He thinks it is scary, he is helping his father with something.
2 Yes, he does.
3 He thinks he will get cold and bored.
4 They are meeting outside Amir's house at 10.30.

4 Listen again and put these phrases in the order that you hear them.
a4 b1 c5 d2 e6 f3

Lesson 6 Page 52

1 Read the postcard and answer the questions.
1. She's in Siwa.
2. She's sitting by the water and watching the sunset.
3. She's staying with her parents' friends.
4. Because Heba and her family arrived very late, but the friends wanted to get up and make dinner; and they bring fresh dates every day.
5. They went to Shali Fortress and the Siwa museum.
6. She's looking forward to visiting the Siwa salt lake.

2 Find time expressions in the postcard for the following.
1 present - today, at the moment, every day
2 past - the day before yesterday, yesterday morning
3 Future - tomorrow

3 Read and correct the underlined mistakes in these sentences.
1 visited 2 are staying
3 are arriving 4 am looking

Lesson 7 Page 53

1 Look at the photos. What is going to happen? What are the people going to do.
1. She's going to get a taxi.
2. He is going to play tennis / hit the ball.
3. He is going to feed the cows / animals.
4. She is going to paint a picture.

2 Make two dialogues using these words. Then role-play the dialogues.

1
A : What are you doing at the weekend?
B : On Saturday morning, I'm having a piano lesson. In the afternoon, I'm meeting my cousin.
A : Aren't you going to the book club on Saturday afternoon?
B : No, I'm not going this weekend. Are you going?

2
A : Look at those black clouds. It's going to rain!
B : Yes, it's going to be very windy, too.
A : I'm going to close all the windows.

3 Write a reply to the text message in your notebook.
Hi
I'm doing my homework this afternoon but I will call you when I have finished. Then I'll help with the English homework if I can. We studied the future in class last week.
Yes, I am free on Saturday morning and I'd love to come. It sounds fun. What time can we meet?

WB Answers

Page 100

1 Match the words with their meanings.
1.d 2.f 3.a 4.b 5.c 6.e

2 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the words from Exercise 1.
1 saved 2 solar panels
3 install 4 reduce
5 repair 6 wind turbines

3 Listen and check your answers to Exercise 2.
1 The boy and his father are going to watch a football match.
2 The man is going to fly to Londonrigo on a plane.
3 The woman is going to make a cake.

Page 101

1 Match to make phrases for environmental.
1 b 2 c 3 d 4 a

2 Many adjectives end in -al. Complete the table.
1 environmental 2 nature 3 musical 4 traditional

3 Choose the correct words.
1 environment 2 traditional 3 natural
4 music 5 environmental

4 What do you think is going to happen? Write sentences.
1 It is going to rain.
2 Number Four/The girl is going to win the race.
3 The waiter is going to fall over.
4 The man's hat is going to blow away / come off. / The wind is going to blow off the man's hat.

Page 102

1 Complete the sentences with these words.
1 mangrove 2 conservation
3 control 4 drone

2 Read Judy's diary and choose the correct time expressions.
1 this evening 2 tomorrow
3 the day after tomorrow 4 next week
5 in nine days' time

3 Listen and complete Khaled's diary.
1 See a play 2 Play basketball
3 Help my uncle 4 Take my cousins to the desert
5 Fly to Greece

Page 103

1 Complete the sentences with these words.
1 filter 2 location
3 system 4 bacteria

2 Complete the table. Can you add any words?

water	land
sand	desert
lake	forest
river	jungle
sea	mountain
Suggested: ocean	Suggested: farm

3 Read the article on Student's Book page 99. Choose the correct answer.
1 e 2 c 3 d 4 d

Page 104

1 Match to make activities.
1 c 2 a 3 d 4 b

2 Complete the dialogue with these words.
1 scary 2 get 3 bored
4 fun 5 love

3 Are the following expressions positive [✓], negative[✓] or not sure[?]?
1. [✗] 2. [✗] 3. [✓]
4. [?] 5. [✓] 6. [✓]

Page 105

1 Put these time expressions in order from the past to the future.
1. the day before yesterday 2. yesterday
3. at the moment 4. tomorrow
5. in three days' time

2 Read Hamdi's email and circle the correct time expressions from Exercise 1.
1. At the moment 2. Yesterday
3. The day before yesterday 4. Tomorrow
5. in three days' time

3 Read the email again and answer the questions.
1. He is walking in the desert.
2. It was very hot.
3. He went diving in the coral reefs at Shoura at Manqueta.
4. He wants to see the beautiful birds that live at Wadi Kid.
5. He is going to be home on Saturday.

Page 106

1 Choose the correct words.
1. solar panels 2. cause
3. land 4. environmental

2 Answer the questions with going to.
1. He is going to go swimming.
2. The Blue team are going to win.
3. No, she is not going to catch the train.
4. Because it is going to be cold/wet.
5. They are going to go to Japan.

3 Match to make sentences.
1.c 2.d 3.e 4.b 5.a

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets to talk about future arrangements.
1 is playing 2 is leaving
3 are painting 4 is not working
5 Are / walking

Unit 12

SB Answers

Lesson 1 **Page 54**

☐ **Research:**
Papau New Guinea (with around 840 languages)

☐ **Find:**
People speak more than 2,100 languages in Africa

Page 55

3 What type of learner do you think would prefer doing these things? Write R (Reading and writing), S (Seeing), D (Doing) or L (Listening).

1. L 2. S 3. R 4. S
5. D 6. L 7. D 8. R

Lesson 2 **Page 56**

1 Circle the correct words.

1. fail 2. pass 3. decide

3 What jobs do they hope to do?

Fares : Manager of the family shop
Nevine : Doctor

4 Write F (Fares) or N (Nevine).

1. F 2. N 3. F 4. N
5. F 6. N 7. N 8. F

Page 57

5 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. was 2. wanted
3. will be 4. is
5. will learn
6. am starting/am going to start
7. am going to take/am taking
8. will pass

Lesson 3 **Page 58**

1 Check the meaning of these words and phrases in a dictionary, then discuss these questions in pairs.

1. Sounds = any noise you make (e.g. clapping, stamping, shouting, animal noises, etc.) Voice = noises only with your mouth (talking, singing, screaming, etc.) Speaking = using words
2. People mostly use speaking and writing.
3. Animals mostly use sounds and perhaps body language.

3 What types of communication from Exercise 1 does Dr Ahmed talk about?.

He talks about body language, sounds, voice, speaking, eye contact and facial expressions.

4 Listen again and check your answers to Exercise 2.

1. F (They can understand when someone is angry, for example)
2. T
3. F (They use other forms of communication)
4. T 5. T
6. F (They also make a noise when they are frightened, for example.)

Page 59

5 Work in pairs.

Advice : How about...?, You should..., Why don't you...?
Opinions : In my view..., I think..., In my opinion...
Suggestions : Let's..., Shall we...?, What about...? We could....

6 Read this post from the internet. What is the girl's problem?

Her older sister does not want to talk to her.

8 Write a reply to Radwa in your notebook. Use some of the phrases from Exercise 5.

What about trying to do something together that you both like? You could watch your favourite film or go shopping. In my opinion, if she is talking to her friends, you should wait until she's finished. How about spending more time with your friends, too?.

Lesson 4 **Page 60**

2 Read the text quickly and answer the questions.

1. Three
2. It connects you to the international community.

3 Look at the words in bold in the text. Match them to their meanings.

1. identities 2. connects 3. experts
4. advantages 5. national 6. dialect
7 multilingual.

4 Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. a dialect, a national language and a European language (like English, French and Portuguese)
2. They connect people to their own community, the country and international communities.
3. You can talk to different people/in different ways and it helps you understand both your home and the world better.

Lesson 5 **Page 61**

3 What do you need to do for it? Complete the study plan.

I should:
- study with friends sometimes so we can help each other.
- remember to take breaks for food, exercise and to relax.
- go to bed early. I will learn better if I'm not tired.

Lesson 6 **Page 62**

Read the advert again and answer the questions.

1. They come from around the world.
2. It is in the south of England.
3. They study English in the mornings.
4. They do sports and other activities.
5. They visit famous places in England, like London or Oxford.

You would like to go to Hapstone House. Complete the form.

Personal statement: I would like to study at Hapstone House because I want to improve my English. I think English is very important for my studies and my life. I would also like to visit England because I think it will be very different to Egypt and very interesting. I think it would be good to study with people from other countries and learn about their lives. In my opinion, if I study at Hapstone House, I will learn lots.

Lesson 7 **Page 63**

Match the words and the definitions.

1. pass 2. disappointed 3. voice
4. multilingual 5. organised 6. improve

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. didn't use to go 2. is studying
3. went 4. didn't understand/speak
5. was doing/visited 6. are going to go/are going

Work in pairs. Take it in turns to read a sentence from list 1. The other person should answer using an expression from list 2.

I don't understand my homework. - You should ask your teacher for help.
I want to learn to draw. - Why don't you join art classes?
We have an exam tomorrow! - Shall we study together?
Do you think it's good to speak lots of languages?
- In my opinion, it's really useful to speak lots of languages!
My house is too noisy to study in. - You should study in the library.
I don't know what job I want to do when I'm older.
- From my point of view, you should find something you enjoy.

WB Answers

Page 107

1 Complete the sentences with these words.

1. take notes 2. Learners
3. repair 4. mostly

2 What sort of learners are the following? Choose the correct words.

1. writing 2. seeing things
3. listening 4. doing things

Page 108

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of these words.

1. failed 2. proud 3. disappointed
4. pass 5. decided

2 Match to make sentences.

1. b 2. c 3. e 4. a 5. d

3 Choose the correct words.

1. didn't use to have 2. come
3. are taking 4. had
5. are going to build 6. will cut.

Page 109

1 Read and choose the correct form of communication.

1. sounds 2. body language 3. touch
4. eye contact 5. facial expressions

3 Listen and check your answers to Exercise 2, then role-play the dialogue.

1. point of view 2. expressions 3. think
4. body 5. should 6. Let's
7. How

Page 110

1 Complete the crossword.

Across
1. dialect 3. national 5. advantage
6. expert 7. multilingual

Down
2. connect 4. identity

2 Complete the text with the correct form of the words from Exercise 1. (there is one word you do not need).

1. expert 2. multilingual 3. national
4. identity 5. dialect 6. connects

3 Answer the questions.

1. Arabic

Page 111

1 The prefix dis- usually has a negative meaning. What is the opposite of these words? Be careful! One word is different.

1. connected 2. disadvantage
3. organised 4. pleased/happy

2 Choose the correct words.

1. connected 2. disappointed
3. a disadvantage 4. organised

3 Complete the study plan with these words.

1. Make 2. Write 3. Don't
4. Watch 5. Read 6. Work

Page 112

1 Mario is writing an email to an English language school. Read and correct the underlined words.

1. am 2. February
3. address 4. Road
5. don't 6. want to improve
7. next 8. will
9. - 10. hearing

2 Now complete Mario's application form for the English school.

Name : Mario Dollo
Age : 14
Date of birth: 14 February (+ year)
Nationality: Italian
Address: 7 North Road, Rome
Phone number: 889900
Personal statement: (Suggested) I want to study at your school because I need to improve my English for my exams next year. I think I will enjoy your course and also your sports activities.

Page 113

1 Match to make phrases. Which is one word?

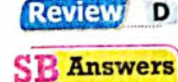
1.d 2.e 3.c 4.b 5.c
Multilingual is one word.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct time expression.

1. at the moment 2. usually
3. Last week 4. Next Monday
5. In the future

3 Complete the text with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

1. used to help 2. was walking
3. did not want 4. took
5. heard 6. am going to start
7. will be 8. love.



Review D

SB Answers

Lesson 1 **Page 64**

1 What information is in the letter?

Information that they will need for the trip.

2 Listen again and complete the form.

1. Camping 2. desert
3. 1 0 th 4. eight
5. 1 3 th 6. six
7. loose 8. warm
9. trainers 10. camera

5 Write a postcard to a friend. Include the following information.

We arrived yesterday and we put up our tents. Then we went for a walk. While we were walking in the desert, we saw a big bird! It was beautiful. I like cooking on the fire and sleeping in the tent. Tomorrow we are going to learn about the rocks in the desert. I'm looking forward to visiting the people who live in the desert, too.

Regards

Lesson 2 **Page 65**

1 Read the article about a shop and choose the correct words

1. On 2. environment-friendly
3. talked 4. are working
5. luxury, Egyptian cotton
6. worked 7. saw
8. was picking 9. wanted 10. at

2 Read the article again and answer the questions.

1. The Eco Shop
2. It will sell local fruit and vegetables, luxury Egyptian cotton and other local things.
3. It only sells things that are environment-friendly. You can recycle glass, plastic and paper.
4. People can learn how to cook and sew.
5. She saw a lot of plastic bags used for things from other countries on the beach.
6. Students' own answers.

WB Answers

Page 114

1 Choose the correct words.

1. communication 2. developed
3. used to type 4. started
5. voices 6. are speaking
7. are going to know 8. expressions

2 Read the article again and answer the questions.

1. They have developed.
2. They used to type messages using special letters on their phones.
3. They started to touch the screens on their phones to send messages.
4. They can now understand people's voices.
5. Students' own answers

3 Complete the dialogue with these words.

1. climb 2. one
3. scary 4. point of view
5. should 6. leather
7. not 8. size
9. fit 10 let's

Page 115

5 Match the people to three of the photographs.

1. galabeya 2. scarf 3. casual
4. T-shirt 5. cotton 6. special
7. traditional 8. loose
Picture b: Deena
Picture c: Tarek
Picture d: Osama

5 Write a description of the person in the other photograph.

She is wearing casual clothes. She is wearing a headscarf and a loose, long, blue and white shirt.
She is wearing a blue cotton jacket and casual cotton trousers.

7 Match to make study tips.

1.d 2.e 3.a 4.b 5.c

End of Term Practice Answers

1 Listen and choose the correct

1. a. few things 2. b. Hala likes healthy food.
3. c. cut the carrots 4. b. fourteen

2 Complete the following dialogue:

1. time
2. Shall I bring some books
3. good idea
4. We'll need to write down important notes.
5. You're right!

3 Read the text. Then answer the questions:

A) Answer

1. Because their brain doesn't understand it.
2. To train their brain to eat more healthily

B) Choose

3. b. ate it and didn't like it.
4. a. know because you have seen it before
5. d. a and b

4 Choose the correct answer

1. b. should see 2. c. is not able
3. d. any 4. b. a little 5. c. how to
6. a. translate 7. b. pay 8. d. energy
9. c. heat 10. a. crying

5 Read and complete with

1. invention 2. action 3. add 4. visiting

6 Choose one of the following:

students' own answers



Listening material

Unit 7

Azhar Listening

It's important not to become addicted to technology. If you feel you can't live without your phone, you should try taking a break every day for an hour or more.

Test Listening

Online shopping is great! Firstly, it saves me time. I don't want to spend lots of time travelling to the shops. I can stay at home and buy the things I want in a few minutes.

Unit 8

Azhar Listening

Fava beans and falafel are very popular in Egypt. They are really delicious. People in Egypt like to eat them for breakfast.

Test Listening

Durian fruits grow in Indonesia and Malaysia. Some fruits can be 30 centimetres long. They are hard and green on the outside, but soft and yellow on the inside. Durian fruits are very healthy and taste delicious.

Unit 9

Azhar Listening

Eman Dadr is a musician. She is able to play the violin well. She started playing it when she was six.

Test Listening

Last month, I visited the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art in Cairo. Egypt is famous for its ancient art, but I was interested in seeing art by Egyptians from the 20th and 21st centuries.

Review C

I've bought a nice book. The articles are always interesting to read and they have fantastic photographs, too. I really like the cartoons because they make me laugh!

Unit 10

Azhar Listening

I'm Leila. I have two nice pairs of sandals. I usually wear them in summer. They are my favourite. I bought them last year.

Test Listening

Egypt is famous for growing crops to make material. The Ancient Egyptians grew plants by the Nile to make linen. Almost everyone wore clothes made of linen and they also used the plants to make baskets.

Unit 11

Azhar Listening

Drones can fly, but they don't need a person to fly them. We can use remote controls. This means we can control drones from the ground.

Test Listening

There's a lot of air pollution from the traffic in our city and this is very unhealthy. Trees are good for the environment and help reduce air pollution.

So next week, we're going to plant trees on the roof of our school and make a school roof garden.

Unit 12

Azhar Listening

When I was young, I wanted to be a scientist. Now I find science very difficult so I don't think I will be a scientist.

Test Listening

I have an older sister (she's three years older than me). We used to be best friends, but now she doesn't want to talk to me very much. She is always on the internet or talking to people on her phone.

Review D

There is a lot of air pollution where I live. My neighbours never recycle their rubbish. In my view, it is important to recycle. We should take plastic and glass out of bins and recycle it.

End of Term Practice

Amira: Hi, Injy. Do you know how to cook?

Injy: Yes. I can cook a few things. What do you want to make?

Amira: Shall we make a cake for Hala? It's her birthday tomorrow.

Injy: Good idea! She likes healthy food, so if we want to make her something healthy, we should make a carrot cake.

Amira: Okay. We will need a recipe. Here's one on my phone.

Injy: What do we need?

Amira: We need some flour, a lot of carrots, a little sugar and some eggs.

Injy: Good, I think we have all of those. What shall I do, Amira?

Amira: Perhaps you could mix the flour and sugar in a bowl, Injy. I'll cut the carrots.

Injy: Okay. How old will Hala be?

Amira: She is fourteen tomorrow.

Injy: If she is fourteen, we should put fourteen nuts on the cake when it's cooked. She likes nuts.

Amira: That's a good idea!

Exam 1

Reda went to Aswan last week. He travelled there by train. He went there on holiday. He stayed there for a week. It was a nice holiday.

Exam 2

Nadia is my cousin. She is blind. She likes music and plays the violin. She plays it in the orchestra. I'm proud of her.

Exam 3

Darein is my sister. She uses her mobile to chat with her friends. She loves social media. She also likes watching videos.

Exam 4

Ahmed is on the school athletics team. Ahmed goes running in the morning. Ahmed eats fish for lunch. Ahmed eats good food to give him energy.

Exam 5

There is a lot of air pollution in our city. The pollution is caused by factories. Pollution is very unhealthy. Trees help reduce the air pollution.

Exam 6

Lama bought a mobile. She ordered it a week ago. Lama wants to change it because the screen is damaged.

Exam 7

Amr ordered a new game last week on a website. When he opened the box, he found the game for children aged 6-9 by mistake. He was not happy about this because he wanted to play the game with his friends who are all aged 13 or 14.

Exam 8

To be healthy, you should sleep well. Make sure you have a balanced diet. Eat some of all types of food. Don't worry too much.

Exam 9

Ali went to Luxor last weekend. He went there with his family. They stayed in a hotel. They stayed there for four days.

Exam 10

Zaid likes the desert. He likes it because it is quiet. At night, he wears heavy clothes because it is always cold there. He is very excited.

Exam 11

We have a lot of air pollution in our country. People should plant trees because they are good for the environment. They can reduce pollution.

Exam 12

Yasser works as a volunteer for a charity which helps to clean our beaches. At the weekend, they go to the beach and pick up the rubbish that people left behind. They always collect plastic bottles to recycle them. Yasser enjoys his work very much.

Exam 13

Last weekend, Ali went to Luxor with his family. They stayed in a hotel. They stayed there for seven days.

Exam 14

Cars will be different in the future. They will be electric. They will use electricity. This is better for the environment.

Exam 15

I ordered a mobile last week. I wanted to change it because the screen was destroyed.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past participle
beat	يخفق/يضرب	beat	beaten
become	يصبح	became	become
break	يكسر	broke	broken
bring	يحضر	brought	brought
build	يبني/ينشئ	built	built
buy	يشتري	bought	bought
catch	يلحق بـ / يمسك	caught	caught
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
come	يأتي	came	come
cost	يكلف	cost	cost
drive	يقود (سيارة مثلاً)	drove	driven
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
find	يجد	found	found
fly	يطير	flew	flown
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
get up	يستيقظ	got up	got up
give	يعطي	gave	given
grow	ينمو	grew	grown
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
hurt	يؤذي - يؤلم	hurt	hurt
keep	يحتفظ بـ	kept	kept
learn	يتعلم	learnt / learned	learnt / learned
leave	يغادر - يترك	left	left

lend	يقرض / يسلف	lent	lent
make	يصنع	made	made
mean	يعني	meant	meant
pay	يدفع (مالاً)	paid	paid
put	يضع	put	put
ride	يركب (دراجة ... الخ)	rode	ridden
ring	يرن	rang	rung
send	يرسل	sent	sent
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
sew	يخيط	sewed	sewn / sewed
show	يعرض	showed	shown
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
smell	يشم	smelt / smelled	smelt / smelled
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
spell	يتهجى	spelt / spelled	spelt / spelled
spend	يقضي - ينفق	spent	spent
take	يأخذ	took	taken
teach	يعلّم	taught	taught
throw	يرمي - يلقي - يتخلص من	threw	thrown
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
upset	يزعج	upset	upset
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
win	يفوز	won	won

امتحـانـات عامـــة على المنـهـج بأكمـله



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1- Judy plays ...... every week.

(a) football (b) volleyball (c) basketball (d) squash

2- She needs to be ......

(a) healthy (b) unhealthy (c) fat (d) thin

3- She is allergic to ......

(a) beans (b) fish (c) nuts (d) milk

4- Judy eats a lot of ...... because it helps to make her strong.

(a) nuts (b) fish (c) oranges (d) apples

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Haytham is calling a shop for a problem.

Caller : What is the problem?

Haytham : I ordered a game for children aged 6-9 by mistake.

Caller : When (1) ....?

Haytham : The delivery was yesterday.

Caller : (2) .... are you?

Haytham : I'm 13.

Caller : (3) .... not happy about the game?

Haytham : Yes, I want to (4) .... it with my friends.

Caller : What would you like to do?

Haytham : I would (5) ....

to change the game for a new one that is for the correct age.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Dear Mariam,

I am spending a wonderful holiday. The island, where I am now, is beautiful and the weather is sunny every day. I arrived on Saturday morning and went to the beach. I had a long swim and then I got a sunbath all afternoon, but I didn't put on sunscreen for protection so I got sunburn! After that, I sat under my umbrella and listened to the CD you gave me for my birthday. It was nice. On Sunday, I met some friends there and we played volleyball on the beach with some people. They were all very friendly. Yesterday, I went shopping and I bought you a nice present. I hope you will like it. See you when I get home.

Love

Menna

A. Answer the following questions:

1- Where is Menna?

2- Why did she got sunburn?

3- How did Mariam get the CD?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- Menna played .... on the beach.

a football b handball c volleyball d basketball

5- The weather on the island is .... every day.

a snowy b rainy c cloudy d sunny

6- Menna went .... and she bought Mariam a nice present.

a swimming b shopping c playing d listening

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- If you ride a ...., you will go fast on two wheels.

a camel b car c bus d motorbike

2- The cakes tasted ...., so no one liked it.

a delicious b nice c horrible d wonderful

3- There are many different forms of ...., for example spaghetti and lasagna.

a cheese   b pasta   c fruits   d vegetables

4- Archaeologists found .... in the old site.

a pottery   b scenery   c website   d show

5- The student .... some difficulties, but he was able to succeed.

a hid   b had   c took   d gave

6- They .... a new phone line in the apartment.

a picked   b planted   c installed   d recycled

7- Osman eats .... fruits and vegetables because they are healthy.

a rarely   b mostly   c hardly   d never

8- I don't think people......... under the sea in the future.

a lives   b live   c lived   d will live

9- I don't like this soup. There is too .... salt in it.

a much   b many   c enough   d few

10- Maggy lent her .... handbag to her sister Shaza.

a leather, yellow, small   b yellow, leather, small

c small, yellow, leather   d leather, small, yellow

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1- Do you think we .... (have) flying cars in the future.

2- Could you get .... (a little) tomatoes?

3- .... (Able) this engineer build us a big house?

4- You .... (shall) come to stay with me when you feel bored.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Life in the future"

....

....

....

....

....



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- The speaker loves ______.

a cakes   b hawawshi   c meat   d juice

2- Hawawshi is ______ to make.

a hard   b natural   c unusual   d easy

3- You put some ______ and vegetables inside the bread

a cheese   b milk   c meat   d pasta

4- You cook it in the ______.

a fridge   b oven   c table   d room

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Muhammad is asking Mustafa about online shopping.

Muhammad : Do you like online shopping?

Mustafa : Yes, online shopping is ① ____________________!

Muhammad : Why do you like shopping online?

Mustafa : ② ____________________ it saves me time.

Muhammad : ③ ____________________ buy online?

Mustafa : Yes, it is easy to buy things online.

Muhammad : What type of things ④ ____________________?

Mustafa : I always order tablets and mobile phones.

Muhammad : Will you do all your shopping online when you are older?

Mustafa : ⑤ ____________________

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Ramy works in a restaurant in the centre of Cairo. He goes to work at 5 p.m, but yesterday at 5 p.m, he wasn't on the bus, he was in a taxi going to hospital. He was very sick! Usually, he works in the kitchen all evening, but yesterday he wasn't in the kitchen. He was in the X-ray department of the hospital because the doctors were worried about his stomach pains. He ate bad food from his restaurant!

Normally, at 11 p.m, Ramy takes a bus to go home after finishing at the restaurant, but yesterday at 11 p.m, he was still in the hospital and he was still unhappy and sick. He was in bed and he was very hot - 40 degrees! In the morning, he was better and the doctors were pleased.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- Where does Ramy work?

2- How was the food Ramy ate?

3- Do you like eating outside? Why / Why not?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- Ramy was in a bed because he was ....

a sick b happy c well d pleased

5- The doctors were worried about ....

a the X-ray b Ramy's pains
c the restaurant d the hospital

6- Ramy usually works in the .... of the restaurant.

a hospital b stomach c bed d kitchen

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- The telephone and the internet are great ....

a invents b inventions c translate d translations

2- .... media help everyone communicate with their friends and relatives.

a Mobile   b TV   c Telephone   d Social

3- .... are a kind of hard dry fruits.

a Vegetables   b Liquids   c Nuts   d Spaces

4- I live alone in a big house. I am .... bored all the time.

a feeling   b filling   c failing   d falling

5- Japanese people usually .... bikes to their work.

a drive   b ride   c walk   d escape

6- Please, ... the speed of the car, you are driving so fast.

a reduce   b raise   c produce   d increase

7- She .... the driving test. She has to practise a lot.

a felt   b passed   c repaired   d failed

8- Hossam will .... for our team next year.

a played   b playing   c play   d plays

9- Can I have some more sugar, please? There is .... in this tea.

a too much   b too many   c a few   d not enough

10- Mona studied two lessons today and left the other .... till tomorrow.

a ones   b one   c once   d none

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1- I'm sure if we .... (have) flying cars in the future.

2- .... (Poured) a little oil into a pan.

3- The bird wasn't able .... (fly) because it broke a wing.

4- I don't know how .... (do) calligraphy.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Are you for or against online shopping?"

....

....

....

....

....

Test 3

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- 'Durian fruits' grow in Indonesia and ......

a Egypt   b London   c America   d Malaysia

2- Some fruits can be ...... centimetres long.

a 40   b 30   c 20   d 10

3- They are hard and ...... on the outside.

a blue   b red   c green   d black

4- Some people don't want to eat them because they smell ......

a terrible   b salty   c wonderful   d sweet

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Rawan and Lama are talking about Lama's new phone.

Rawan : When did you order the phone?

Lama : Last week.

Rawan : ① .... the delivery?

Lama : ② .... was today.

Rawan : What was the ③ .... the phone?

Lama : The screen was damaged.

Rawan : ④ .... want to do?

Lama : I would ⑤ .... the phone for a new one that is not damaged.

Rawan : What do you want to know?

Lama : I want to know how I can do that.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I'm Fatma. I made friends with some girls on the internet last week. We didn't really know each other so there was no reason to chat. They were just quiet looking for someone to chat with them. The second time we met was when I went to the club with my brothers, Munir and Adel. Although we played during the day, I liked to go out and spend a nice time with these girls. Then I talked to **them** about our schools.

One day, I was walking home with some friends when I noticed one of the girls that we met in the club near our school. I didn't realise she was at the same school. When I knew that, I didn't know what to say but I was happy to see her again. Now, we are good friends.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- What did Fatma make last week?

2- How many brothers does Fatma have?

3- Do you make friends on the internet?

B. Answer the following questions:

4- Munir and Adel played with Fatma in the ....

a school   b street   c zoo   d club

5- The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to ....

a people on the internet   b the girls
c Munir and Adel   d Fatma, Munir and Adel

6- Fatma was walking home with her ....

a brothers   b cousins   c parents   d friends

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- That new road will change the sun's light .... electricity.

a from   b out   c of   d into

2- The policeman tried to catch the thieves who quickly ....

a disappeared   b killed   c hurt   d rode

3- Rice .... is a hot dessert made from rice cooked with milk and sugar.

a cream b pudding c cake d meal

4- To .... means to succeed in leaving a place where you don't want to be.

a park b present c escape d invite

5- It's a perfect crop because we planted it in a good.......... .

a sail b soil c floor d sea

6- I can't go out because I'm looking .... my little sister.

a up b at c after d from

7- He was .... that he failed his exams.

a happy b pleased c excited d disappointed

8- Next month, I .... in the third year of prep school.

a will be b am c was d have

9- Let's not go to the beach. There are .... people there today.

a too much b too many c much d a little

10- The express train to Aswan is .... than the stopping train.

a faster b fast c as fast d fastest

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1- Computers .... (design) and invent new machines soon.

2- Mum put .... (any) meat and vegetables inside the bread.

3- Policemen in my country .... (able) make us feel safe.

4- I like your funny stories. Please, tell me .... (ones).

E Writing

4 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

to your friend telling her about a problem you had with an online delivery.

- Your friend's name is Sara and her email address is sara77@gmail.com.

- Your name is Mariam and your email address is mariam08@hotmail.com.

....

....

....

....



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Last month, the speaker visited the Textile Museum in __________.

a Giza b Aswan c Alexandria d Cairo

2- The museum has lots of __________ from different times in history.

a dresses b clothes c books d socks

3- The speaker thought the clothes from Ancient Egypt were __________.

a old b clean c new d fantastic

4- The __________ showing people wearing the clothes really teach you about life in the past.

a girls b statues c boys d women

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mariam is playing a game with Rawan.

Mariam : I will play a game with you.

Rawan : Really? What's ① ______________________________?

Mariam : It's about my favourite snack. ② ______________________________ and I guess what it is.

Rawan : OK! Does it get any sugar or salt in it?

Mariam : It has lots of sugar.

Somia : OK. Is your favourite snack juicy, spicy or sweet?

Mariam : It's juicy and sweet.

Somia : Is it sfenj?

Mariam : No, ③ ______________________________.

Rawan : I ④ ______________________________ it's rojak.

Mariam : You ⑤ ______________________________.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Yara will be 13 next week. She will have a birthday party. She will invite all her friends and relatives. It will be a big party. They will eat cakes, listen to music and play games. Her mother will make a big cake for her. She will make sandwiches, too. Her father will buy her a nice present. He says <u>it</u> will be a big surprise. The party will be at Yara's house. It is a big house. Yara will buy new clothes for that. She will buy a new pair of shoes. It will be a wonderful party. Yara is very excited. She knows it will be fun. Her family is really happy.

A. **Answer the following questions:**

1- Who will Yara invite to her birthday party?

2- What does the underlined word **"it"** refer to?

3- Where will Yara have her birthday party?

B. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4- Yara will be .... next week.

a fifteen b seventeen c thirteen d eighteen

5- Yara and her friends will play ....

a food b games c sandwiches d chess

6- Yara's family is very ....

a happy b tired c sad d useless

D. Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- You need to make a few .... in your paragraph, Saed.

a inventions b corrections c invents d predications

2- The two men took their torches and went inside the cave to .... it.

a invent b explore c invite d break

3- Could you put more olives on top of my ...., please?

a tea b spices c pizza d jam

4- Musical .... are usually expensive.

a instruments b experiments c portraits d centuries

5- **A:** What .... do you want your jacket?

B: X Large, please.

a colour b height c size d weight

6- Osman .... part in the running competition and won a trophy.

a took b gave c meant d talked

7- I was .... with the grade I got in my maths exam. I got 20 out of 50.

a delighted b disappointed c pleased d glad

8- I .... the next summer holiday in London.

a spend b spending c will spend d spent

9- You can choose your friends but you .... choose your family.

a are able to b can't c know how to d can

10- This is my shirt. The other .... is yours.

a once b one c only d none

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1- In the future, it .... (be) possible to travel into space.

2- She eats .... (lots) fish because it helps to make her strong.

3- I .... (doesn't) know how to dive, but I know how to swim.

4- Maggi .... (play) nice music now.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Healthy food"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- The speaker is having a fantastic time with his..........

a sisters b brothers c friends d family

2- They were in ....

a Siwa b Cairo c Giza d Aswan

3- They had a picnic on Fatanas ....

a Desert b Valley c Island d Farm

4- The speaker is sitting .... the water and watching the sunset.

a In b by c at d from

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Osama is asking Amr about healthy food.

Osama : What should I eat if I want to be healthy?

Amr : You (1) .... some of all types of food.

Osama : What are the examples of healthy snacks?

Amr : (2) .... and nuts.

Osama : How (3) .... of fruit and vegetables do people need a day?

Amr : One to two a day.

Osama : When is food healthy?

Amr : Food is usually healthy and good for you when (4) ....

Osama : How about sweets?

Amr : A lot of sugar is bad (5) ....

C Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Amr's school had a lot of activities last summer holiday. The library had a summer reading competition. It was to help improve reading during the summer. A lot of students did not want to read after school. This fun competition helped **them** read. There were two competitions. One for kids and one for teenagers. Every 5 books they read would get them a prize. There were different prizes. The prizes were music players, mobiles, and CDs. The more books they read, the better chance they had. Over 500 students took part in the competitions. They were all excited and many students won.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- What did Amr's school have last summer holiday?

....

2- How many students took part in the competitions?

....

3- What did the competition help to do?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- There were .... competitions at Amr's school.

a no b two c one d three

5- Every .... books they read would get them a prize.

a fifteen b fifty c five d fifty five

6- The underlined word **"them"** refers to ....

a mobiles b competitions c prizes d students

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- I think scientist can make .... about the future.

a translations b predications c invitations d corrections

2- I think we will .... no illnesses in the future.

a make b care c build d have

3- Remove the .... from the meat before you cook it.

a soap b bones c poems d sugar

4- The little girl .... when the dog frightened her.

a laughed b hugged c cried d felt

5- Many cleaning products contain .... that can be dangerous.

a camels b chemicals c musical d phones

6- The children were very .... that they couldn't go to the zoo.

a proud b fine c disappointed d pleased

7- A saw is a/an.......... for cutting wood.

a device b tool c knife d plane

8- If the weather .... nice tomorrow, we will go to the beach.

a is b be c are d will be

9- Blind people.......... see.

a able to b are able to c can d can't

10- I can't find my.......... shirt.

a new, green, cotton b green, new, cotton

c green, cotton, new d new, cotton, green

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1- Will you .... (bought) a plane if you have much money?

2- When she is playing netball, she drinks .... (a few) water.

3- .... (Does) you know how to buy things online?

4- I .... (not take) my exam next year.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Some unusual snacks you have tried"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- The speaker ordered a new ______ last week.

a mobile phone   b computer   c mouse   d printer

2- The delivery was ______.

a yesterday   b last Friday   c today   d last Monday

3- When the speaker opened the box, the ______ was damaged.

a keyboard   b button   c speaker   d screen

4- The speaker would like to ______ the phone for a new one.

a replace   b change   c buy   d sell

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Amal : Do you know how to make an omelette?

Huda : Yes, I think it's ① ....

Amal : ② .... the recipe for an omelette?

Huda : First, beat two eggs in a bowl with little milk. Add a little salt to the eggs and milk.

Amal : What should we do then?

Huda : Then, heat some butter in a frying ③ ....

Amal : What can we do after that?

Huda : ④ .... into the frying pan and cook vegetables into them in the butter.

Amal : What can we do when it's done?

Huda : When the omelette is ready, ⑤ .... it out of the frying pan and serve it with salad.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

One day, a wolf saw some sheep in a little house. He was hungry and he wanted to eat one of the sheep. He couldn't eat the sheep though, because the farmer and his dogs stopped him from going into the house. But then the wolf found the skin of a sheep on the ground and he put it on like a jacket. Now he looked like a sheep.

The wolf walked past the farmer and the dogs into the sheep's house. All the sheep thought that **he** was another sheep. The wolf was very happy. He ate the sheep one by one.

After some time, the skin started to fall off the wolf. Now the farmer and the dogs saw that he was really a wolf. They ran after him and they were able to catch him.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- What did the wolf want?

2- Who stopped the wolf from eating the sheep?

3- What did the wolf find on the ground?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- The wolf is a/an .... animal.

a lazy b weak c clever d honest

5- The underlined word **"he"** refers to the ....

a wolf b sheep c farmer d dog

6- The wolf ate.......... sheep.

a no b few c many d little

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- I have a new .... that helps me do exercise.

a dictionary b app c chair d drone

2- The two divers went down to explore the .... of the sea.

a button b river c beach d bottom

3- There is a lot of ---------- in meat, eggs and fish.

a sugar b sweets c protein d bone

4- A/An ---------- presents an opinion of a film, book or a play.

a review b event c scenery d invitation

5- We built a high wall around the farm to ---------- it.

a connect b protect c pick d prefer

6- Salma uses her ---------- to text her friends and to send emails.

a wildlife b rubbish c bottles d mobile phone

7- I felt ----------when my friends didn't come to my birthday party.

a disappointed b happy c fine d excited

8- If the teacher is ill tomorrow, you ---------- and ask about him.

a went b would go c should go d goes

9- We ---------- use computers to design a building.

a able to b can c know how d are able

10- One of ----------cars is mine.

a these b that c this d they

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1- Doaa -------- (come) to tomorrow's party.

2- I like mango juice but I -------- (wouldn't) like tea.

3- Shady ---------- (is) able to speak English, but he is able to speak French.

4- Mr Ayman bought -------- (this) house over there last week.

E Writing

6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

to your friend telling her about your favourite snack.

- Your friend's name is Hanaa and her email address is hanaa77@gmail.com.

- Your name is Judy and your email address is judy88@hotmail.com.



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Egyptian .... is famous all over the world.

a gold   b silver   c food   d cotton

2- Cotton from Egypt is very ....

a good   b bad   c cheap   d expensive

3- Cotton is often used to make luxury clothes and things for ....

a schools   b homes   c clubs   d hospitals

4- Many people work in the cotton ....

a farm   b field   c industry   d workshop

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ramy visited the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art.

Ramy : Last month, I visited the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art.

Dina : 1 .... it?

Ramy : It is in Cairo.

Dina : But I know that Egypt is famous for its ancient art.

Ramy : You are right. 2 ....
view, all Egyptian artists are really wonderful.

Dina : Why do you think that?

Ramy : 3 ....
they showed what life was like in Egypt in the past and now.

Dina : 4 .... does it cost to get in?

Ramy : The best thing about the museum is that it is free to visit!

Dina : 5 .... idea to visit this place.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Malak is a good girl. She is in prep two. Her teachers love her because she is clever. Malak washes her hands every day. She washes her hands with soap and water. She uses warm water. She washes her hands for 30 seconds. She turns off the water. She dries her hands on with a clean towel. Every few hours, she turns on the water and washes her hands. Malak has very clean hands. She does not have many germs on them. Germs cannot live on her clean hands. Viruses also can't live on them.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- Why can't germs live on Malak's hands?

2- How does Malak dry her hands?

3- What do you think of Malak?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- Malak's teachers love her because she is ....

a bad b naughty c cold d clever

5- Malak washes her hands with .... and water.

a soup b soap c sap d soft

6- The underlined word "**clean**" is the opposite of ....

a dirty b happy c sad d fast

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- **A:** I think technology is bad for all of us. **B:** I disagree .... you.

a at b with c of d at

2- Fresh fruit is not very ....

a nice b healthy c good d old

3- Mum bought some fresh fruits from the market yesterday. They tasted ....

a old b smart c salty d delicious

4- .... is the things that happen in a film.

a Photography b Action c Review d Picnic

5- Ola is wearing leather .... on her feet.

a sandals b earrings c trousers d scarf

6- There was a flood and the problem was .... worse because of the heavy rain.

a throwing b catching c getting d saving

7- If we go to the park this afternoon, we .... our friends.

a would see b will see c see d saw

8- I've looked everywhere, but I .... able to find my mobile.

a wasn't b can't c don't d am not

9- Be careful! .... fast car may hit you.

a That b These c Then d Those

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1- I think you .... (get) ready if you have an exam.
2- This doctor .... (don't) know how to treat my illness.
3- A: What .... (can't) I do to solve this problem?
B: You can ask your father.
4- Taqwa .... (meet) a friend tomorrow.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"A review of a book you have read"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Ancient Egyptians' .... were simple.

a houses b clothes c shoes d children

2- They loved to wear ...., metal jewellery.

a light b cheap c heavy d expensive

3- They wore expensive leather ....

a shoes b handbags c earrings d sandals

4- Egyptians wore beautiful gold ....

a necklaces b clothes c shoes d sandals

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

A reporter is interviewing Eman Badr.

Reporter : What's your name?

Eman : Eman Badr.

Reporter : 1 ....
are you doing at the Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra?

Eman : I'm one of the 2 ....

Reporter : 3 .... do you play?

Eman : I play the violin.

Reporter : When did you 4 ....?

Eman : When I was six.

Reporter : Do you like being in the orchestra?

Eman : 5 .... I'm proud to be in the orchestra.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

It was the first day of school. Ahmed was in the first grade. He got on the school bus. It was a big yellow school bus. He did not know the kids on the bus. The kids on the bus did not know him. Many kids were talking. They were talking with one another. Ahmed sat in a seat by himself. He looked out the window. His mom was standing outside the window. He waved goodbye to his mom. She waved goodbye to him, too. The bus started to move. The bus was going to school. Another boy sat down next to Ahmed. He said hello to Ahmed. Ahmed said hello to him. The boy's name was Youssef. He was in the first grade. He said he was a new student. He didn't know anyone. Ahmed said he was a new student, too. He didn't know anyone, either.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- What did Ahmed's mother do?

2- What was the boy's name?

3- Why didn't the two boys know anyone?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- Ahmed was in grade ....

a one b two c three d four

5- The kids on the bus were ....

a eating b singing c studying d talking

6- Ahmed was a .... student.

a old b new c big d bad

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- They carried the injured people to hospital by ....

a plan b helicopter c drone d machine

2- .... food is really unhealthy.

a Fresh b Popular c Delicious d Salty

3- She has a very .... name. Her name is "Kogy".

a usual   b normal   c famous   d unusual

4- I visited an art museum yesterday. It had paintings of famous ....

a typists   b archaeologists   c dentists   d artists

5- Cotton is not a hard material, it's ....

a rough   b safe   c soft   d cheap

6- He .... some flowers and gave these to his mum.

a picked   b backed   c broke   d booked

7- At the end of each unit there is a series of exercises designed to help the ....

a traveller   b learner   c singer   d passenger

8- You will be safe if you .... near that dog.

a don't move   b moved   c doesn't move   d will move

9- She was afraid she wouldn't be able .... that difficult test.

a do   b does   c to do   d doing

10- He is going to .... swimming.

a going   b gone   c went   d go

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1- Scientists .... (find) new medicines in the future.

2- .... (Doesn't forget) to add a little salt.

3- Judy .... (go) to the library last night.

4- Look at those clouds, it .... (rain).

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Life in the future"



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- The speaker loves..........

a phones b computers c televisions d cameras

2- Old phones can be .... for the environment.

a good b bad c nice d heavy

3- The speaker started a project in .... to recycle mobile phones.

a home b field c farm d school

4- They're going to .... parts from the phones to repair other ones.

a buy b sell c reuse d throw

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Fahd has finished reading "Lord of the Flies".

Fahd : I finished reading "Lord of the Flies".

Adam : What is that?

Fahd : It is an adventure ① ....

Adam : Who wrote this story?

Fahd : The British writer William Golding.

Adam : What ② ....?

Fahd : It is about some schoolboys who have to live on an island after their plane lands in the sea and the pilot dies.

Adam : ③ .... happens after that?

Fahd : I won't tell you. You ④ .... this book to know.

Adam : ⑤ ...., it will be a very nice story. I'll read it.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The postman put the mail in the mailbox. Dad went outside. He said hello to the postman. Dad opened the mailbox and took out a magazine and two letters. One letter was from his sister. The other letter was from his brother. The magazine was for his wife. It was a garden magazine. His wife liked to work in the garden. She grew flowers and vegetables in the garden. Dad went back into the house. He opened both letters. His sister invited him to a birthday party. His brother invited him to a wedding. Dad enjoyed reading the letters. He enjoyed getting the invitations. He picked up the phone. He left a message for his sister. He would come to the birthday party. He also called his brother. He said he would come to the wedding.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- What did the postman put?

2- What did dad's wife like to grow?

3- Why did dad call his brother?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- The wife liked to work in the __________.

a school b garden c zoo d hospital

5- Dad' brother invited him to a __________.

a party b wedding c festival d journey

6- Dad left a message for his __________.

a wife b sister c brother d son

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Mum fried the onions in some _________ and made us a delicious meal.

a water b butter c sand d milk

2- My grandfather likes to wear loose __________ in summer.

a galabeyas b handbags c sheets d jumpers

3- There's a lot of air .... from the traffic in our city.

a nation b population c option d pollution

4- The truck travelled at a .... of 200 kph to get to Alex on time.

a weight b depth c speed d height

5- Mona is always active and full of ....

a water b energy c food d air

6- The thief .... from the policeman, but he was able to catch him.

a hid b hit c hugged d had

7- A good teacher encourages the .... and helps them to find out more.

a trainers b players c learners d thieves

8- If your friend is injured, you .... your teachers about that.

a will tell b would tell c told d should tell

9- .... these divers able to reach the sinking ship?

a Do b Is c Are d Have

10- I .... going to help my father to repair the broken door.

a 's b 're c 've d 'm

5 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1- When I'm 25, I .... (get) married.

2- **A:** .... (Would) you like milk?

B: No, I don't. I prefer juice.

3- I didn't use to understand English, but now I .... (spoke) it well.

4- Tamara won't wear her .... (long, cotton, green) skirt. It is dirty.

E Writing

6 **Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:**

to your friend Salah about someone in your family that you are proud of.

- Your name is Ramy and your email address is ramypost@gmail.com

- Your friend's email address is salah666@yahoo.com

....

....

....

....

....

....



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- The speaker visited the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art in ....

a Giza b Aswan c Alexandria d Cairo

2- .... is famous for its art.

a France b England c Egypt d America

3- In the museum, there was a .... called Al Madina by Mahmoud Said .

a painting b pottery c dress d sculpture

4- The speaker felt happy because the painting was very..........

a bad b colourful c clean d dirty

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mr Ashraf is buying a new pair of jeans.

Shopkeeper : Can I help you?

Mr Ashraf : Yes, ① .... to buy these jeans, but could I try them on first?

Shopkeeper : Of course. The ② .... is over there.

Mr Ashraf : Thank you.

Shopkeeper : Do they ③ .... you?

Mr Ashraf : No, they are too ④ .... Do you have bigger ones?

Shopkeeper : Yes, here you are.

Mr Ashraf : They are great.

Shopkeeper : Well! They're 200 pounds.

Mr Ashraf : Here is the money. ⑤ ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Experts believe that there are more than 2.100 languages spoken in Africa. Many African people speak three languages: their dialect, the national language and another European language such as English, French or Portuguese that they learn at school. This means they are multilingual! Of course many people speak more than three languages! People who speak different languages have lots of advantages. If you speak more than one language, you can talk to different people in different places and in different ways. When you are multilingual, you are able to understand both your home and the world better.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- Where do people in Africa usually learn European languages?

2- Why are people in Africa multilingual?

3- How is speaking more than one language useful?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- Speaking more than one language helps you .... your home and the world better.

a understand b speak c give d check

5- Experts believe that there are .... languages spoken in Africa.

a few b many c fewer d little

6- Many people in Africa speak .... languages.

a one b two c three d four

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- We are .... money to buy a new car next year.

a wasting b saving c building d driving

2- Why don't you try eating .... chicken in that restaurant?

a heavy b old c colourful d spicy

3- The flowers dad bought .... really wonderful.

a smelt b touched c heard d tasted

4- Some artists like to paint the .... in the desert.

a script b scenery c scene d tool

5- .... are not happy with the high prices in that shop.

a Customers b Customs c Costumes d Concerts

6- I'm doing a/an .... in my school about recycling old things.

a housework b project c expert d experience

7- If you don't study hard, you will .... your exams.

a fail b pass c succeed d earn

8- To make hawawshi, first, you need .... nice bread.

a any b many c a lot d some

9- This teacher knows how .... his students love him/her.

a make b to making c to make d making

10- I'm going to .... a project about the environment.

a do b done c did d doing

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1- When you meet your teacher, you .... (ask) him to help you.

2- I ate .... (a little) snacks. I need some more, please.

3- Sara ....(do) her homework when her friend visited her last night.

4- Look outside! It .... (rain) at the moment.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"The clothes your parents or grandparents usually wear"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test 11

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- At the moment, the speaker is .... in the desert in the Nabq nature park.

a walking b playing c running d sitting

2- Yesterday, they visited the ....

a parks b zoos c farms d mountains

3- Tomorrow, they're going to visit Wadi ....

a Giza b Sinai c Kid d Siwa

4- The speaker is looking forward to seeing the beautiful ....

a cats b birds c animals d cows

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Omar is at a clothes shop.

Assistant : Hello. Can I help you?

Omar : I (1) .... something like this.

Assistant : What size would you like?

Omar : 32, please.

Assistant : Here you are.

Omar : (2) .... it on?

Assistant : (3) .... The changing room is over there.

Omar : Does it (4) .... ?

Assistant : Yes, (5) .... is it?

Omar : It's 300 pounds.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Muhammad wanted to spend his holiday in Spain. He went to the airport in a taxi. He went to the check-in with his luggage. When the officer at the airport asked for his passport, Muhammad realized he didn't have his passport with him. He became very upset. He got into a taxi and the driver took him home. Muhammad arrived back at his house in twenty minutes. **He** found his passport on the table and left the house again. But, the taxi wasn't there! The taxi left! He ran down the street and looked for another taxi. Then he found another taxi and the driver went to the airport as quickly as he could. Unfortunately, Muhammad arrived late and his plane left. He was very sad.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- Where did Muhammad want to spend his holiday?

2- How did Muhammad go to the airport?

3- What do you think Muhammad felt when the taxi left?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- The underlined pronoun "**He**" refers to ---------- .

a the driver   b Muhammad   c the officer   d the passport

5- Muhammad ---------- his passport at home.

a became   b arrived   c forgot   d drove

6- Muhammad went to the airport ---------- that day.

a once   b one   c first   d twice

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Why do you like to ---------- your time playing video games?

a save   b waste   c wait   d take

2- I like cats but unfortunately I'm ---------- to them.

a keen   b happy   c hungry   d allergic

3- Is anyone getting ---------? I'm making dinner now.

a famous b anxious c careless d hungry

4- This museum has got statues that look very---------.

a lazy b real c scared d kind

5- ---------- is a hard material which is used to make windows, bottles and other objects.

a Glass b Cotton c Leather d Linen

6- Most shops --------- the prices in December every year.

a cause b recycle c reduce d use

7- I felt so ---------- when my son graduated from university.

a angry b proud c sad d disappointed

8- Dalida always eats --------- olives with her salad, but not too many.

a much b a little c enough d a few

9- This player knows how--------- his team win.

a makes b to make c making d make

10- --------- the men climbing that mountain tomorrow?

a Do b Are c Will d Were

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1- If Ahmed -------- (work) hard, he will get a prize.

2- **A:** ---------- (Will) Maher play table tennis?

B: Yes, he can.

3- I -------- (visit) my parents last Monday.

4- ----------(Those) machine is the most modern one in the factory.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"A special occasion you are going to soon"



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- In Ancient Egypt, men and .... wore similar clothes.

a boys b girls c children d women

2- They both wore loose, ..., linen clothes with a belt.

a white b blue c black d yellow

3- Ancient Egyptians did not wear ....

a sandals b shoes c shirts d socks

4- Ancient Egyptians sometimes wore expensive .... sandals.

a wood b silver c leather d iron

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Salah has bought new shoes.

Amr : How are you, Salah?

Salah : Fine, thanks.

Amr : Your shoes are beautiful. (1) .... did you buy them?

Salah : I bought them from a big shop. The shop had a big (2) ....

Amr : A big sale! (3) .... are these shoes?

Salah : They're L.E. 200. It's a good price.

Amr : Where (4) ....?

Salah : It's in the city centre.

Amr : (5) .... come with me to buy ones?

Salah : With pleasure.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Technology is all around you. It helps develop most of the things we have in our kitchens like washing machines and fridges. Technology is when we take something from the world of science and then make it into something that people use. Technology uses many different ideas. Scientists help to develop technology to keep our food cold when we are not eating it by using the fridge. However, all of us like to eat hot food.

In this way, scientists use technology to help all of us with our daily lives. Technology is very useful in our daily lives. Scientists invented the telephone which we use to talk to other people when we are not with them.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- Where can you find technology?

2- Why do you think technology is very useful?

3- Do you think scientists are great people? Why/Why not?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- Washing machines, fridges and telephones are examples of ---------- .

a scientists   b phones   c technology   d people

5- Technology is very useful in our ---------- lives.

a everyday   b day   c diary   d dairy

6- We can talk to other people by using ---------- .

a fridges   b cookers   c beds   d phones

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- I am sorry. I took your book ---------- mistake.

a by   b in   c for   d from

2- I really like ---------- fruits like strawberries and peaches.

a salty   b juicy   c spicy   d hungry

3- Actors and actresses usually do ---------- before they act.

a operation   b cooking   c make-up   d housework

4- Writing .... of films needs special skills.

a scripts   b costumes   c sculptures   d centuries

5- My mobile phone stopped working. I wanted someone to .... it.

a break   b burn   c repair   d drop

6- There's a lot of .... everywhere. It's very dirty.

a rubbish   b music   c tradition   d nature

7- .... is animal skin which is treated and used to make shoes, bags etc.

a Wool   b Gold   c Cotton   d Leather

8- .... the eggs into the frying pan and cook them in butter.

a Pours   b Pour   c Pouring   d Poured

9- .... this car factory make trucks?

a Can   b Is   c Do   d Are

10- Mr Ali is .... explain the future tense next week.

a go to   b going   c going to   d goes to

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1- When you .... (not visit) your parents, they will get worried.

2- He .... (have) an operation next week.

3- Munir is .... (tallest) than all students in our class.

4- I didn't use to understand English, but now I .... (doing).

E Writing

6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

to your friend about your room.

- **Your name is Hend and your email address is hendmail@gmail.com.**
- **Your friend's name is Hala and her email address is hala@yahoo.com.**

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test 13

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- ...., the speaker read about a new invention.

a Last year   b Last month   c Yesterday   d Last week

2- The invention is half-motorbike and half- ......

a car   b bus   c train   d helicopter

3- It can push you into the ...... at speed of a fast car.

a oil   b water   c gas   d air

4- The speaker was very ......

a sad   b happy   c unhappy   d interested

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Hatem and Marwan are talking about the weather.

Hatem : What's the weather like tomorrow?

Marawan : It's going to ① .... We should take umbrellas with us.

Hatem : Why ② ....we take umbrellas?

Marawan : To protect us ③ ....

Hatem : How do you know about the weather?

Marawan : ④ .... the news.

Hatem : Do you always listen to the news?

Marawan : Yes. I do. I always listen to the news on the radio.

Hatem : When are we ⑤ ....meet?

Marawan : We're going to meet in the morning.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Hello, my name is Hazem. I am a student in Paris. The university I go to is very near the River Seine which passes through Paris. I love this city so much. Millions of tourists come to Paris every year because it is famous for its beautiful sites. There are buildings, bridges, art galleries and museums here, and many of them are five hundred years old or more. French food is delicious and **it** is famous all over the world: maybe you would like some snails! The weather in Paris is fine. In winter, it is sometimes cold and wet, but in summer it is always warm. Something I don't like about Paris is the metro.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- What does Hazem do in Paris?

2- What is Paris famous for?

3- Why do you think Hazem doesn't like the metro?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- .... of tourists visit Paris every year.

a Hundreds b Millions c Thousands d Million

5- French food is delicious and you can try to eat .... there.

a museums b bridges c snails d bridges

6- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the ....

a metro b food c weather d Paris

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- My little sister is .... to watching videos online.

a addicted b damaged c broken d forward

2- Who cooked this? It's ....

a careful b delicious c full d hungry

3- It's difficult for Jana .... that job. She is very weak.

a does b did c to do d to doing

4- .... people usually use special sticks to help them walk.

a Deaf　　b Strong　　c Dumb　　d Blind

5- I would like to change these trousers. They don't .... me.

a sit　　b get　　c fit　　d hit

6- The environment is getting worse because of climate ....

a phone　　b school　　c traffic　　d change

7- My students always work hard, and I'm .... of them.

a proud　　b disagreed　　c unhappy　　d disappointed

8- Now, ... a little oil, salt and lemon juice.

a adds　　b add　　c adding　　d to add

9- This is the .... bed I've ever slept on.

a comfortable　　b more comfortable

c most comfortable　　d as comfortable

10- Ramy's father is ill so he .... to work tomorrow.

a won't go　　b goes　　c doesn't go　　d isn't going

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1- .... (Are) there any cheese in the fridge?

2- Fish .... (can) live outside water.

3- I wore this shirt yesterday. Today, I'll wear another .... (ones).

4- Judy .... (go) to the library last night.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Helping the environment"

....

....

....

....

....



A Listening

1 ➤ Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Some ______ think that online shopping saves time and money .

a people b boys c friends d girls

2- Other people like to spend time with friends at the ______.

a parks b zoos c shops d schools

3- We have the ______ to do online shopping or go to shops.

a choice b mark c degree d noise

4- The speaker thinks online shopping is ______ .

a bad b terrible c useful d great

B Language Functions

2 ➤ Complete the following dialogue:

Osama and Bahaa are talking about the weekend.

Osama : What are you doing at the weekend?

Bahaa : I'm ❶ ______________________________ spend the mid-year holiday.

Osama : Where ❷ ______________________________ you going to spend it?

Bahaa : I'm going to Aswan.

Osama : It's a wonderful place. ❸ ________________ are you going to stay?

Bahaa : Two weeks.

Osama : Who are you going to go with?

Bahaa : With ❹ ____ .

Osama : ❺ ___________________________ you call me when you arrive there?

Bahaa : Sure.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

We have a big garden around our house. There is a lot of grass there. Now, it's September and the grass is long and thick. I also have three trees in the garden. There is a young lemon tree which is very small. It doesn't have any fruit. There is also a peach tree in the garden. There aren't many peaches this year because of the cold weather in April and May. The third tree is an apple tree. Apples always grow well in this area and the tree is full of big green apples. Tomorrow, I want to make a big apple pie. There are the red roses and we have other flowers that are green and yellow. There are two animals in the garden, a beautiful white cat and a friendly dog.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- Why do you think there aren't many peaches this year?

2- When is the grass long and thick?

3- Do you like fruits? Why/Why not?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- There are .... trees are in the garden.

a two b ten c one d three

5- The tree is full of big .... apples.

a red b left c green d yellow

6- The garden has a lot of .... and flowers.

a roses b dogs c cats d people

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- When you pull that ...., the machine will start moving.

a liver b lever c screen d engine

2- People use pepper as a .... to give food good taste.

a space b meal c salt d spice

3- A theme ....is a large park with machines to ride on, restaurants, etc.

a park b degree c picnic d garden

4- We .... a nice picnic in the National Park yesterday.

a took   b had   c bought   d made

5- I .... a dictionary from the school library last week.

a borrowed   b bought   c lent   d sold

6- .... sure that your son doesn't have bad friends.

a Take   b Bake   c Make   d Wake

7- I felt so .... when my son got his gold medal.

a proud   b disappointed   c angry   d sad

8- .... foods that have much fat. They are harmful.

a Eat   b Don't eat   c Always eat   d Eats

9- My brother ate one of the two apples and left .... for me.

a one   b none   c no   d ones

10- Mustafa .... in a famous restaurant tomorrow.

a eating   b eat   c ate   d is going to eat

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1- I don't need .... (some) cheese now.

2- I .... (can) say Ali broke my camera. I broke it.

3- It's very cold. I .... (light) a fire.

4- Samir wanted his mother to iron his .... (colourful, linen, new) shirt.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Drones"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test 15

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Last ...., the speaker visited the Textile Museum in Cairo.

a month b week c year d weekend

2- The speaker's favourite thing was the Islamic ....

a house b school c farm d area

3- The speaker recommended looking at the .... from other countries.

a dresses b clothes c calligraphy d books

4- The museum is quite ....

a light b colourful c dark d sunny

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Adel and Hossam are going rock climbing.

Adel : What are you going to do at the weekend?

Hossam : I'm going to go rock ① ....

Adel : ② .... scary?

Hossam : No. It's really exciting.

Adel : ③ .... I go with you?

Hossam : With pleasure.

Adel : When ④ .... to meet?

Hossam : We're going to meet at 7 a.m in the morning on Friday.

Adel : 8 a.m ⑤ .... better for me.

Hossam : OK. See you then.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

In every country, there are always some snack foods. For example, falafel is very popular in Egypt. It is made from a mixture of beans, fresh vegetables, and spices. It is really delicious. In Morocco, sfenj is usually made in the street food stalls. Sfenj has lots of fat and sugar in it and it is crispy, light and very sweet. Samosa is popular in India. **It** is a snack with spicy vegetables.

Rojak is a Malaysian spicy fruit salad with a mixture of flavours unlike any other. It is spicy, sweet, salty, soft, and crispy. The sweet and spicy sauce is what makes the fruit salad wonderful. Finally, you must try them all! They are all delicious.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- How many snack foods are there in this passage?

2- Where does rojak come from?

3- When do you think falafel is eaten in Egypt?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- Sfenj is popular in ---------- .

a Egypt   b India   c Malaysia   d Morocco

5- Samosa is a snack with ---------- vegetables.

a spicy   b sweet   c ugly   d bad

6- The underlined pronoun "**It**" refers to the ---------- .

a sfenj   b falafel   c samosa   d rojak

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- I think living on the moon is ---------- . We will never be able to live there.

a possible   b easy   c impossible   d probable

2- I like this drink. It ---------- like strawberry.

a feels   b tastes   c touches   d hears

3- I ---------- if you could help me carry this heavy box.

a wander   b tell   c work   d wonder

4- I'd like to go to the theatre; which play do you ....

a recommend   b comment   c advise   d intend

5- We wear heavy clothes in winter to .... warm.

a look   b grow   c see   d keep

6- A/An..........is a business making things to sell.

a industry   b luxury   c environment   d nature

7- You should eat .... vegetables and fruit to be healthy.

a bad   b fresh   c ugly   d wrong

8- What .... you like for tomorrow's breakfast?

a does   b are   c have   d would

9- Let's take .... bus. It goes to Al Ahram.

a these   b this   c those   d then

10- Mona is .... a test next Monday.

a do   b does   c did   d doing

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1- I think there is .... (a few) butter in the frying pan.

2- Samy knows how .... (paint) walls.

3- Amgad .... (travel) to Aswan next month.

4- Which mobile would you buy; the small .... (ones) or the big one?

E Writing

4 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

to your friend Salma to tell her about your holiday.

- **Your name is Habiba and your email address is habiba6002@hotmail.com**
- **Your friend's email address is salma7002@gmail.com**

....

....

....

....

....

Test 16 الأزهر الشريف

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hanan : Do you think that all computer games are bad for you, Lama?

Lama : No, some of them can ① .... me to learn things.

Hanan : I agree.

Lama : ② .... you don't play computer games all the time, it shouldn't be a problem.

Hanan : I agree.

Lama : In my ③ ...., playing games late at night stops you sleeping.

Hanan : ④ .... about playing quiet games in the evening?

Lama : It's a good idea to only play quiet, calm games in the evening.

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1- Mahmoud : Would you like some sandwiches, Omar?

Omar : ....

2- Zeinab : How about bringing a few healthy snacks with you?

Marwa : ....

3 Read and match:

A	B
① I saw sculptures	ⓐ you could help me.
② I like to listen to	ⓑ recommend a good doctor?
③ Can you	ⓒ to use this machine?
④ I wonder if	ⓓ in the museum.
⑤ Do you know how	ⓔ American films.
⑥ I enjoy watching	ⓕ Arabic music.

Answer 1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. .... 5. .... 6. ....

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Samir was a farmer who worked on a farm. He wanted to live in the town and work there, but he couldn't read or write. He worked in a restaurant and began to wash dishes and clean the floors. At the same time, he began to sell vegetables. Samir succeeded in his work. He built a school to teach people who couldn't read or write.

Answer the following questions:

1- Where did Samir work before he went to the town?

2- What did Samir do in the town?

3- Why did Samir build a school?

----

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- A plane is .... than a train.

a fast   b fastest   c as fast   d faster

2- Don't forget to turn your laptop .... before you go to sleep.

a on   b off   c of   d into

3- Lunch is ready now. You can .... it.

a cover   b serve   c wash   d boil

4- I .... go on the internet by this mobile.

a can   b able to   c am able   d know how

5- She is .... her mother to prepare for a birthday party on Saturday.

a helps   b helping   c help   d helped

6 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- What <u>**are**</u> your father doing? (..............)

2- I <u>**does**</u> my homework every day. (..............)

3- These trousers are really <u>**lose**</u>. (..............)

4- While I was <u>**studied**</u>, the phone rang. (..............)

5- <u>**Diary**</u> products help get strong bones. (..............)

7 Write a paragraphs of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Healthy snacks"

Test 17 الأزهر الشريف

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hazem : Do you know how to play an instrument?

Mo'men : Yes, I ① ....

Hazem : ② .... do you play?

Mo'men : I play the guitar.

Hazem : ③ .... you sing some songs?

Mo'men : No, I can't.

Hazem : Are you ④ .... at swim?

Mo'men : No, I'm not, but I can sew.

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1- Judy : How many handbags do you have, Ola?

Ola : ....

2- Aimed : ....?

Ziad : The green trousers are my favourite.

3 Read and match:

A	B
① This belt	ⓐ colourful, cotton sheet.
② metal is	ⓑ big luxury house.
③ It's an old,	ⓒ is made of leather.
④ Mr Tarek has got	ⓓ six pairs of shoes.
⑤ I have about	ⓔ a hard material such as iron, gold or steel.
⑥ This door	ⓕ is made of wood.

Answer 1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. .... 5. .... 6. ....

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Adel is 13 years old. He goes to preparatory school. He is very clever and helpful. He gets high marks at school. All of his teachers like him. At home, he always helps his mother with the housework. He cleans his room after getting up in the morning. He goes to the kichen to help his mother with making meals. Then he washes up the dishes. He also sets the table before eating. Adel's father is a carpenter. Adel always helps him at his work after school. So, his parents like him so much.

Answer the following questions:

1- How old is Adel?

2- Adel is clever. How?

3- Do you like Adel? Why/Why not

----

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- We .... live without air and water.

a can b can't c are d able to

2- You should never .... friends with people you don't know.

a form b exercise c practise d make

3- I bought two toys. I took one and gave the other.......... to my brother.

a ones b once c one d none

4- Which of these is not a dairy product?

a rice b cheese c milk d butter

5- Look at the sky! It's full of dark clouds. It .... rain soon.

a is b isn't c is going to d is going

6 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- We should <u>safe</u> water and energy. (..............)

2- <u>Are</u> you know how to write a story? (..............)

3- The key <u>appeared</u> and no one was able to find it. (..............)

4- Mo'men is <u>goes</u> to England tomorrow morning. (..............)

5- A <u>safe</u> material is not hard to touch. (..............)

7 Write a paragraphs of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Some unusual snacks you have tried"

Test 18 الأزهر الشريف

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Grandma : What would you like for breakfast?

Mo'men : I'd ① .... some beans, please.

Grandma : ② .... you like coffee after breakfast?

Mo'men : No, I don't. I prefer tea.

Grandma : Would you like a dessert?

Mo'men : ③ .... , thank you.

Grandma : There are a few grapes left. Would you like some?

Mo'men : Thank you, but I am really ④ ....

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1. **A** : What do you think of modern computer games?
   B : ....
2. **A** : Do you think technology is bad for health?
   B : ....

3 Read and match:

A	B
① A wind turbine	ⓐ to the zoo this weekend.
② How are you going to	ⓑ means an organised way of doing something.
③ System	ⓒ to England in January.
④ We are taking the children	ⓓ is to look at the stars in the sky as a hobby.
⑤ Stargazing	ⓔ improve your English?
⑥ Ali is travelling	ⓕ is equipment that uses the wind to make electricity.

Answer 1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. .... 5. .... 6. ....

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Steve was born in Tokyo, Japan in 1950. He moved to London with his parents when he was 5 years old. He started school there and his father began work at a hospital. His mother was a housewife and he had four brothers.

He lived in England for 2 years then moved to Amman, Jordan where he lived there for 10 years. Steve then moved to the U.A.E to study. He succeeded and returned to Jordan. His parents were very proud of him.

Answer the following questions:

1- When was Steve born?

2- How many brothers did he have?

3- What do you think of Steve? Why?

----

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- I want to .... a system on my computer.

a reduce b plant c leave d install

2- Mona and I know .... costumes.

a sew b how to sew c sews d to sewing

3- China is famous for car ....

a industry b environment c occasion d chemistry

4- I'm very sorry. I don't have .... tomatoes.

a any b some c much d a lot

5- That camera is cheap, but this .... is expensive.

a ones b one c it d once

6 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- If you **didin't** eat well, you will be hungry (.............)

2- I have **a lot** milk in the evening. (.............)

3- Are you **ability** to write emails? (.............)

4- Metal is **hard** than wood. (.............)

5- Tourists can go rock **fishing**. (.............)

7 Write a paragraphs of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Industry in Egypt"

Test 19 الأزهر الشريف

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Samir : Would you like to go to the desert next week?

Diaa : The desert, why?

Samir : Because I like to go rock ① ....

Diaa : Oh! Is it scary?

Samir : Yes. It looks a bit ② ....

Diaa : Why are you going to do that sport?

Samir : It ③ .... really exciting.

Diaa : It might be ④ ....

Samir : I'd love to do dangerous sports.

Diaa : OK.

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1- A : Could you come to my house tomorrow? We are having a big party.

B : ....

2- A : ....

B : I think it is great! I recommend watching it.

3 Read and match:

A	B
① delicious	ⓐ Don't chop them too small!
② Would you	ⓑ very nice to eat
③ I eat	ⓒ and pour it into the frying pan
④ Chop the tomatoes!	ⓓ a lot of rice and pasta.
⑤ fast food	ⓔ is food that is quick and easy to buy or cook
⑥ Boil the water	ⓕ like a sandwich?

Answer 1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. .... 5. .... 6. ....

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Japanese students don't have a uniform at primary school, but they have to wear one at secondary school. They have to clean the school building at lunch time. Most students practise sports or music after school. Many students also have private lessons if they would like to.

Answer the following questions:

1- When do Japanese students have to wear uniforms?

2- Who clean the school building at lunch time?

3- What are the students' main hobbies after school?

----

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- When was the last time you ---------- proud?

a feel b felt c feels d feeling

2- My mother has a modern---------machine. She makes us nice clothes.

a seeing b spending c saving d sewing

3- About five million people ---------- in Alexandria

a are living b live c lives d living

4- This T-shirt is classic. I want a casual ---------- .

a one b once c ones d none

5- A --------- is a plane that does not have a pilot.

a cartoon b drone c stone d balloon

6 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- If your mum is tired, you **help** her with the housework. (-------------)

2- The ancient Egyptians used **poetry** to eat and drink in them. (-------------)

3- I didn't buy **some** pasta at the market. (-------------)

4- Women wear **sandals** in their ears. (-------------)

5- Are you going to **visiting** your uncle? (-------------)

7 Write a paragraphs of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"A person you are proud of"

Test 20 الأزهر الشريف

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Nada : Hi! Hoda.
Hoda : Hi! Nada.
Nada : Your school ① .... is very nice.
Hoda : It's new. I ② .... it from a small shop.
Nada : ③ .... is it?
Hoda : It's 300 pounds.
Nada : It's a ④ .... price.
Hoda : You're right.

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1- **Mum** : ....?
Dad : I'm going to buy some milk.

2- **Student** : How can we keep the environment clean?
Teacher : ....

3 Read and match:

A	B
① horrible	ⓐ If you put these on, you will hear music
② social media	ⓑ it shouldn't be a problem.
③ headphones	ⓒ not very nice
④ If you don't play computer games all the time,	ⓓ If you use these, you will be able to talk to people on the internet.
⑤ If you listen to too much loud music,	ⓔ If you ride this, you will go fast on two wheels
⑥ terrible	ⓕ you will get a headache.

Answer 1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. .... 5. .... 6. ....

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Experts say that adults need at least 6 hours of sleep every night. If they do not get enough sleep, they will feel sleepy the whole day. Younger kids need at least 9 hours of sleep every night. Also parents with busy lifestyles stay up late and their kids do the same.

Kids with little sleep have hard time sleeping at night and this will affect their daily routine and make them less active and productive trough the day at school.

Answer the following questions:

1- How many hours of sleep should an adult sleep at night?

2- How many hours of sleep should little children sleep at night?

3- Can sleep affect life? How?

----

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- When the two men .... the lever, the car started moving.

a pulled b broke c hurt d cared

2- Do you know how .... music?

a play b to play c playing d plays

3- Don't buy these trousers, there are cheaper .... in the next shop.

a one b once c ones d none

4- Which of these is bad for your teeth?

a a sugar b salt c eggs d vegetables

5- Soha .... her mother in the kitchen now.

a is helping b help c helped d will help

6 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- He **doesn't** going to buy a new shirt. (..............)

2- I **can** paint walls, but I can paint pictures. (..............)

3- There were **a little** snacks in the fridge. (..............)

4- He **chopped** the eggs with the milk. (..............)

5- I think there **be** flying cars in the future (..............)

7 Write a paragraphs of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Healthy food"

Listening material

Unit 7

Shopping online is great! Firstly, it saves me time. I don't want to spend lots of time travelling to the shops. I can stay at home and buy the things I want in a few minutes.

Unit 8

Durian fruits grow in Indonesia and Malaysia. Some fruits can be 30 centimetres long. They are hard and green on the outside, but soft and yellow on the inside. Durian fruits are very healthy and taste delicious.

Unit 9

Last month, I visited the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art in Cairo. Egypt is famous for its ancient art, but I was interested in seeing art by Egyptians from the 20th and 21th tcenturies.

Review C

I've bought a nice book. The articles are always interesting to read and they have fantastic photographs, too. I really like the cartoons because they make me laugh!

Unit 10

Egypt is famous for growing crops to make material. The Ancient Egyptians grew plants by the Nile to make linen. Almost everyone wore clothes made of linen and they also used the plants to make baskets.

Unit 11

There's a lot air pollution from the traffic in our city and this is very unhealthy. Trees are good for the environment and help reduce air pollution - so next week, we're going to plant trees on the roof of our school and make a school roof garden.

Unit 12

I have an older sister (she's three years older than me). We used to be best friends, but now she doesn't want to talk to me very much. She is always on the internet or talking to people on her phone.

Review D

There is a lot of air pollution where I live. My neighbours never recycle their rubbish . In my view, it is important to recycle. We should take plastic and glass out of the bin and recycle it.

End of term practice

Injy knows how to cook a few things. Injy and her friends Hala and Amira decide to make a carrot cake. They find a recipe for it. Amira will cut the carrots. Hala will put ten nuts on the cake. It will taste delicious.

Test 1

Judy plays squash every week and needs to be healthy, so what does she eat? She is allergic to nuts, so she doesn't eat any cakes because they

sometimes have nuts in them. She eats a lot of fish because it helps to make her strong.

Test 2

I love hawawshi. It is easy to make. First, you need some nice bread. Then you put some meat and vegetables inside the bread. You can put some salt on it, too. Now you cook it in the oven.

Test 3

'Durian fruits' grow in Indonesia and Malaysia. Some fruits can be 30 centimetres long. They are hard and green on the outside, but soft and yellow on the inside. Some people don't want to eat them because they smell terrible.

Test 4

Last month, I visited the Textile Museum in Cairo. The museum has lots of clothes from different times in history. I thought the clothes from Ancient Egypt were fantastic. In my view, the statues showing people wearing the clothes really teach you about life in the past.

Test 5

I'm having a fantastic time with my family in Siwa.Today, we had a picnic on Fatanas Island. At the moment, I'm sitting by the water and watching the sunset. It's very beautiful.

Test 6

I ordered a new mobile phone last week and delivery was today. When I opened the box, the screen was damaged. I would like to change the phone for a new one that is not damaged.

Test 7

Egyptian cotton is famous all over the world. Because cotton from Egypt is very good, it is often used to make luxury clothes and things for homes. Many people work in the cotton industry, from farmers to people making or selling clothes and materials.

Test 8

Ancient Egyptians' clothes were simple. They wore loose, white, linen clothes. They wore expensive leather sandals. They loved to wear heavy, metal jewellery. Egyptians wore beautiful gold necklaces.

Test 9

I love phones, but I know that throwing away old phones can be bad for the environment. I started a project in school to recycle mobile phones. From tomorrow, people are going to bring us their old phones and were going to reuse parts from them to repair other phones.

Test 10

Last month, I visited the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art in Cairo. Egypt is famous for its art. My favourite thing in the museum was a painting called Al Madina by Mahmoud Said. It made me feel happy because it was very colourful.

Test 11

At the moment. I'm walking in the desert in the Nabq nature park. It's really interesting. Yesterday, we visited the mountains. Tomorrow, we're going to visit Wadi Kid. I'm looking forward to seeing the beautiful birds that live there.

Test 12

In Ancient Egypt, men and women wore similar clothes. They both wore loose, white, linen clothes with a belt. Most of the time, Ancient Egyptians did not wear shoes but some people sometimes wore expensive leather sandals.

Test 13

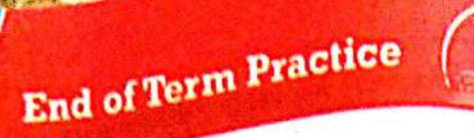
Yesterday, I read about a new invention. This invention is half-motorbike and half-helicopter. It can push you into the air at speed of a fast car. After I read it, I was very interested.

Test 14

Some people think that online shopping saves time and money. Other people like to spend time with friends at the shops. We have the choice to do online shopping or go to shops. I think online shopping is great.

Test 15

Last month, I visited the Textile Museum in Cairo. My favourite thing was the Islamic area where you can see different kinds of calligraphy. I recommend looking at the clothes from other countries, too, such as Iran. It is a good idea to take a good camera, because the museum is quite dark.



End of Term Practice

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. What does Injy know how to cook?
   a a few things b many things c only cakes
2. Why do they decide to make a carrot cake?
   a Hala only eats vegetables.
   b Hala likes healthy food.
   c They find a recipe for it.
3. What will Amira do to make the cake?
   a mix the flour and sugar b add some eggs c cut the carrots
4. How many nuts should they put on the cake?
   a four b fourteen c ten

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Baher : Fares, I was wondering if you would like to come to my house today to work on our school project.

Fares : Great. What ❶ ……………………………?

Baher : Around 7. We could research some information together.

Fares : ❷ ……………………………?

Baher : I think it's better if we use the computer. Books won't give us all the information we need.

Fares : That's true. It's a ❸ …………………… to look at different websites.

Baher : Would you bring some paper?

Fares : Why do you want them? We are going to do online research!

Baher : ❹ ……………………………

Fares : ❺ …………………… we need to take notes on important information.

3 Read the text. Then answer the questions:

When we taste food, our mouths tell us if the food is sweet, salty or spicy. But why do some people like some types of food and not others? There are many reasons. For example, some people don't like a type of food because they remember being ill after they ate it.

However, it is believed that you can change what you like. We often don't like unusual food because our brain doesn't understand it. So if you want to start liking food that is healthy, such as green vegetables, you should eat it more often. Then your brain will recognise it. You can also train your brain not to like something. For example, many people who stopped putting sugar on things found, after a time, that they didn't like sweet things.

So if you like sweets and don't like vegetables, you should train your brain to eat more healthily!

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do people often not like unusual food?
   ……………………………………………
2. Why do you think people trained their brains not to like sugar?
   ……………………………………………

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. Some people don't eat certain food because they ……………
   a ate it before and liked it b ate it and didn't like it.
   c didn't try it before.
   d some people told them that it wasn't tasty.
4. What do you think the word recognise means?
   a know because you have seen it before
   b photograph
   c learn about
   d like
5. If you want to stop liking unhealthy food, ……………
   a eat healthy foods instead. b stop eating this type of food.
   c eat this type of food often. d a and b

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you feel ill, you …………… a doctor.
   a will see b should see c see d would see
2. My grandfather had an accident when he was younger and …………… to walk very well.
   a can't b doesn't know c is not able d won't
3. Please don't put …………… salt on my food. I don't like it.
   a many b a lot c a few d any
4. Tarek is not very hungry, so he only wants …………… rice with his chicken.
   a a few b a little c a lot of d any

5. Mona knows .... draw. Let's ask her to draw us a picture.
   a how b to c how to d able to
6. This email is in Spanish. Are you able to .... it for me?
   a translate b taste c say d waste
7. Waleed can't come out this morning because he needs to .... a delivery
   a buy b take c save d spend
8. People who do sport like to eat rice and pasta because they give them lots of ....
   a fast food b salt c sugar d energy
9. Before you fry food, you should .... some oil in a pan.
   a make b serve c heat d fire
10. Judy's little sister hurt her hand and started ....
   a crying b laughing c hiding d wondering

5 Read and complete with the correct form of these words:

visit - add - invent - act

1. Ramy's .... saves a lot of water and helps the environment.
2. The story was very slow and there was very little ....
3. Don't .... too much salt. It's unhealthy.
4. Reham is .... the museum next weekend. Her mum gave her tickets

6 Choose one of the following:

- Write a short review of about 90-100 words on a book, film or a place you like.
- Write an email of about 90-100 words on an environmental problem you have near you, and how you could help solve this problem.

....

....

....

....

....

TEST 1

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The speaker ordered a new .... last week.
   a mobile phone b computer c mouse d printer
2. The delivery was ....
   a yesterday b last Friday c today d last Monday
3. When the speaker opened the box, the .... was damaged.
   a keyboard b button c speaker d screen
4. The speaker would like to .... the phone for a new one.
   a burn b change c buy d sell

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Amal is asking Huda how to make an omelette.

Amal : Do you know how to make an omelette?
Huda : ❶ ....
Amal : ❷ ....?
Huda : First, beat two eggs in a bowl with little milk. Add a little salt to the eggs and milk.
Amal : ❸ ....?
Huda : We should put these ingredients in a frying pan.
Amal : How long should I cook it?
Huda : ❹ ....
Amal : Can I serve it with salad?
Huda : ❺ ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

One day, a wolf saw some sheep in a little house. He was hungry and he wanted to eat one of the sheep. He couldn't eat the sheep though, because the farmer and his dogs stopped him from going into the house. But then the wolf found the skin of a sheep on the ground and he put it on like a jacket. Now he looked like a sheep.

The wolf walked past the farmer and the dogs into the sheep's house. All the sheep thought that **he** was another sheep. The wolf was very happy. He ate the sheep one by one.

After some time, the skin started to fall off the wolf. Now the farmer and the dogs saw that he was really a wolf. They ran after him and they were able to catch him.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage?
....
2. Who stopped the wolf from eating the sheep?
....
3. What did the wolf find on the ground?
....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The wolf is a/an .... animal.
   a lazy b weak c clever d honest
5. The underlined word "he" refers to the ....
   a wolf b sheep c farmer d dog
6. The wolf ate .... sheep.
   a no b few c many d little

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I have a new .... that helps me do exercise.
   a dictionary b app c chair d drone
2. The two divers went down to explore the .... of the sea.
   a button b river c beach d bottom
3. There is a lot of .... in meat, eggs and fish.
   a sugar b sweets c protein d bone

4. A/An .... presents an opinion of a film, book or a play.
   a review b event c scenery d invitation
5. We built a high wall around the farm to .... it.
   a connect b protect c pick d prefer
6. Salma uses her .... to text her friends and to send emails.
   a wildlife b rubbish c bottles d mobile phone
7. I felt .... when my friends didn't come to my birthday party.
   a disappointed b happy c fine d excited
8. If the teacher is ill tomorrow, you .... and ask about him.
   a went b would go c should go d goes
9. We .... use computers to design a building.
   a able to b can c know how d are able
10. One of .... cars is mine.
   a these b that c this d they

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Doaa .... (come) to tomorrow's party.
2. I like mango juice but I .... (wouldn't) like tea.
3. Shady .... (is) able to speak English, but he is able to speak French.
4. Mr Ayman bought .... (this) house over there last week.

E Writing

6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

to your friend telling him / her about your favourite snack.
- Your friend's name is Alaa / Hanaa and her email address is alaa / hanaa77@gmail.com.
- Your name is Omar / Judy and your email address is omar / judy88@hotmail.com.

....
....
....
....
....

TEST 2

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The speaker visited the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art in ....
   a Giza b Aswan c Alexandria d Cairo
2. .... is famous for its art.
   a France b England c Egypt d America
3. In the museum, there was a .... called Al Madina by Mahmoud Said.
   a painting b pottery c dress d sculpture
4. The speaker felt happy because the painting was very ....
   a bad b colourful c clean d dirty

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mr Ashraf is buying a new pair of jeans.

Shopkeeper : Can I help you?

Mr Ashraf : 1 ....

Shopkeeper : We have a nice collection of jeans. Look at those pairs over there.

Mr Ashraf : 2 ....

Shopkeeper : Of course. The changing room is over there.

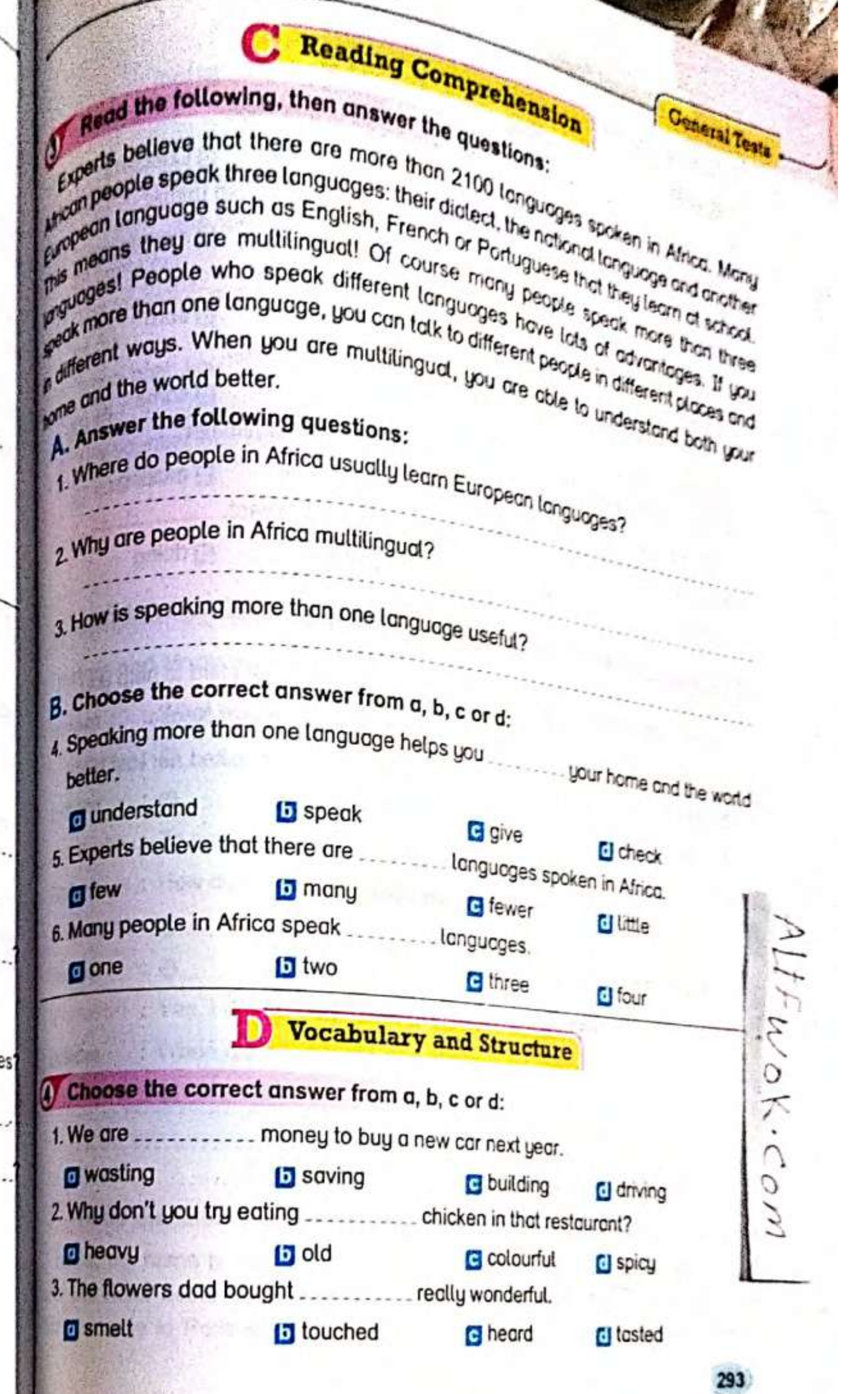
Mr Ashraf : 3 .... Do you have bigger ones?

Shopkeeper : 4 ....

Mr Ashraf : They are great. 5 ....

Shopkeeper : 300 pounds.

Mr Ashraf : Here is the money.



C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Experts believe that there are more than 2100 languages spoken in Africa. Many African people speak three languages: their dialect, the national language and another European language such as English, French or Portuguese that they learn at school. This means they are multilingual! Of course many people speak more than three languages! People who speak different languages have lots of advantages. If you speak more than one language, you can talk to different people in different places and in different ways. When you are multilingual, you are able to understand both your home and the world better.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Where do people in Africa usually learn European languages?
....
2. Why are people in Africa multilingual?
....
3. How is speaking more than one language useful?
....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Speaking more than one language helps you .... your home and the world better.
   a understand b speak c give d check
5. Experts believe that there are .... languages spoken in Africa.
   a few b many c fewer d little
6. Many people in Africa speak .... languages.
   a one b two c three d four

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We are .... money to buy a new car next year.
   a wasting b saving c building d driving
2. Why don't you try eating .... chicken in that restaurant?
   a heavy b old c colourful d spicy
3. The flowers dad bought .... really wonderful.
   a smelt b touched c heard d tasted

4. Some artists like to paint the .... in the desert.
a script b scenery c scene d tool

5. .... are not happy with the high prices in that shop.
a Customers b Customs c Costumes d Concerts

6. I'm doing a/an .... in my school about recycling old things.
a housework b project c expert d experience

7. If you don't study hard, you will .... your exams.
a fail b pass c succeed d earn

8. To make hawawshi, first, you need .... nice bread.
a any b many c a lot d some

9. This teacher knows how .... his students love him/her.
a make b to making c to make d making

10. I'm going to .... a project about the environment.
a do b done c did d doing

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. When you meet your teacher, you .... (ask) him to help you.
2. I ate .... (a little) snacks. I need some more, please.
3. Sara .... (do) her homework when her friend visited her last night.
4. Look outside! It .... (rain) at the moment.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Difficulties that disabled people have"

....

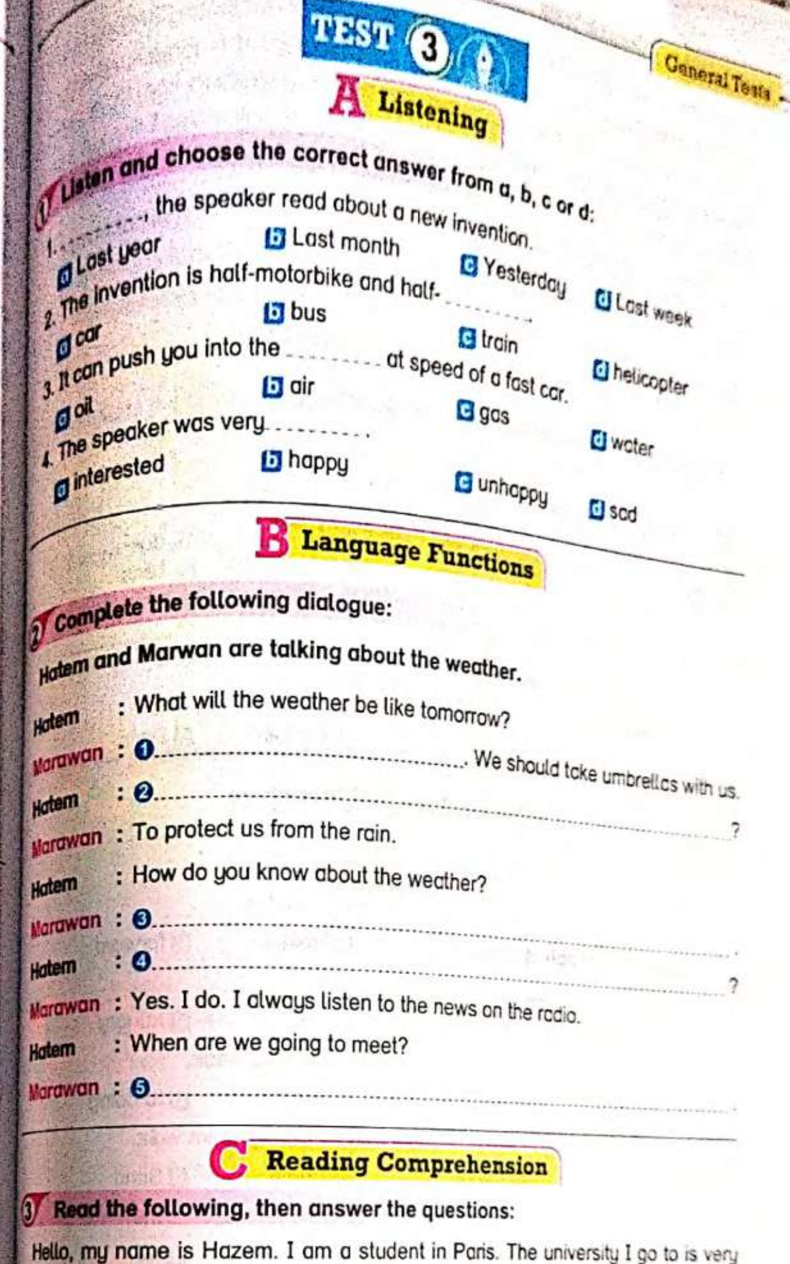
....

....

....

....

....



TEST 3

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ...., the speaker read about a new invention.
a Last year b Last month c Yesterday d Last week

2. The invention is half-motorbike and half-........
a car b bus c train d helicopter

3. It can push you into the .... at speed of a fast car.
a oil b air c gas d water

4. The speaker was very ....
a interested b happy c unhappy d sad

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Hatem and Marwan are talking about the weather.

Hatem : What will the weather be like tomorrow?
Marwan : 1 .... We should take umbrellas with us.
Hatem : 2 ....?
Marwan : To protect us from the rain.
Hatem : How do you know about the weather?
Marwan : 3 ....
Hatem : 4 ....?
Marwan : Yes. I do. I always listen to the news on the radio.
Hatem : When are we going to meet?
Marwan : 5 ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Hello, my name is Hazem. I am a student in Paris. The university I go to is very near the River Seine which passes through Paris. I love this city so much. Millions of tourists come to Paris every year because it is famous for its beautiful sites. There

are buildings, bridges, art galleries and museums here, and many of them are five hundred years old or more. French food is delicious and it is famous all over the world, maybe you would like some snails! The weather in Paris is fine. In winter, it is sometimes cold and wet, but in summer it is always warm. Something I don't like about Paris is the metro.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What does Hazem do in Paris?

....

2. What is Paris famous for?

....

3. Why do you think Hazem doesn't like the metro?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. .... of tourists visit Paris every year.
   a Hundreds b Millions c Thousands d Tens
5. French food is delicious and you can try to eat .... there.
   a museums b bridges c snails d galleries
6. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the ....
   a metro b food c weather d Paris

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My little sister is .... to watching videos online.
   a addicted b damaged c broken d forward
2. Who cooked this? It's ....
   a careful b delicious c full d hungry
3. It's difficult for Jana .... that job. She is very weak.
   a to do b did c does d to doing
4. .... people usually use special sticks to help them walk.
   a Deaf b Strong c Dumb d Blind
5. I would like to change these trousers. They don't .... me.
   a sit b get c fit d hit
6. The environment is getting worse because of climate ....
   a phone b school c traffic d change

7. My students always work hard, and I'm .... of them.
   a proud b disagreed c unhappy d disappointed
8. Now, ... a little oil, salt and lemon juice.
   a adds b add c adding d to add
9. This is the .... bed I've ever slept on.
   a comfortable b more comfortable c most comfortable d as comfortable
10. Ramy's father is ill so he .... to work tomorrow.
   a is going b goes c doesn't go d won't go

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. .... (Are) there any cheese in the fridge?
2. Fish .... (can) live outside water.
3. I wore this shirt yesterday. Today, I'll wear another .... (ones).
4. Judy .... (go) to the library last night.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"How to keep our environment clean"

....



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ancient Egyptians' .... were simple.
   a houses b clothes c shoes d children
2. They loved to wear ...., metal jewellery.
   a light b cheap c heavy d expensive
3. They wore expensive leather ....
   a shoes b handbags c earrings d sandals
4. Egyptians wore beautiful gold ....
   a necklaces b clothes c shoes d sandals

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

A reporter is interviewing Eman Badr.

Reporter : What's your name?

Eman : Eman Badr. ❶ ....

Reporter : ❷ ....?

Eman : I play the violin.

Reporter : When did you start playing it?

Eman : ❸ ....

Reporter : How many hours do you practise a day?

Eman : ❹ ....

Reporter : Do you like being in the orchestra?

Eman : ❺ ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

You have 206 bones in your body. Both boys and girls have the same number of bones. They make up the framework, or skeleton, that supports the tissues and muscles. Your bones are important because of the structure they provide and also because of what they contain. Together they give your body shape, and - moved by your muscles - help you to run after a ball, take a walk, or type a letter to your mom. They protect your body parts. They also help to produce blood cells and contain important minerals like calcium and phosphorus that can be released into your blood.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage?
....
2. How many bones are their in our bodies?
....
3. Do you think all animals have bones?
....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c wor d:

4. Calcium is found in our ....
   a hair b clothes c bones d drones
5. The number of bones in boys and girls is ....
   a different b equal c not the same d isn't similar
6. Our bones help us to run and take a ....
   a fall b money c walk d dream

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They carried the injured people to hospital by ....
   a plan b helicopter c drone d machine
2. .... food is really unhealthy.
   a Fresh b Popular c Delicious d Salty
3. She has a very .... name. Her name is "Kogy".
   a usual b normal c unusual d famous
4. I visited an art museum yesterday. It had paintings of famous ....
   a typists b archaeologists c dentists d artists

5. Cotton is not a hard material, it's ....
a rough b safe c soft d cheap

6. He .... some flowers and gave these to his mum.
a picked b backed c blocked d booked

7. At the end of each unit, there is a series of exercises designed to help the ....
a traveller b learner c singer d passenger

8. You will be safe if you .... near that scary dog.
a don't move b moved c doesn't move d will move

9. She was afraid she wouldn't be able .... that difficult test.
a do b does c to do d doing

10. He is going to .... swimming.
a going b gone c went d go

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1- Scientists .... (find) new medicines in the future.
2- .... (Doesn't forget) to add a little salt.
3- Judy .... (go) to the library last night.
4- Look at those clouds, it .... (rain).

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Your favourite meal"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

TEST 5

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The speaker is having a fantastic time with his ....
a sisters b brothers c friends d family

2. They were in ....
a Siwa b Cairo c Giza d Aswan

3. They had a picnic on Fatnas ....
a Desert b Valley c Island d Farm

4. The speaker is sitting .... the water and watching the sunset.
a In b by c at d from

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Osama is asking Amr about healthy food.

Osama : What should I eat if I want to be healthy?
Amr : 1 ....
Osama : What are the examples of healthy snacks?
Amr : 2 ....
Osama : 3 ....?
Amr : I eat one or two pieces a day.
Osama : Why are they healthy?
Amr : 4 ....
Osama : 5 ....?
Amr : No, sweets are not healthy.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Amr's school had a lot of activities last summer holiday. The library had a summer reading competition. It was to help improve reading during the summer. A lot of students did not want to read after school. This fun competition helped them read. There were

two competitions. One for kids and one for teenagers. Every 5 books they read would get them a prize. There were different prizes. The prizes were music players, mobiles and CDs. The more books they read, the better chance they had. Over 500 students took part in the competitions. They were all excited and many students won.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What did Amr's school have last summer holiday?

....

2. How many students took part in the competitions?

....

3. What did the competition help to do?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. There were .... competitions at Amr's school.
   a no b two c one d three
5. Every .... books they read would get them a prize.
   a fifteen b fifty c five d fifty five
6. The underlined word **"them"** refers to ....
   a mobiles b competitions c prizes d students

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I think scientist can make .... about the future.
   a translations b predications c invitations d corrections
2. I think we will .... no illnesses in the future.
   a make b care c build d have
3. Remove the .... from the meat before you cook it.
   a soap b bones c poems d sugar
4. The little girl .... when the dog frightened her.
   a laughed b hugged c cried d felt
5- Many cleaning products contain .... that can be dangerous.
   a camels b chemicals c musical d phones
6. The children were very .... that they couldn't go to the zoo.
   a proud b fine c disappointed d pleased

7. A saw is a/an .... for cutting wood.
   a device b tool c knife d plane
8. If the weather .... nice tomorrow, we will go to the beach.
   a is b be c are d will be
9. Blind people .... see.
   a able to b are able to c can d can't
10. I can't find my .... shirt.
   a new, green, cotton b green, new, cotton
   c green, cotton, new d new, cotton, green

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Will you .... (bought) a plane if you have much money?
2. When she is playing netball, she drinks .... (a few) water.
3. .... (Does) you know how to buy things online?
4. I .... (not take) my exam next year.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Some unusual snacks you have tried"

....



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

5. Judy plays .... every week.
   - a football
   - b volleyball
   - c basketball
   - d squash
6. She needs to be ....
   - a healthy
   - b unhealthy
   - c fat
   - d thin
7. She is allergic to ....
   - a beans
   - b nuts
   - c fish
   - d milk
8. Judy eats a lot of .... because it helps to make her strong.
   - a nuts
   - b fish
   - c oranges
   - d apples

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Haytham is calling a shop for a problem.

Salesperson : Hello! Can I help you?

Haytham : ❶ .... I ordered a game for children aged 6-9 by mistake.

Salesperson : ❷ .... ?

Haytham : I'm 13.

Salesperson : Do you need another game or your money back?

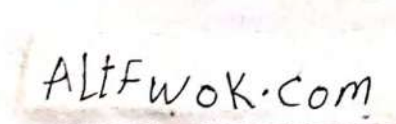
Haytham : ❸ ....

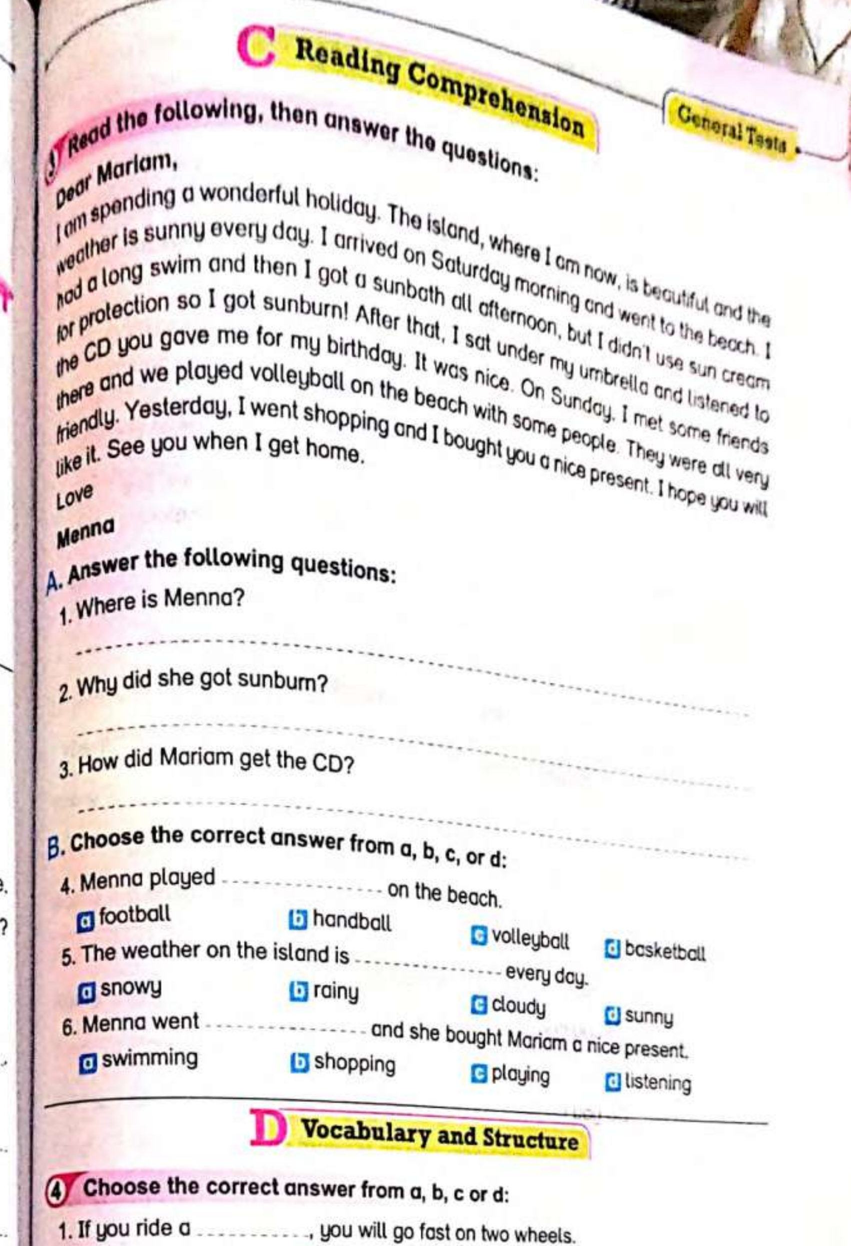
Salesperson : Do you need two or four joysticks with the game?

Haytham : ❹ ....

Salesperson : OK. Sorry for the mistake. The game will be delivered in

Haytham : ❺ ....





C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Dear Mariam,

I am spending a wonderful holiday. The island, where I am now, is beautiful and the weather is sunny every day. I arrived on Saturday morning and went to the beach. I had a long swim and then I got a sunbath all afternoon, but I didn't use sun cream for protection so I got sunburn! After that, I sat under my umbrella and listened to the CD you gave me for my birthday. It was nice. On Sunday, I met some friends there and we played volleyball on the beach with some people. They were all very friendly. Yesterday, I went shopping and I bought you a nice present. I hope you will like it. See you when I get home.

Love

Menna

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Where is Menna?
....
2. Why did she got sunburn?
....
3. How did Mariam get the CD?
....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. Menna played .... on the beach.
   - a football
   - b handball
   - c volleyball
   - d basketball
5. The weather on the island is .... every day.
   - a snowy
   - b rainy
   - c cloudy
   - d sunny
6. Menna went .... and she bought Mariam a nice present.
   - a swimming
   - b shopping
   - c playing
   - d listening

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you ride a ...., you will go fast on two wheels.
   - a camel
   - b car
   - c bus
   - d motorbike
2. The cakes tasted ...., so no one liked it.
   - a delicious
   - b nice
   - c horrible
   - d wonderful

3. There are many different forms of ...., for example spaghetti and lasagna.
   a cheese b pasta c fruits d vegetables
4. Archaeologists found .... in the old site.
   a pottery b scenery c website d show
5. The student .... some difficulties, but he was able to succeed.
   a hid b had c took d gave
6. They .... a new phone line in the apartment.
   a picked b planted c installed d recycled
7. Osman eats .... fruits and vegetables because they are healthy.
   a rarely b mostly c hardly d never
8. I don't think people .... under the sea in the future.
   a lives b live c lived d will live
9. I don't like this soup. There is too .... salt in it.
   a much b many c enough d few
10. Magy lent her .... handbag to her sister Shaza.
   a leather, yellow, small b yellow, leather, small
   c small, yellow, leather d leather, small, yellow

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Do you think we .... (have) flying cars in the future.
2. Could you get .... (a little) tomatoes?
3. .... (Able) this engineer build us a big house?
4. You .... (shall) come to stay with me when you feel bored.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Positive and negative sides of using technology"

....

....

....

....

....

....



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Egyptian .... is famous all over the world.
   a gold b silver c food d cotton
2. Cotton from Egypt is very ....
   a good b bad c cheap d expensive
3. Cotton is often used to make luxury clothes and things for ....
   a schools b homes c clubs d hospitals
4. Many people work in the cotton ....
   a farm b field c industry d workshop

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ramy visited the Egyptian Museum of Egyptian Modern Art.

Ramy : Last month, I visited the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art.
Dina : ❶ ....?
Ramy : It is in Cairo.
Dina : ❷ ....
Ramy : ❸ .... Ancient Egyptian artists were really wonderful, too.
Dina : How much does it cost to get in the museum?
Ramy : ❹ ....
Dina : Why don't we go together on the weekend?
Ramy : ❺ ....
Dina : OK. See you then.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Malak is a good girl. She is in prep two. Her teachers love her because she is cl… Malak washes her hands every day. She washes her hands with soap and water. Sh… uses warm water. She washes her hands for 30 seconds. She turns off the water. Sh… dries her hands on with a clean towel. Every few hours, she turns on the water a… washes her hands. Malak has very clean hands. She does not have many germs o… them. Germs cannot live on her clean hands. Viruses also can't live on them.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why can't germs live on Malak's hands?
....
2. How does Malak dry her hands?
....
3. What do you think of Malak?
....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Malak's teachers love her because she is ....
   a bad b naughty c cold d clever
5. Malak washes her hands with .... and water.
   a soup b soap c sugar d milk
6. The underlined word "clean" is the opposite of ....
   a dirty b happy c sad d fast

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A: I think technology is bad for all of us.
   B: I disagree .... you.
   a at b with c of d at
2. Fresh fruit is not very ....
   a nice b healthy c good d old
3. There was a flood and the problem was ...... worse because of the heavy rain.
   a throwing b catching c getting d saving
4. .... is the things that happen in a film.
   a Photography b Action c Review d Picnic

5. Ola is wearing leather .... on her feet.
   a sandals b earrings c trousers d scarf
6. Mum bought some fresh fruits from the market yesterday. They tasted ....
   a old b smart c delicious d salty
7. If we go to the park this afternoon, we .... our friends.
   a would see b will see c see d saw
8. I've looked everywhere, but I .... able to find my mobile.
   a wasn't b can't c don't d am not
9. Be careful! .... fast car may hit you.
   a Then b These c That d Those
10. The thief couldn't .... and the policeman caught him.
   a dream b write c escape d study

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I think you .... (get) ready if you have an exam.
2. This doctor .... (don't) know how to treat my illness.
3. A: What .... (can't) I do to solve this problem?
   B: You can ask your father.
4. Amal .... (meet) a friend tomorrow.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"A review of a film you have Watched"
"Jurassic World"

....
....
....
....



TEST 8

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Last month, the speaker visited the Textile Museum in ....
   a Giza b Aswan c Alexandria d Cairo
2. The museum has lots of .... from different times in history.
   a dresses b clothes c books d socks
3. The speaker thought the clothes from Ancient Egypt were ....
   a old b clean c new d fantastic
4. The .... showing people wearing the clothes really teach you about life in the past.
   a girls b statues c boys d women

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mariam is playing a game with Rawan.

Mariam : I will play a game with you.

Rawan : Really? 1 ....?

Mariam : It's about my favourite snack. You will ask and I guess what it is.

Rawan : OK! 2 ....?

Mariam : Yes, it has lots of sugar.

Rawan : OK. Is your favourite snack juicy, spicy or sweet?

Mariam : 3 ....

Rawan : Is it ice cream?

Mariam : 4 ....

Rawan : Great! 5 ....

AlifWoK·Com

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Yara will be 13 next week. She will have a birthday party. She will invite all her friends and relatives. It will be a big party. They will eat cakes, listen to music and play games. Her mother will make a big cake for her. She will make sandwiches, too. Her father will buy her a nice present. He says it will be a big surprise. The party will be at Yara's house. It is a big house. Yara will buy new clothes for that. She will buy a new pair of shoes. It will be a wonderful party. Yara is very excited. She knows it will be fun. Her family is really happy.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Who will Yara invite to her birthday party?
....
2. What does the underlined word "It" refer to?
....
3. Where will Yara have her birthday party?
....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Yara will be .... next week.
   a fifteen b seventeen c thirteen d eighteen
5. Yara and her friends will play ....
   a food b games c sandwiches d chess
6. Yara's family is very ....
   a happy b tired c sad d useless

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You souldn't eat .... It's not healthy.
   a slow b fast c lazy d good
2. The two men took their torches and went inside the cave to .... it.
   a invent b break c invite d explore
3. Could you put more olives on top of my ...., please?
   a tea b spices c pizza d jam
4. Musical .... are usually expensive.
   a instruments b experiments c portraits d centuries

5. A: What .... do you want your jacket?
B: X Large, please.
a colour b height c size d weight

6. Osman .... part in the running competition and won a trophy.
a took b gave c meant d talked

7. I was .... with the grade I got in my maths exam. I got 20 out of 50.
a delighted b disappointed c pleased d glad

8. I .... the next summer holiday in London.
a spend b spending c will spend d spent

9. You can choose your friends but you .... choose your family.
a are able to b can't c know how to d can

10. This is my shirt. The other .... is yours.
a once b none c only d one

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. In the future, it .... (be) possible to travel into space.
2. She eats .... (lots) fish because it helps to make her strong.
3. I .... (doesn't) know how to dive, but I know how to swim.
4. Magi .... (play) nice music now.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"What you can eat to stay healthy"

....

....

....

....

....

....

TEST 9

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The speaker loves ....
a phones b computers c televisions d cameras

2. Old phones can be .... for the environment.
a good b bad c nice d heavy

3. The speaker started a project in his / her .... to recycle mobile phones.
a home b field c farm d school

4. They're going to .... parts from the phones to repair other ones.
a buy b sell c reuse d throw

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Fahd has finished reading "Lord of the Flies".

Fahd : I finished reading "Lord of the Flies".
Adam : What is it?
Fahd : ❶ ....
Adam : ❷ ....?
Fahd : The British writer William Golding wrote it.
Adam : ❸ ....?
Fahd : It is about some schoolboys who have to live on an island after their plane lands in the sea and the pilot dies.
Adam : Can I borrow it?
Fahd : ❹ ....
Adam : ❺ ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The postman put the mail in the mailbox. Dad went outside. He said hello to the postman. Dad opened the mailbox and took out a magazine and two letters. One letter was from his sister. The other letter was from his brother. The magazine was for his wife. It was a garden magazine. His wife liked to work in the garden. She grew flowers and vegetables in the garden. Dad went back into the house. He opened both letters. His sister invited him to a birthday party. His brother invited him to a wedding. Dad enjoyed reading the letters. He enjoyed getting the invitations. He picked up the phone. He left a message for his sister. He would come to the birthday party. He also called his brother. He said he would come to the wedding.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What did the postman put?

....

2. What did dad's wife like to grow?

....

3. Why did dad call his brother?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The wife liked to work in the ....
   a school b garden c zoo d hospital
5. Dad's brother invited him to a ....
   a party b journey c festival d wedding
6. Dad left a message for his ....
   a sister b wife c brother d son

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mum fried the onions in some .... and made us a delicious meal.
   a water b butter c sand d milk
2. My grandfather likes to wear loose .... in summer.
   a galabeyas b handbags c sheets d jumpers
3. There's a lot of air .... from the traffic in our city.
   a nation b population c option d pollution

4. The truck travelled at a .... of 200 kph to get to Alex on time.
   a weight b depth c speed d height
5. Mona is always active and full of ....
   a water b energy c food d air
6. The thief .... from the policeman, but he was able to catch him.
   a hid b hit c hugged d had
7. A good teacher encourages the .... and helps them to find out more.
   a trainers b players c learners d thieves
8. If your friend is injured, you .... your teachers about that.
   a will tell b would tell c told d should tell
9. .... these divers able to reach the sinking ship?
   a Do b Are c Is d Have
10. I .... going to help my father to repair the broken door.
   a 's b 're c 've d 'm

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. When I'm 25, I .... (get) married.
2. **A:** .... (Would) you like milk?
   B: No, I don't. I prefer juice.
3. I didn't use to understand English, but now I .... (spoke) it well.
4. Tamara won't wear her .... (long, cotton, green) skirt. It is dirty.

E Writing

6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

to your friend Salah about someone in your family that you are proud of.

- **Your name is Ramy and your email address is ramypost@gmail.com**
- **Your friend's email address is salah666@yahoo.com**

....

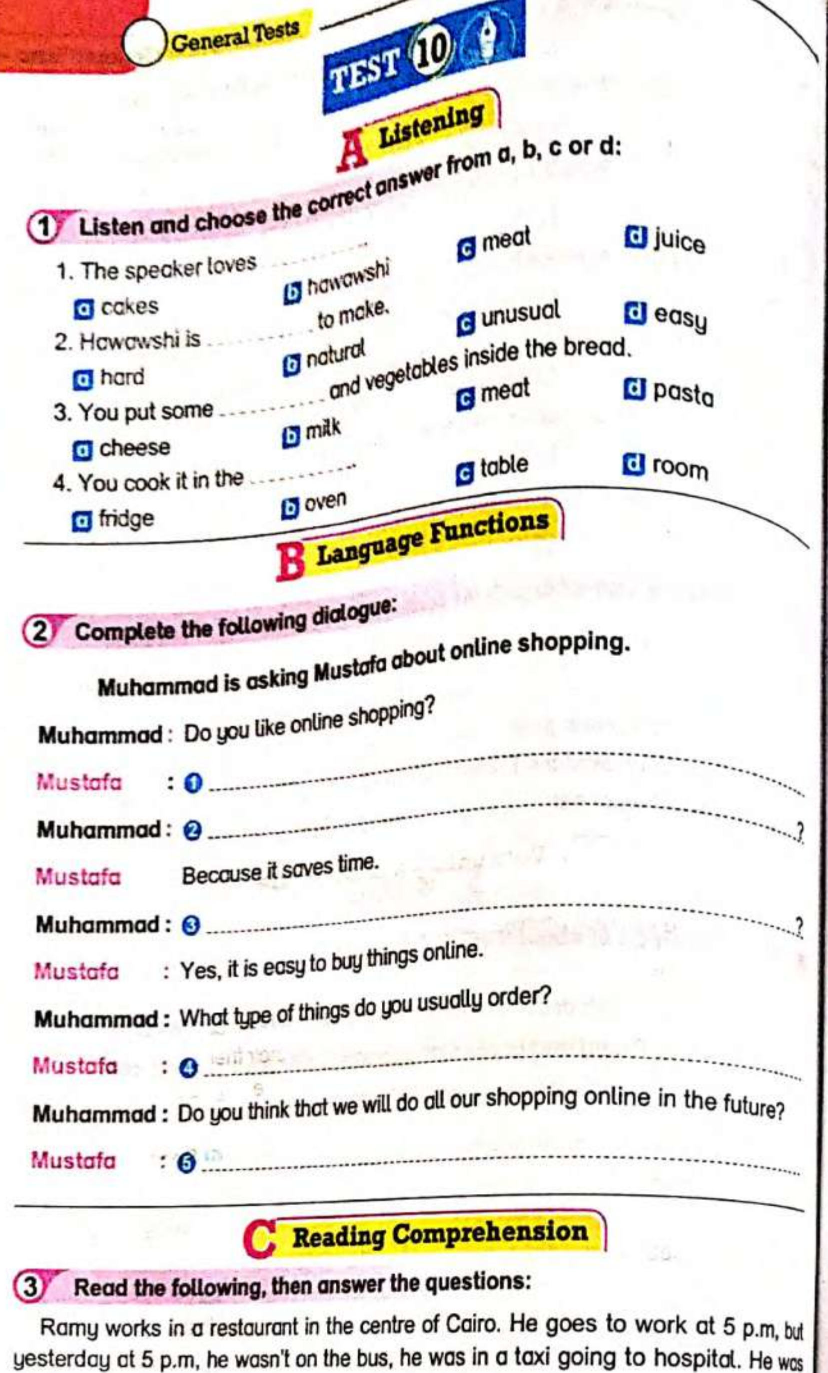
....

....

....

....

....



TEST 10

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The speaker loves ....
   a cakes b hawawshi c meat d juice
2. Hawawshi is .... to make.
   a hard b natural c unusual d easy
3. You put some .... and vegetables inside the bread.
   a cheese b milk c meat d pasta
4. You cook it in the ....
   a fridge b oven c table d room

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Muhammad is asking Mustafa about online shopping.

Muhammad : Do you like online shopping?
Mustafa : ❶ ....
Muhammad : ❷ ....?
Mustafa : Because it saves time.
Muhammad : ❸ ....?
Mustafa : Yes, it is easy to buy things online.
Muhammad : What type of things do you usually order?
Mustafa : ❹ ....
Muhammad : Do you think that we will do all our shopping online in the future?
Mustafa : ❺ ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Ramy works in a restaurant in the centre of Cairo. He goes to work at 5 p.m, but yesterday at 5 p.m, he wasn't on the bus, he was in a taxi going to hospital. He was very sick! Usually, he works in the kitchen all evening, but yesterday he wasn't in the kitchen. He was in the X-ray department of the hospital because the doctors were worried about his stomach pains. He ate bad food from his restaurant! Normally, at 11 p.m, Ramy takes a bus to go home after finishing at the restaurant, but yesterday at 11 p.m, he was still in the hospital and he was still unhappy and sick. He was in bed and he was very hot - 40 degrees! In the morning, he was better and the doctors were pleased.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Where does Ramy work?
....
2. How was the food Ramy ate?
....
3. Do you like eating outside? Why / Why not?
....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. Ramy was in a bed because he was ....
   a sick b happy c well d pleased
5. The doctors were worried about ....
   a the X-ray b Ramy's pains c the restaurant d the hospital
6. Ramy usually works in the .... of the restaurant.
   a hospital b stomach c bed d kitchen

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The telephone and the internet are great ....
   a invents b inventions c discoveries d translations
2. .... media help everyone communicate with their friends and relatives.
   a Mobile b TV c Telephone d Social
3. .... are a kind of hard dry fruits.
   a Vegetables b Liquids c Nuts d Spaces
4. I live alone in a big house. I am .... bored all the time.
   a feeling b filling c failing d falling
5. Japanese people usually .... bikes to their work.
   a drive b ride c walk d escape
6. Please, ... the speed of the car, you are driving so fast.
   a reduce b raise c produce d increase

7. She .... the driving test. She has to practise a lot.
a felt b passed c repaired d failed

8. Hossam will .... for our team next year.
a played b playing c play d plays

9. Can I have some more sugar, please? There is .... in this tea.
a too much b too many c a few d not enough

10. Mona studied two lessons today and left the other .... till tomorrow.
a ones b only c once d none

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I'm sure that we .... (have) flying cars in the future.
2. .... (Poured) a little oil into a pan.
3. The bird wasn't able .... (fly) because it broke a wing.
4. I don't know how .... (do) calligraphy.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Are you for or against online shopping?"

....
....
....
....
....
....

....
....
....
....
....
....



TEST 11

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. At the moment, the speaker is .... in the desert in the Nabq nature park.
a walking b playing c running d sitting

2. Yesterday, they visited the ....
a parks b zoos c farms d mountains

3. Tomorrow, they're going to visit Wadi ....
a Giza b Sinai c Kid d Siwa

4. The speaker is looking forward to seeing the beautiful ....
a cats b birds c animals d cows

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ayman is going to a new school.

Father : Ayman, your school bus will arrive soon.
Ayman : ❶ ....?
Father : No, the school isn't far from here
Ayman : ❷ ....?
Father : Yes, your school bag is ready.
Ayman : Who will I talk to if I don't know anyone at the school?
Father : ❸ .... They'll be very friendly.
Ayman : What will the teacher say if I don't understand the lesson?
Father : ❹ ....
Ayman : OK. ❺ ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Muhammad wanted to spend his holiday in Spain. He went to the airport in a taxi. He went to the check-in with his luggage. When the officer at the airport asked for his

passport. Muhammad realized he didn't have his passport with him. He become very upset. He got into a taxi and the driver took him home. Muhammad arrived back at his house in twenty minutes. **He** found his passport on the table and left the house again. But, the taxi wasn't there! The taxi left! He ran down the street and looked for another taxi. Then he found another taxi and the driver went to the airport as quickly as he could. Unfortunately, Muhammad arrived late and his plane left. He was very sad.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Muhammad want to spend his holiday?
....
2. How did Muhammad go to the airport?
....
3. What do you think Muhammad felt when the taxi left?
....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun **"He"** refers to ....
a the driver   b Muhammad   c the officer   d the passport
5. Muhammad .... his passport at home.
a became   b arrived   c forgot   d drove
6- Muhammad went to the airport .... that day.
a once   b one   c first   d twice

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Why do you .... your time playing video games? It's not good.
a save   b waste   c wait   d take
2. I like cats but unfortunately I'm .... to them.
a keen   b happy   c hungry   d allergic
3. Is anyone getting ....? I'm making dinner now.
a famous   b anxious   c hungry   d careless
4. This museum has got statues that look very ....
a lazy   b real   c scared   d kind
5. .... is a hard material which is used to make windows, bottles and other objects.
a Glass   b Cotton   c Leather   d Linen

6. Most shops .... the prices in December every year.
a cause   b recycle   c reduce   d use
7. I felt so .... when my son graduated from university.
a angry   b proud   c sad   d disappointed
8. Dalida always eats .... olives with her salad, but not too many.
a much   b a little   c least   d a few
9. This player knows how .... his team win.
a makes   b to make   c making   d make
10. .... the men climbing that mountain tomorrow?
a Do   b Are   c Will   d Were

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If Ahmed .... (work) hard, he will get a prize.
2. A: .... (Will) Maher play table tennis?
B: Yes, he can.
3. I .... (visit) my parents last Monday.
4. .... (Those) machine is the most modern one in the factory.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"A special occasion you are going to"

....
....

....
....



TEST 12

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In Ancient Egypt, men and .... wore similar clothes.
   a boys b girls c children d women
2. They both wore loose, ..., linen clothes with a belt.
   a white b blue c black d yellow
3. Ancient Egyptians did not wear ....
   a sandals b shoes c shirts d socks
4. Ancient Egyptians sometimes wore expensive .... sandals.
   a wood b silver c leather d iron

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Salah has bought new shoes.

Amr : How are you, Salah?
Salah : Fine, thanks.
Amr : Your shoes are beautiful. 1 ....?
Salah : I bought them from a big shop. 2 ....
Amr : A big sale! 3 ....?
Salah : They're L.E. 200. It's a good price.
Amr : Where is that shop?
Salah : 4 ....
Amr : Would you come with me to buy ones, please?
Salah : 5 ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Technology is all around you. It helps develop most of the things we have in our kitchens like washing machines and fridges. Technology is when we take something

from the world of science and then make it into something that people use. Technology uses many different ideas. Scientists help to develop technology to keep our food cold when we are not eating it by using the fridge. However, all of us like to eat hot food. In this way, scientists use technology to help all of us with our daily lives. Technology is very useful in our daily lives. Scientists invented the telephone which we use to talk to other people when we are not with them.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage?
....
2. Why do you think technology is very useful?
....
3. Do you think scientists are great people? Why / Why not?
....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Washing machines, fridges and telephones are examples of ....
   a scientists b phones c technology d people
5. Technology is very useful in our .... lives.
   a everyday b day c diary d dairy
6. We can talk to other people by using ....
   a fridges b cookers c beds d phones

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I am sorry. I took your book .... mistake.
   a by b in c for d from
2. I really like .... fruits like strawberries and peaches.
   a salty b juicy c spicy d hungry
3. Actors and actresses usually do .... before they act.
   a operation b cooking c make-up d housework
4. Writing .... of films needs special skills.
   a scripts b costumes c sculptures d centuries
5. My mobile phone stopped working. I wanted someone to .... it.
   a break b burn c repair d drop

6. There's a lot of .... everywhere. It's very dirty.

a rubbish b music c tradition d nature

7. .... is animal skin which is treated and used to make shoes, bags etc.

a Wool b Gold c Cotton d Leather

8. .... the eggs into the frying pan and cook them in butter.

a Pours b Pour c Pouring d Poured

9. .... this car factory make trucks?

a Can b Is c Do d Are

10. Mr Ali is .... explain the future tense next week.

a go to b going c going to d goes to

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. When you .... (not come) home early, your parents will get worried.
2. He .... (have) an operation next week.
3. Munir is .... (tallest) than all students in our class.
4. I didn't use to understand English, but now I .... (doing).

E Writing

6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

to your friend about a room in your house.

- **Your name is Hend and your email address is hendmail@gmail.com.**
- **Your friend's name is Hala and her email address is hala@yahoo.com.**

موقع التفوق

TEST 13

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. "Durian fruits" grow in Indonesia and ....

a Egypt b London c America d Malaysia

2. Some fruits can be .... centimetres long.

a 40 b 30 c 20 d 10

3. They are hard and .... on the outside.

a blue b red c green d black

4. Some people don't want to eat them because they smell ....

a terrible b salty c wonderful d sweet

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Rawan and Lama are talking about Lama's new phone.

Rawan : When did you order the phone?

Lama : 1 ....

Rawan : When was the delivery?

Lama : 2 ....

Rawan : 3 ....?

Lama : The screen was damaged.

Rawan : 4 ....?

Lama : I want to exchange the phone for a new one that is not damaged.

Rawan : When will the company send the new phone?

Lama : 5 ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I'm Fatma. I made friends with some girls on the internet last week. We didn't really know each other so there was no reason to chat. They were just looking for someone to

chat with them. The second time we met was when I went to the club with my brothers Munir and Adel. Although we played during the day, I liked to go out and spend a nice time with these girls. Then I talked to them about our schools.

One day, I was walking home with some friends when I noticed one of the girls that we met in the club near our school. I didn't realise she was at the same school. When I knew that, I didn't know what to say but I was happy to see her again. Now, we are good friends.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What did Fatma do last week?
....
2. How many brothers does Fatma have?
....
3. Do you make friends on the internet? Why / Why not?
....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. Munir and Adel played with Fatma in the ....
   - a school
   - b street
   - c zoo
   - d club
5. The underlined pronoun **"them"** refers to ....
   - a people on the internet
   - b the girls
   - c Munir and Adel
   - d Fatma, Munir and Adel
6. Fatma was walking home with her ....
   - a brothers
   - b cousins
   - c parents
   - d friends

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. That new road will change the sun's light .... electricity.
   - a from
   - b out
   - c of
   - d into
2. The policeman tried to catch the thieves who quickly ....
   - a disappeared
   - b killed
   - c hurt
   - d rode
3- Rice .... is a dessert made from rice cooked with milk and sugar.
   - a cream
   - b pudding
   - c cake
   - d meal
4- To .... means to succeed in leaving a place where you don't want to be.
   - a park
   - b present
   - c escape
   - d invite

5- It's a perfect crop because we planted it in a good ....
   - a sail
   - b soil
   - c floor
   - d sea
6- I can't go out because I'm looking .... my little sister.
   - a up
   - b at
   - c after
   - d from
7- He was .... that he failed his exams.
   - a happy
   - b pleased
   - c excited
   - d disappointed
8- Next month, I .... in the third year of prep school.
   - a will be
   - b am
   - c was
   - d have
9- Let's not go to the beach. There are .... people there today.
   - a too much
   - b too many
   - c much
   - d a little
10- The express train to Aswan is .... than the stopping train.
   - a faster
   - b fast
   - c as fast
   - d fastest

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Computers .... (design) and invent new machines soon.
2. Mum put .... (any) meat and vegetables inside the bread.
3. Policemen in my country .... (able) make us feel safe.
4. I like the story you told me. Please, tell me another .... (ones).

E Writing

6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

to your friend telling him / her about a problem you had with an online delivery.

- **Your friend's name is Sara and her email address is sara77@gmail.com.**
- **Your name is Mariam and your email address is mariam80@hotmail.com.**

....

TEST 14

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Some .... think that online shopping saves time and money.
   a people   b boys   c friends   d girls
2. Other people like to spend time with friends at the ....
   a parks   b zoos   c shops   d schools
3. We have the .... to do online shopping or go to shops.
   a choice   b mark   c degree   d noise
4. The speaker thinks online shopping is ....
   a bad   b terrible   c useful   d great

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Osama and Bahaa are talking about the weekend.

Osama : What are you doing at the weekend?
Bahaa : ❶ ....
Osama : ❷ ....?
Bahaa : I'm going to travel to Aswan.
Osama : It's a wonderful place. ❸ ....?
Bahaa : Two weeks.
Osama : Who are you going to go with?
Bahaa : ❹ ....
Osama : Could you call me when you arrive there?
Bahaa : ❺ ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

We have a big garden around our house. There is a lot of grass there. Now, it's September and the grass is long and thick. I also have three trees in the garden. There

is a young lemon tree which is very small. It doesn't have any fruit. There is also a peach tree in the garden. There aren't many peaches this year because of the cold weather in April and May. The third tree is an apple tree. Apples always grow well in this area and the tree is full of big green apples. Tomorrow, I want to make a big apple pie. There are the red roses and we have other flowers that are green and yellow. There are two animals in the garden, a beautiful white cat and a friendly dog.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think there aren't many peaches this year?
   ....
2. When is the grass long and thick?
   ....
3. Do you like fruits? Why / Why not?
   ....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. There are .... trees in the garden.
   a two   b ten   c one   d three
5. The tree is full of big .... apples.
   a red   b left   c green   d yellow
6. The garden has a lot of .... and flowers.
   a roses   b dogs   c cats   d people

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When you pull that ...., the machine will start moving.
   a liver   b lever   c screen   d engine
2. People use pepper as a .... to give food good taste.
   a space   b meal   c salt   d spice
3. A theme .... is a large park with machines to ride on, restaurants, etc.
   a park   b degree   c picnic   d garden
4. We .... a nice picnic in the National Park yesterday.
   a took   b had   c bought   d made
5. I .... a dictionary from the school library last week.
   a borrowed   b bought   c lent   d sold
6. .... sure that your son doesn't have bad friends.
   a Take   b Bake   c Make   d Wake

7. I felt so .... when my son got his gold medal.
a proud b disappointed c angry d sad

8. .... foods that have much fat. They are harmful.
a Eat b Don't eat c Always eat d Eats

9. My brother ate one of the two apples and left .... for me.
a one b none c no d ones

10. Mustafa .... in a famous restaurant tomorrow.
a eating b eat c ate d is going to eat

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I don't need .... (some) cheese now.
2. I .... (can) say Ali broke my camera. I broke it.
3. It's very cold. I .... (light) a fire.
4. Samir wanted his mother to iron his .... (colourful, linen, new) shirt.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Your study plans"

....

موقع التفوق

TEST 15

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Last ...., the speaker visited the Karnak Temple in Luxor.
a month b week c year d weekend

2. The speaker's favourite thing was the huge ....
a lakes b temples c columns d statues

3. The speaker recommends .... the temple.
a visiting b leaving c watching d greeting

4. The temple is quite ....
a light b colourful c dark d amazing

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Adel and Hossam are going rock climbing.

Adel : What are you going to do at the weekend?
Hossam : ❶ ....
Adel : ❷ ....?
Hossam : No. It's really exciting.
Adel : ❸ ....?
Hossam : With pleasure.
Adel : When are we going to meet?
Hossam : ❹ ....
Adel : 8 a.m is better for me.
Hossam : OK. ❺ ....

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

In every country, there are always some snack foods. For example, falafel is very popular in Egypt. It is made from a mixture of beans, fresh vegetables, and spices. It

is really delicious. In Morocco, sfenj is usually made in the street food stalls. Sfenj has lots of fat and sugar in it and it is crispy, light and very sweet. Samosa is popular in India. It is a snack with spicy vegetables.

Rojak is a Malaysian spicy fruit salad with a mixture of flavours unlike any other. It is spicy, sweet, salty, soft, and crispy. The sweet and spicy sauce is what makes the fruit salad wonderful. Finally, you must try them all! They are all delicious.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage?
....
2. Where does rojak come from?
....
3. When do you think falafel is eaten in Egypt?
....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Sfenj is popular in ....
   a Egypt b India c Malaysia d Morocco
5. Samosa is a snack with .... vegetables.
   a spicy b sweet c ugly d bad
6. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the ....
   a sfenj b falafel c samosa d rojak

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I think living on the moon is .... We will never be able to live there.
   a possible b easy c impossible d probable
2. I like this drink. It .... like strawberry.
   a feels b tastes c touches d hears
3. I .... if you could help me carry this heavy box.
   a wander b tell c work d wonder
4. I'd like to go to the theatre; which play do you ....
   a recommend b comment c advise d intend
5. We wear heavy clothes in winter to .... warm.
   a look b grow c see d keep
6. The bamboo .... makes a lot of money in China.
   a industry b luxury c environment d nature

7. You should eat .... vegetables and fruit to be healthy.
   a bad b fresh c ugly d wrong
8. What .... you like for tomorrow's breakfast?
   a does b are c have d would
9. Let's take .... bus. It goes to Al Ahram.
   a these b this c those d then
10. Mona is .... a test next Monday.
   a do b does c did d doing

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I think there is .... (a few) butter in the frying pan.
2. Samy knows how .... (paint) walls.
3. Amgad .... (travel) to Aswan next month.
4. Which mobile would you buy; the small .... (ones) or the big one?

E Writing

6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

to your friend Salma to tell her about your holiday.

- Your name is Habiba and your email address is habiba2006@hotmail.com
- Your friend's email address is salma2007@gmail.com

....
....
....

TEST 16

الأزهر الشريف

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. The speaker's favourite food is ....
   a falafel b cheese omelette c koshari d beans
2. The speaker found the recipe ....
   a in a book b on TV c on the radio d on the internet

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1. Mahmoud : Would you like some sandwiches , Omar?
   Omar : ....
2. Zeinab : ....?
   Marwa : No, I don't know how to use this machine.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A plane is .... than a train.
   a light b small c slower d faster
2. Don't forget to turn your laptop .... before you go to sleep.
   a on b off c of d into
3. Lunch is ready now. You can .... it.
   a cover b wash c serve d boil
4. I .... go on the internet by this mobile.
   a can b able to c am able d know how
5. She is .... her mother to prepare for a birthday party on Saturday.
   a helps b helping c help d helped
6. .... belt is made of leather.
   a These b This c Those d They

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Samir was a farmer who worked on a farm. He wanted to live in the town and work there, but he couldn't read or write. He worked in a restaurant and began to wash dishes and clean the floors. At the same time, he began to sell vegetables. Samir succeeded in his work. He built a school to teach people who couldn't read or write.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Samir work before he went to the town?
   ....
2. What did Samir do in the town?
   ....
3. Why did Samir build a school?
   ....

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Samir was a ....
   a teacher b farmer c doctor d vet
5. Samir was .... dishes in the restaurant.
   a washing b making c painting d breaking

5 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"A review of the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art"

....
....
....
....

موقع الخموات

TEST 17

الأزهر الشريف

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The speaker's going to a .... next week.
   a wedding b festival c birthday d concert
2. The occasion will be at a ....
   a restaurant b park c hotel d house

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1- Judy : How many handbags do you have, Ola?
   Ola : ....
2- Aimed : ....?
   Ziad : The green trousers are my favourite.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We .... live without air and water.
   a can b can't c are d able to
2. You should never .... friends with people you don't know.
   a form b exercise c practise d make
3. I bought two toys. I took one and gave the other .... to my brother.
   a ones b once c one d none
4. Which of these is not a dairy product?
   a rice b cheese c milk d butter
7. Nouran never draws but these days she .... a lot.
   a draws b drawing c is drawing d draw
8. .... is used for making cars.
   a Metal b Cotton c Wood d Wool

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

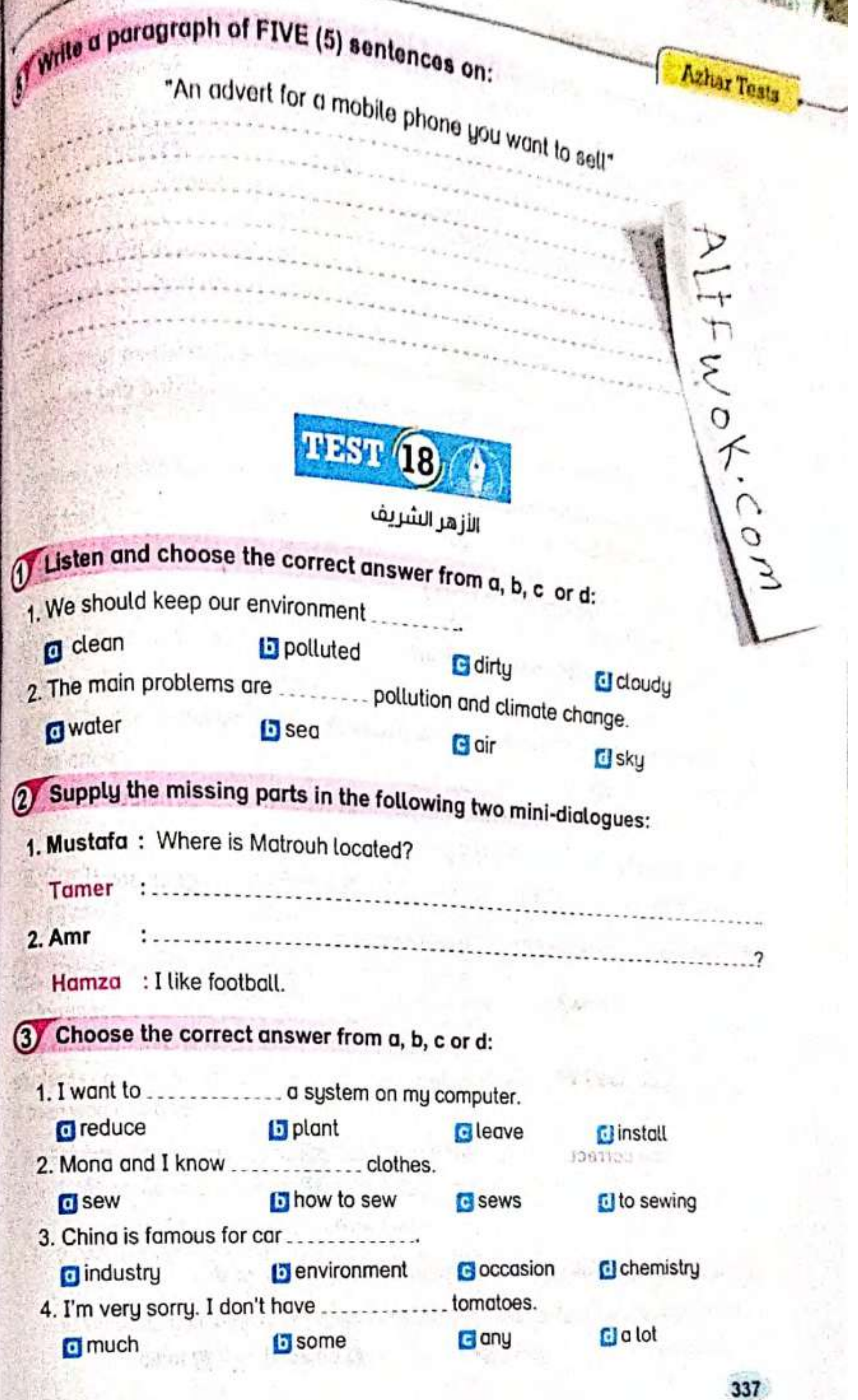
Adel is 13 years old. He goes to preparatory school. He is very clever and helpful. He gets high marks at school. All of his teachers like him. At home, he always helps his mother with the housework. He cleans his room after getting up in the morning. He goes to the kitchen to help his mother with making meals. Then he washes up the dishes. He also sets the table before eating. Adel's father is a carpenter. Adel always helps him at his work after school. So, his parents like him so much.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. How old is Adel?
   ....
2. Adel is clever. How?
   ....
3. Do you like Adel? Why / Why not?
   ....

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Adel goes to .... school.
   a secondary b primary c preparatory d driving
5. He helps his mother with making ....
   a meals b clothes c the beds d homework



5 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"An advert for a mobile phone you want to sell"

....

TEST 18

الأزهر الشريف

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We should keep our environment ....
   a clean b polluted c dirty d cloudy
2. The main problems are .... pollution and climate change.
   a water b sea c air d sky

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1. **Mustafa** : Where is Matrouh located?
   Tamer : ....
2. **Amr** : ....?
   Hamza : I like football.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I want to .... a system on my computer.
   a reduce b plant c leave d install
2. Mona and I know .... clothes.
   a sew b how to sew c sews d to sewing
3. China is famous for car ....
   a industry b environment c occasion d chemistry
4. I'm very sorry. I don't have .... tomatoes.
   a much b some c any d a lot

5. That camera is cheap, but this .... is expensive.

a ones b one c only d once

6. A wind turbine is equipment that uses the wind to make ....

a electricity b pollution c food d clothes

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Steve was born in Tokyo, Japan in 1950. He moved to London with his parents when he was 5 years old. He started school there and his father began work at a hospital. His mother was a housewife and he had four brothers.

He lived in England for 2 years then moved to Amman, Jordan where he lived there for 10 years. Steve then moved to the U.A.E to study. He succeeded and returned to Jordan. His parents were very proud of him.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. When was Steve born?

....

2. How many brothers did he have?

....

3. What do you think of Steve? Why?

....

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Steve's mother is a ....

a doctor b housewife c teacher d nurse

5. Steve lived in .... for ten years.

a Japan b London c Jordan d England

5 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Activities that you want to do in the future"

....

....

....

....

TEST 19

الأزهر الشريف

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The speaker's friend is from ....

a China b Egypt c England d India

2. The diet in his country is ....

a healthy b fatty c juicy d unhealthy

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1. **Taher** : What's your favourite subject?

Muhammad : ....

2. **Sameh** : ....?

Ramy : You can take a taxi to go to the bank.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When was the last time you .... proud?

a feel b felt c feels d feeling

2. My mother has a modern .... machine. She makes us nice clothes.

a seeing b spending c saving d sewing

3. About five million people .... in Alexandria now.

a are living b live c lives d living

4. This T-shirt is classic. I want a casual ....

a ones b once c one d none

5. A .... is a plane that does not have a pilot.

a cartoon b drone c stone d balloon

6. Don't .... the tomatoes too small.

a chop b pour c addict d break

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Japanese students don't have a uniform at primary school, but they have to wear <u>one</u> at secondary school. They have to clean the school building at lunchtime. Most students practise sports or music after school. Many students also have private lessons if they would like to.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. When do Japanese students have to wear uniforms?

....

2. Who clean the school building at lunchtime?

....

3. What do you think of Japanese schools?

....

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Most students practise .... or music.
   a) drawing   b) sports   c) acting   d) painting
5. The underlined word **"one"** refers to ....
   a) student   b) school   c) lesson   d) uniform

(5) Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"What sort of learner you are"

....
....
....
....
....
....

TEST 20

الأزهر الشريف

(1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Online shopping saves ....
   a) money   b) pollution   c) time   d) energy
2. .... people don't like online shopping.
   a) Some   b) A lot of   c) Many   d) A few

(2) Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1. **Student** : How can we keep the environment clean?
   Teacher : ....
2. **Mum** : ....
   Dad : I'm going to buy some milk.

(3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When the two men .... the lever, the car started moving.
   a) pulled   b) broke   c) hurt   d) cared
2. Do you know how .... music?
   a) play   b) to play   c) playing   d) plays

Don't buy these trousers, there are cheaper .... in the next shop.
   a) one   b) once   c) ones   d) none
. Which of these is bad for your teeth?
   a) sugar   b) salt   c) eggs   d) vegetables
5. Soha .... her mother in the kitchen now.
   a) is helping   b) help   c) helped   d) will help
6. .... media makes us be able to talk to people on the internet.
   a) Special   b) Social   c) Private   d) Society

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Experts say that adults need at least 6 hours of sleep every night. If they do not get ough sleep, they will feel sleepy the whole day. Younger kids need at least 9 hours sleep every night. Also parents with busy lifestyles stay up late and their kids do e same.

Kids with little sleep have hard time sleeping at night and this will affect their daily utine and make <u>them</u> less active and productive through the day at school.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. How many hours of sleep should an adult sleep at night?
   ....
2. How many hours of sleep should little children sleep at night?
   ....
3. Can sleep affect life? How?
   ....

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. If you don't get enough sleep, you'll feel ....
   a) active   b) sleepy   c) well   d) happy
5. The underlined word **"them"** refers to ....
   a) experts   b) adults   c) men   d) kids

Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"How do you think life will change in the future?"

....
....
....
....

موقع التفوق

موقع التفوق

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات إنشائية ورسائل بريد إلكتروني ووحدات للوحدات

Paragraphs

Unit 7

1- Are you for or against online shopping?

Shopping online is great! Firstly, it saves time. Most people don't want to spend much ti travelling to the shops. They can stay at home and buy the things they want in a few minut Secondly, they have more choice online. Also, if more people shop online, there will be few cars on roads and less pollution! However, some people don't like online shopping. They li to see what they are buying at shops. They like to try the things they are buying first. Also, th don't like to waste time waiting for a delivery.

2- How do you think life will change in the future?

What will happen in the future? This is a question most of us ask. For me, I think travelli in time will be impossible. I don't think we will live on the moon. It's impossible. I think we have flying cars. I hope we will have no illnesses. I think scientists will explore the bottom the sea. They may discover new animals and new kinds of fish. I think life in the future is s a secret.

3- Life in the future

Technology changes the world. I think life in the future will be different from our life. I thi people will be more addicted to mobile phones. People who love online games will spe more money on them. People will spend more time watching videos online. They will also u social media more than they do today. People will have modern devices that will help the translate different languages. They will be able to travel in time by using time machines. Th will have flying cars. They will live on the moon.

4- Positive and negative sides of using technology

Using technology became very important in our life. Most of our daily life activities ne technology. We use it in learning, communicating and many other activities. Using technolo is sometimes positive. It saves effort and time. The negative side of using technology is t it sometimes wastes our money and time. Playing computer games is an example of that. E should schools use computer games in the classroom? I think it'll be positive if that is relat to teaching children. They will be more interested and excited, but this should be controll well.

Unit 8

Some unusual food you have tried

Once I travelled abroad with my friends. We decided to have lunch at a famous restaurant. e tried a very interesting snack. It was called "Durian fruits". "Durian fruits" grow in Indonesia d Malaysia. They're soft and yellow on the inside. We liked to eat them very much. They re very healthy and tasted delicious. Some people don't want to eat them because they nell terrible. People use durian fruits to make juice, ice creams and soup.

Indian diet

I'm from India. The diet in my country is very healthy for many reasons. Firstly, we eat a lot fresh vegetables. We eat green, purple and yellow vegetables. Furthermore, we don't have ch fat in our diet. Another important thing is that we eat very heallty breakfast. This gives us s of energy to start the day. That's why Indians live long lives. We don't eat much meat and iry products. Our food is usually spicy. Many people all over the world like to try Indian food.

What you can eat to stay healthy

Healthy food is really important for everyone. It helps us grow well and gives us energy. If u want to be healthy, you should eat all types of food. We need to drink much water every day. airy products like milk and cheese are healthy. They give us calcium. It helps us to have strong nes. Meat, cheese and nuts have protein in them. We need protein to have a strong body. uit and nuts are healthy snacks. People need to eat fresh fruit and vegetables every day.

Your favourite meal

My favourite food is cheese omelette. It's very delicious. I found the recipe on the internet. I ked to try it very much. I asked my mother about it. She knew the meal and helped me make I make it by beating eggs in a bowl. I use some cheese. I heat the eggs in a pan. I don't add alt because the cheese is salty enough. I can eat the meal with tomatoes and hot bread. It stes delicious. Why don't you try it?

Unit 9

A review of a museum you know "The Museum of Modern Egyptian Art"

Last week, I visited the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art. It is in Cairo. It's famous for art Egypt from the 20th and 21st centuries. The artists were really good because they showed hat life was like in Egypt in the past and now. The cartoons were also really cool! I also saw ts of sculptures. My favourite thing was a painting called Al Madina by Mahmoud Said. I commend it to all my friends.

Difficulties that disabled people have

We see disabled people around us. There are blind people who can't see. There are deaf ople who can't hear. There are some people who can't walk. They are useful to our country. me of them do important jobs. Try to help disabled people. Do not leave bags on the floor public means of transport. Tell a blind person about objects on the street. Shout at a rson if you think they can't hear you. Ask a person in a wheelchair if they need help. We ould all treat them as normal people like us.

3- A review of a film you have just watched "Jurassic World"

I watched a film called "Jurassic World." It is an adventure film. Many stars act in the fi
It is about a theme park. In that park, there is a group of scientists. They help dinosaurs to l
again! Then some of the dinosaurs escape. I think the action is exciting. My favourite thing
the scary dinosaurs. They look very real. But, in my opinion, the story isn't very interesting
new. I recommend this film if you like exciting and scary films, but not if you want a good st

Unit 10

1- An advert for a mobile phone you want to sell

I'm selling a mobile phone. It's new. I didn't use it. It is a present for my birthday bu
already have one that is the same. It is very modern. It is black with a large touch screen
can go on the internet. It has got an MP3. You can listen to music and watch videos on it
can store 3000 phone numbers. It has got a wonderful camera. It can take many photos at o
time. It's perfect for work or study. The price is LE5000.

If you are interested, email me for more information "hero55@yahoo.com".

2- A special occasion you are going to

I am going to a special occasion next week. My friend's sister is getting married next Sund
He invited me to the wedding. It will be a big party. It will be at a big hotel. Unfortunatel
don't have something new to wear. I want to look smart in the party. I will go to a clothes sh
tomorrow. I will buy a jacket. I saw it in its window last week. I will buy a new pair of sho
too. I like black, leather shoes. I think these items will be perfect for this occasion.

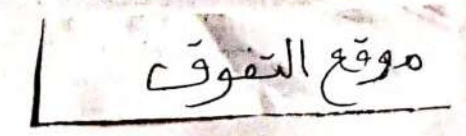
Unit 11

1- How to keep our environment clean

We should do our best to keep the environment clean. There are many environmen
problems that we should face. The main problems are water and air pollution and clim
change. There's a lot of air pollution from the traffic in cities and this is very unhealt
Trees are good for the environment and help reduce air pollution, so we should plant m
trees. Throwing away old phones can be bad for the environment. We should recycle mob
phones. Green inventions are environment-friendly. These inventions present solutions
environmental problems without damaging the environment.

2- Activities you want to do in the future

There are many exciting activities that I can do in Egypt. I want to go diving in the Red S
The coral reefs there are wonderful. Although diving is a bit scary, I want to try it. I want o
to go on a hot-air balloon. I think the view from the top will be fantastic. I think it's danger
but I'd like to try it one day. I hope I try bungee jumping. I think it's the most dangerous activ
This activity isn't suitable for people who are afraid of high places.



Unit 12

What sort of learner you are

There are many different learning styles. Among the different ways of learning, some prefer
learn by hearing, seeing, doing things, reading and writing. For me the best way to remember
nglish grammar is to make up a song about it! Then I sing the song quietly to myself. I think
s a great way to remember irregular verbs! I learn best by listening. I also find it difficult to
derstand science books, but when I do an experiment in the laboratory, I understand what
happening! I learn best by doing things.

How to learn English vocabulary

Most English-language learners face a problem. They find it hard to remember vocabulary.
, there are many ways that can help them. They can make flashcards of words that they
ed to remember. They should watch English-language TV programmes or films. They
ould read many stories and news articles. This is the best way to learn vocabulary. They
n also work with friends and try to test each other on important words.

Your study plans

You should make a plan if you have a project or an exam. There are many steps you should
llow to make a study plan. You should be organised. You should know what you need to do
nd when to do it. You should manage your time. You should make a study timetable. You
hould find a quiet space to study. If your house is too busy, you could go to the library. You
hould take breaks. You should sleep well.

Emails

Unit 7

A problem you had with an online delivery

From : mariam08@hotmail.com.
To : fatma77@gmail.com.
Subject : A problem with an online delivery

Dear Fatma,

am writing to tell you about a problem I had with an online delivery. You know I like
modern technology so much. I also like online shopping. It saves me time and I never
want to spend much time travelling to the shops. I ordered a new laptop computer
three weeks ago. The delivery was yesterday but I am still waiting. I need to get it as
soon as possible because it can help me with my work. I emailed the seller and he/
she replied that he/she would send it as soon as possible.

Yours faithfully,
Mariam

Unit 8

- Your favourite snack

From : judy88@hotmail.com.
To : hanaa77@gmail.com.
Subject : My favourite snack

Dear Hanaa,

How are you? Thanks for your last email. You asked me to describe my favourite snack love hawawshi and I often have it when I get home from school. It is easy to make. Fir you need some nice bread. Then you put some meat and vegetables inside the brea You can put some salt on it, too. I don't like to have any salt, though, because it is not ve healthy. Now you cook it in the oven. It is delicious! Do you have any favourite snack Describe them to me in your next email!

Best wishes.
Yours,
Judy

Unit 9

1- Someone in your family that you are proud of

From : ramypost@gmail.com
To : salah666@yahoo.com
Subject : Someone in my family that I am proud of

Dear Salah,

How are you? How is your family? I write this email to tell you about my family. I live w my parents, a brother and two sisters. My grandparents live with us. I am so proud of r grandfather. He doesn't work now. He was a famous musician in the past. He played t violin. He played in a famous orchestra. Many people know him. They like his music ve much. You can see his shows on Youtube. I'd like to know about your family, too. Write me soon. With my best wishes.

Yours,
Ramy

2- An invitation to your birthday

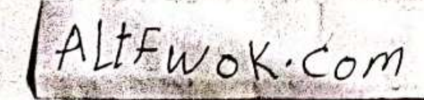
From : hassanpost@gmail.com
To : emad666@yahoo.com
Subject : An invitation

Dear Emad,

How are you and your family? I received your email yesterday. I was so pleased to h from you. It's a pleasure to tell you that my birthday is next Sunday. I was wondering if y could come to my house on that day. I'll be very happy if you come. All our friends will there. I invited them all. We are having a big party. We will spend a nice time. We will cakes, play games and have fun. The party will start at 8 p.m. Please, don't be late.

Yours,
Hassan







Unit 10

A description of the clothes you usually wear

From : tamer505@yahoo.com
To : ihabomar22@gmail.com
Subject : A description of my clothes

Dear Ihab,

How are you and your family? I want to tell you something about the clothes I wear. I usually wear casual clothes. They are very comfortable. They look nice. I like them colourful. I don't like wearing traditional clothes. I need clothes that help me move freely. I buy my clothes by myself at the clothes shops. They are a little expensive, but I like that. I want to hear from you soon.

Yours Tamer,

A description of a room in your house

From : hani(a)@yahoo.com
To : redamail@gmail.com
Subject : A room in my house

Dear Hani(a),

How are you and your family? I want to describe my bedroom. My room looks great, especially when I moved the furniture around. Now, the first thing you see when you walk into the room is my bed. It sits against the wall, between two big windows. On a bookshelf above my bed are my school books. To the right of my bed is a desk with a lamp on top. My desk doesn't look so good at the moment! On the floor there is a yellow carpet. The carpet is big and round and covers most of the floor. I hope you enjoyed this description of my room! Please, write to me about your bedroom.

Best wishes.
Yours,
Reda

Unit 11

1- What do you think the weather is going to be today?

From : ramialaa@hotmail.com.
To : salahzaki@yahoo.com.
Subject : The weather today

Dear Salah,

How are you? What do you think the weather is going to be like later today? It was sunny in the mornings but it was a bit windy. I'm looking out of the window now. It's cloudy and cold. I think it's going to rain. Could you send me an email telling me about the weather in your town. I'm waiting. My regards to your family.

Yours,
Rami

2- Your holiday

From : habiba2006@hotmail.com.

To : salma2007@gmail.com.

Subject : My holiday

Dear Salma,

How are you and your family? I hope you're having a good time. I'm having a good ti[me] with my family in Aswan. Today, we had a picnic on Elephantine Island. At the moment, I [am] sitting by the water and watching the sunset. It's very beautiful.

We're staying with my parents' friends and they are very kind. When we arrived the d[ay] before yesterday, it was very late. They still wanted to get up and make us dinner; and th[ey] bring us fresh dates for breakfast every day.

Yesterday morning, we visited Abu Simbel temple and the Nubian Museum. I've alwa[ys] wanted to go there. I learnt such a lot of history in one morning. Tomorrow, we're goi[ng] to visit Lake Nasser. I'm looking forward to visiting it. It sounds really interesting. See yo[u] soon.

Lots of love,

Habiba

Unit 12

1- Advice about problems with your sister

From : fatma345@gmail.com.

To : radwa898@yahoo.com.

Subject : Advice about problems with your sister

Dear Radwa,

How are you and your family? I hope you are fine. You should tell your sister how yo[u] feel about her. You should tell her that you miss her so much. My advice to you is to fi[nd] common things between you and her. If I were you, I would share my hobbies and interes[ts] with her. You can read an interesting story together. You should tell her that talking on th[e] phone for a long time is bad for her health. You should advise her not to waste her time o[n] the internet. I'm looking forward to hearing from you.

Best wishes.

Yours,

Fatma

2- Communication with animals

From : magda898@yahoo.com

To : ola345@gmail.com.

Subject : Communication with animals

Dear Ola,

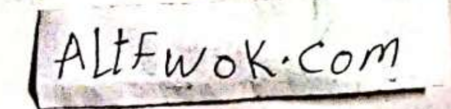
My uncle is a farmer. I visit his farm every weekend. I look after the animals there. I li[ke] them very much because I think they understand me. Animals communicate, both to us a[nd] to each other. One way animals communicate is by using body language.

For example, horses touch noses to say hello to another horse they like. Bees dance wh[en] they find a good flower. Some birds can copy sounds. I will be happy if you visit my uncle['s] farm.

Yours,

Magda





Listening material

Unit 7

Azhar Listening

It's important not to become addicted to [te]chnology. If you feel you can't live without your [ph]one, you should try taking a break every day [for] an hour or more.

Test Listening

Online shopping is great! Firstly, it saves me [tim]e. I don't want to spend lots of time travelling [to] the shops. I can stay at home and buy the [thi]ngs I want in a few minutes.

Unit 8

Azhar Listening

Fava beans and falafel are very popular in [Eg]ypt. They are really delicious. People in Egypt [lik]e to eat them for breakfast.

Test Listening

Durian fruits grow in Indonesia and Malaysia. [S]ome fruits can be 30 centimetres long. They are [ha]rd and green on the outside, but soft and yellow [o]n the inside. Durian fruits are very healthy and [ta]ste delicious.

Unit 9

Azhar Listening

Eman Dadr is a musician. She is able to play [th]e violin well. She started playing it when she [w]as six.

Test Listening

Last month, I visited the Egyptian Museum [of] Modern Art in Cairo. Egypt is famous for its [an]cient art, but I was interested in seeing art by [E]gyptians from the 20th and 21st centuries.

Review C

I've bought a nice book. The articles are [al]ways interesting to read and they have fantastic [p]hotographs, too. I really like the cartoons [b]ecause they make me laugh!

Unit 10

Azhar Listening

I'm Leila, I have two nice pairs of sandals. I usually wear them in summer. They are my favourite. I bought them last year.

Test Listening

Egypt is famous for growing crops to make material. The Ancient Egyptians grew plants by the Nile to make linen. Almost everyone wore clothes made of linen and they also used the plants to make baskets.

Unit 11

Azhar Listening

Drones can fly, but they don't need a person to fly them. We can use remote controls. This means we can control drones from the ground.

Test Listening

There's a lot air pollution from the traffic in our city and this is very unhealthy. Trees are good for the environment and help reduce air pollution - So next week, we're going to plant trees on the roof of our school and make a school roof garden.

Unit 12

Azhar Listening

When I was young, I wanted to be a scientist. Now I find science very difficult so I don't think I will be a scientist.

Test Listening

I have an older sister (she's three years older than me). We used to be best friends, but now she doesn't want to talk to me very much. She is always on the internet or talking to people on her phone.

Review D

There is a lot of air pollution where I live. My neighbours never recycle their rubbish . In my view, it is important to recycle. We should take plastic and glass out of bins and recycle it.

End of Term Practice

Amira : Hi, Injy. Do you know how to cook?
Injy : Yes, I can cook a few things. What do you want to make?
Amira : Shall we make a cake for Hala? It's her birthday tomorrow.
Injy : Good idea! She likes healthy food, so if we want to make her something healthy, we should make a carrot cake.
Amira : Okay, we will need a recipe. Here's one on my phone.
Injy : What do we need?
Amira : We need some flour, a lot of carrots, a little sugar and some eggs.
Injy : Good, I think we have all of those. What shall I do, Amira?
Amira : Perhaps you could mix the flour and sugar in a bowl, Injy. I'll cut the carrots.
Injy : Okay. How old will Hala be?
Amira : She is fourteen tomorrow.
Injy : If she is fourteen, we should put fourteen nuts on the cake when it's cooked. She likes nuts.
Amira : That's a good idea!

Test 1

I ordered a new mobile phone last week and the delivery was today. When I opened the box, the screen was damaged. I would like to change the phone for a new one that is not damaged.

Test 2

Last month, I visited the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art in Cairo. Egypt is famous for its art. My favourite thing in the museum was a painting called Al Madina by Mahmoud Said. It made me feel happy because it was very colourful.

Test 3

Yesterday, I read about a new invention. This invention is half-motorbike and half- helicopter. It can push you into the air at speed of a fast car. After I read it, I was very interested in it.

Test 4

Ancient Egyptians' clothes were simple. They wore loose, white, linen clothes. They wore expensive leather sandals. They loved to wear heavy metal jewellery. Egyptians wore beautif[ul] gold necklaces.

Test 5

I'm having a fantastic time with my family [in] Siwa. Today, we had a picnic on Fatanas Islan[d]. At the moment, I'm sitting by the water a[nd] watching the sunset. It's very beautiful.

Test 6

Judy plays squash every week and needs [to] be healthy, so what does she eat? She is allerg[ic] to nuts, so she doesn't eat any cakes becaus[e] they sometimes have nuts in them. She eats a l[ot] of fish because it helps to make her strong.

Test 7

Egyptian cotton is famous all over the worl[d]. Because cotton from Egypt is very good, it [is] often used to make luxury clothes and things f[or] homes. Many people work in the cotton industr[y] from farmers to people making or selling clothe[s] and materials.

Test 8

Last month, I visited the Textile Museu[m] in Cairo. The museum has lots of clothes fro[m] different times in history. I thought the clothe[s] from Ancient Egypt were fantastic. From my poi[nt] of view, the statues showing people wearing th[e] clothes really teach you about life in the past.

Test 9

I love phones, but I know that throwing o[ld] phones away can be bad for the environment. [We] started a project in my school to recycle mobi[le] phones. From tomorrow, people are going [to] bring us their old phones and were going to reus[e] parts from them to repair other phones.

Test 10

I love hawawshi. It is easy to make. First, yo[u] need some nice bread. Then you put some me[at] and vegetables inside the bread. You can p[ut] some salt on it, too. Now you cook it in the ove[n].

Test 11

At the moment, I'm walking in the des[ert] in the Nabq nature park. It's really interesti[ng]. [Ye]sterday, we visited the mountains. Tomorrow, [w]e're going to visit Wadi Kid. I'm looking forward [to] seeing the beautiful birds that live there.

Test 12

In Ancient Egypt, men and women wore [si]milar clothes. They both wore loose, white, [lin]en clothes with a belt. Most of the time, Ancient [E]gyptians did not wear shoes but some people [s]ometimes wore expensive leather sandals.

Test 13

"Durian fruits" grow in Indonesia and Malaysia. [So]me fruits can be 30 centimetres long. They [ar]e hard and green on the outside, but soft and [ye]llow on the inside. Some people don't want to [ea]t them because they smell terrible.

Test 14

Some people think that online shopping saves [ti]me and money. Other people like to spend time [w]ith friends at the shops. We have the choice to [d]o online shopping or go to shops. I think online [s]hopping is great.

Test 15

Last weekend, I visited the Karnak Temple in [L]uxor. My favourite thing was the huge columns. [I] recommend visiting the temple. It is a good idea [t]o visit it, because the museum is amazing.

Test 16

My favourite food is cheese omelette. It's [d]elicious. I found the recipe on the internet. I [li]ked to try it very much.

Test 17

I'm going to a special occasion next week. It's [a] wedding. It will be a big party at a hotel. I have [b]ought new clothes for that.

Test 18

We should keep our environment clean. The [m]ain problems are air pollution and climate [c]hange. Trees are good for the environment and [h]elp reduce air pollution.

Test 19

I have a friend from India. The diet in his country is very healthy. They eat a lot of vegetables. They don't have much fat in their diet.

Test 20

Online shopping is great. It saves time. You can have many choices online. However, some people don't like online shopping.

End of Term Practice Answers

1- Listen and choose the correct
1. a. few things
2. b. Hala likes healthy food.
3. c. cut the carrots
4. b. fourteen

2- Complete the following dialogue:
1. time
2. Shall I bring some books
3. good idea
4. We'll need to write down important notes.
5. You're right!

3- Read the text. Then answer the questions:

A) Answer
1. Because their brain doesn't understand it.
2. To train their brain to eat more healthily

B) Choose
3. b. ate it and didn't like it.
4. a. know because you have seen it before
5. d. a and b

4- Choose the correct answer

1. b. should see	2. c. is not able
3. d. any	4. b. a little
5. c. how to	6. a. translate
7. b. take	8. d. energy
9. c. heat	10. a. crying

5- Read and complete with

1. invention	2. action
3. add	4. visiting

6- Choose one of the following:
students' own answers



Dictation & Homework Exercises

2nd Preparatory

2nd Term 2022

Name : ....

Group : ....



التوزيع : ١٠ شارع كامل صدقى – الفجالة – القاهرة

تليفون : ٢٥٩١٩١٦٥

للاستعلام وإبداء الآراء والإقتراحات • الإدارة/ تليفون : ٢٥٨٨٠١٠٢

Unit 7

Unit 7 Technology and the future

Lessons 1 & 2

الكهرباء	يترجم
أنواع الطاقة الشمسية	دراجة بخارية
طائرة مروحية	أسرعة
تطبيق	سماعات الرأس
يخترع	تنبؤ
تصحيح/تصويب	يصحح/يصوب
إختراع	ترجمة
يدفع «للأمام»	يتنبأ
مقالة (فى جريدة)	آلة
وقت فراغ	التكنولوجيا
الطقس	ودود
جناح	مولد
مشاريع/أعمال تجارية	أكثر برودة

لديه وقت
ينتظر توصيل (طلب)
لديه اختيار
يدخر المال
يوفر الوقت
يملك مالاً
يهدر (يضيع) الوقت
يقضي وقت
ينفق مالاً
يهدر (يضيع) المال

Homework Exercises Language Functions, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Manal is watching a film about new inventions.

Nada : What are you watching, Manal?
Manal : ❶ ....
Nada : ❷ ....?
Manal : The film is showing a car that runs on electricity.
Nada : ❸ ....?
Manal : No, I hope it will be sold in Egypt soon.
Nada : Do you think it will be an environment-friendly car?
Manal : ❹ ....
Nada : Do you think it will be expensive?
Manal : No. ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I lost my .... yesterday, so I couldn't listen to my favourite songs.
   a drone b headphones c jacket d app
2. Your city is usually crowded with big cars. Why don't you get a/an ....?
   a motorbike b motor c engine d tablet
3. We asked our English teacher to .... some words into Arabic.
   a believe b think c push d translate
4. The mobile is a very useful .... It helps us communicate.
   a correction b invention c translation d prediction
5. Osama always .... much money on clothes.
   a stays b leaves c spends d takes
6. We are .... money because we plan to buy a new house soon.
   a wasting b saving c spending d doing
7. I will live in the same town when I .... married.
   a get b getting c got d gets

8. What .... you do when you leave school?
a did b does c are d will

9. The weather tomorrow .... warm and sunny.
a are b is c will be d was

10. If you .... finish your homework, your teacher will be angry.
a don't b didn't c aren't d isn't

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. When dad .... (arrive), we will have lunch.
2. If you don't wear a jacket, you .... (be) cold.
3. If it .... (becoming) very hot this weekend, I'll stay at home.
4. Mum .... (stay) in bed if she feels ill tomorrow.
5. When will uncle Ali .... (arrives) home?

Lessons 3 & 4

يختفى	يتأكد / يفحص ....
ذراع تشغيل آلة	خبير ....
مدمن على (معتاد على)	مسافر عبر الزمن ....
عن طريق الخطأ	غريب ....
وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	نموذج مصغر ....
يستكشف	بدلاً من ذلك ....
فظيع / سيئ جدًا	استراحة ....
يسحب	فجأة ....
مستحيل	مليد بالغيوم ....
صداع	تغير المناخ ....
يُسقط	الفضاء ....
يرتب	يضحك ....
ينسخ / نسخة	يرد - رد ....
يشارك / يتشارك	موقع على الإنترنت ....
	كوكب ....

يسبح فى البحر ....
يذهب / يسافر عبر الزمن ....
يبقى بالخارج ....
يستكشف قاع البحر ....
يجرب تناول الفاكهة ....
يفهم درس ....
يعيش على القمر ....
يزور الأهرامات ....
يمتلك سيارات طائرة ....
ليس لديه أمراض ....

Homework Exercises Language Functions, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Zeinab is talking to Suzy about technology.

Zeinab : Do you like using technology, Suzy?

Suzy : ❶ ....

Zeinab : What type of technology do you use?

Suzy : ❷ ....

Zeinab : ❸ ....?

Suzy : This laptop helps me searching the internet for my study.

Zeinab : ❹ ....?

Suzy : Yes. Sometimes the internet is very slow.

Zeinab : What do you do to solve this problem?

Suzy : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The children and their dad went out to .... the mountain.
   a damage b break c hurt d explore
2. That scientist made a new machine that was able to .... in time.
   a made b travel c turn d build
3. When I use the computer for a long time, I get a .... and my head hurts.
   a blood b toothache c headache d stomachache
4. The boys .... the door open and went inside the room.
   a built b made c formed d pulled
5. .... allows people to talk to each other on the internet.
   a A screen b A mouse c Social media d A button
6. You should ask for help if you don't .... a lesson.
   a understand b ask c miss d save
7. If I .... bored tonight, I will read an English book.
   a feels b feel c feeling d felt

8. .... dad is tired, he should have eight hours of sleep.
   a Where b What c If d So
9. You shouldn't watch television all day if you .... free.
   a are b be c am d is
10. If you .... exams, you should start to revise for them.
    a has b had c have d are

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What should Kamal .... (done) if he doesn't find his keys?
2. Should the boys shout for help if they .... (had) a problem?
3. If you .... (didn't) meet the manager, you should come tomorrow.
4. When mum feels bored with the film, she shouldn't .... (watched) it.
5. If you are studying, we .... (should) make a noise.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Using technology in a useful way"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Lessons 5, 6 & 7

كافٍ ----------------	بخير ----------------
يطلب/يأمر ----------------	شكل ----------------
ألعاب الفيديو ----------------	النقل ----------------
بالخارج ----------------	يرسل رسالة نصية ----------------
يتلف ----------------	بإخلاص ----------------
حاسة السمع ----------------	تحيات ----------------
عالي الصوت (صاخب) ----------------	ملف فيديو ----------------
عجلة ----------------	تمارين رياضية ----------------
لقب (اسم العائلة) ----------------	مخاطر ----------------
رأي/وجهة نظر ----------------	شاشة ----------------
فكرة ----------------	خطأ ----------------
بالرغم من ذلك ----------------	إنسان آلي ----------------
مناظرة/جدال ----------------	عزيز/غالٍ ----------------

يحصل على قدر نوم كافٍ ----------------
يقضي ساعات في اللعب ----------------
يتفحص وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي ----------------
يقضي (وقت) أمام شاشات ----------------
يشاهد فيديوهات عبر الانترنت ----------------
يعاني من مشاكل في البصر ----------------

Homework Exercises Language Functions & Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali and Mohsen are talking about technology.

Ali : What do you think of technology?

Mohsen : I think it is both good and bad.

Ali : ❶ --?

Mohsen : It is good if we use it well. It can help us exercise.

Ali : ❷ ---------------------------------. How can technology be bad?

Mohsen : ❸ --

Ali : ❹ --.

Mohsen : ❺ --.

Ali : It isn't a good idea to spend too much time watching TV. ---------------------------?

Mohsen : You're right.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

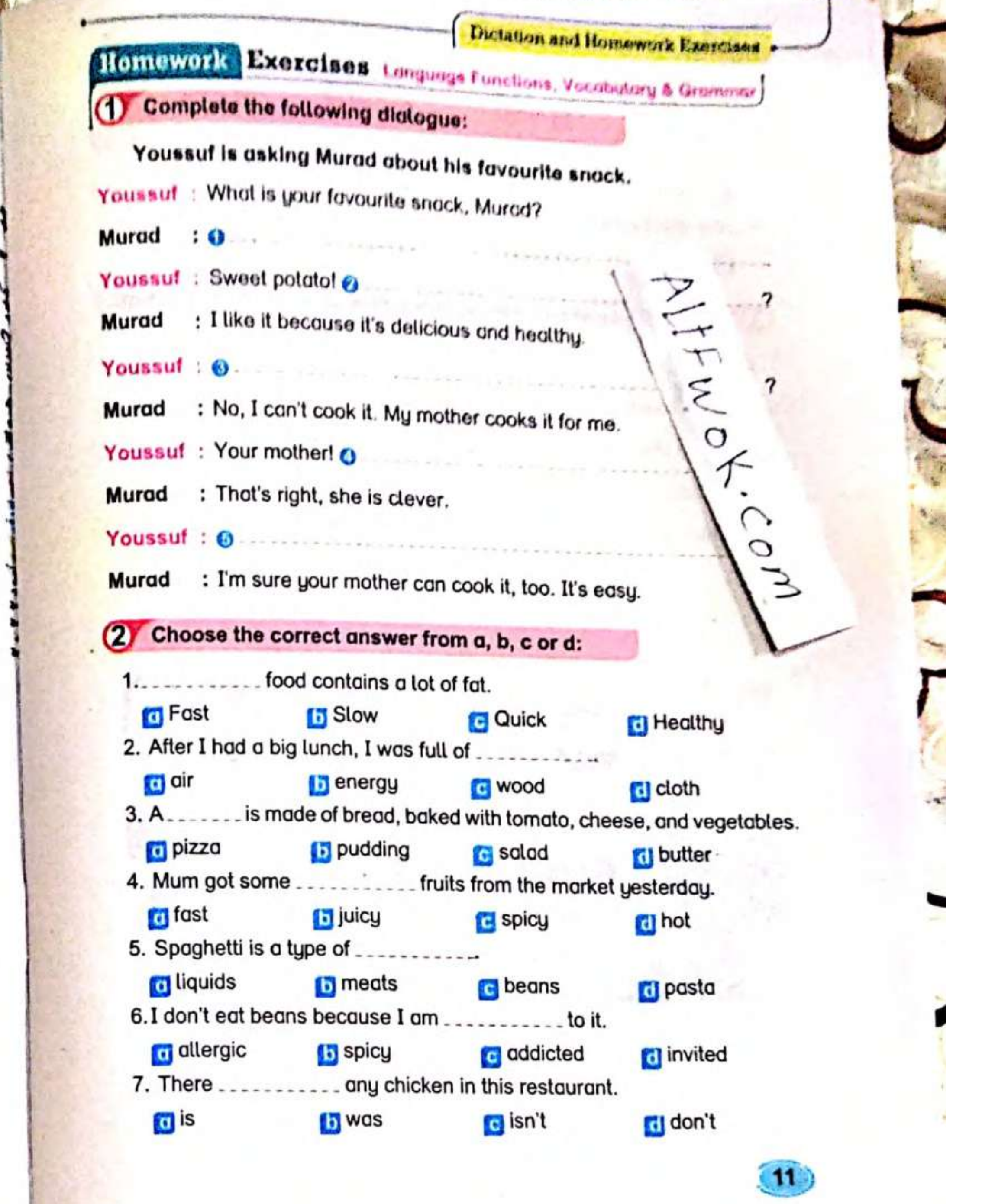
1. Playing ----------- games online really wastes my time.
   a offline b video c audio d screen
2. I went to the market to get some sugar because the sugar we had wasn't --------.
   a little b too c enough d many
3. Yesterday, we heard -------- my uncle who lives in the United States.
   a from b off c at d on
4. I am studying here and you can only play -----------.
   a side b countryside c outside d overseas
5. I always use my mobile to ------- social media and get the latest news.
   a share b choose c hide d check
6. **A:** I am too tired to cook.
   B: Why don't you try ---------- food online?
   a eating b feeding c ordering d making
7. Hussein spent much time ---------- videos online.
   a building b caring c breaking d watching
8. Mum really feels tired, so she should ---------- enough sleep.
   a get b give c take d buy
9. We studied an interesting lesson about the ---------- of the internet.
   a papers b plastics c dangers d glasses
10. The mobile I got is broken. I'd like to ---------- it for a new one.
   a share b change c check d choose



Unit 8 You are what you eat

Lessons 1 & 2

حلو المذاق	رقائق بطاطس مقلية
مكرونة	لذيذ
طاقة	لديه حساسية ل
الوجبات السريعة	وجبة خفيفة
مكسرات	بيتزا
كثير العصارة	توابل - بهارات
السمبوسة	ملح
الفلافل	فول أخضر
ممتلئ (شبعان)	متبل/حار
فريق ألعاب القوى	ملح
شائق - محبوب	عنب
حريص	لحم الدجاج/دجاجة
محظوظ	أرز باللبن
أي...؟/أيهما...؟	دهن
معظم	يصف
بطيخ	نوع
فرن	تدريب
عطشان	زيتون
مراهق	يدعو (المناسبة)
لعبة كرة الشبكة	



Homework Exercises Language Functions, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Youssuf is asking Murad about his favourite snack.

Youssuf : What is your favourite snack, Murad?
Murad : 1 ....
Youssuf : Sweet potato! 2 .... ?
Murad : I like it because it's delicious and healthy.
Youssuf : 3 .... ?
Murad : No, I can't cook it. My mother cooks it for me.
Youssuf : Your mother! 4 ....
Murad : That's right, she is clever.
Youssuf : 5 ....
Murad : I'm sure your mother can cook it, too. It's easy.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... food contains a lot of fat.
   a Fast b Slow c Quick d Healthy
2. After I had a big lunch, I was full of ....
   a air b energy c wood d cloth
3. A .... is made of bread, baked with tomato, cheese, and vegetables.
   a pizza b pudding c salad d butter
4. Mum got some .... fruits from the market yesterday.
   a fast b juicy c spicy d hot
5. Spaghetti is a type of ....
   a liquids b meats c beans d pasta
6. I don't eat beans because I am .... to it.
   a allergic b spicy c addicted d invited
7. There .... any chicken in this restaurant.
   a is b was c isn't d don't

8. Fatma bought .... chocolate from that shop.
   a any   b many   c a lot of   d a few

WB

9. Add .... salt to the chips, but not too much.
   a much   b many   c a few   d a little

10. She didn't cook .... meat last night.
   a any   b some   c many   d a lot

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I saw .... (a little) people at the party yesterday.
2. Could I have .... (any) juice, please?
3. I would like .... (a few) spinach, please.
4. She has .... (a lot) salt in the kitchen.
5. I'd like .... (a little) sandwiches, please.

Lessons (3) & (4)

بروتين	يسمع ....
غير معتاد	يتذوق ....
منتجات الألبان	يلمس ....
طازج	يشم ....
زبد	يرى ....
عظمة	يصب ....
اللسان	يسخن ....
يقدم (طعام/شراب)	يقطع ....
يغلى/يسلق	يقلى ....
يضيف	يخفق/يضرب ....
البشر	يغسل ....
قطعة	فول مدمس ....
ثلاجة	غرفة الطعام ....
مقطع	مريح ....
سمك مجفف	وصفة طهى ....
شوكة	نفس (الشيء) ....
بصل	لين (طرى) ....
مازال	مقلاة (طاسة القلى) ....
سلطانية	فظيع - سئ جدًا ....
	يسمى ....
	حاسة ....

Homework Exercises Language Functions, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Sahar and Hanan are talking about rice pudding.

Sahar : Do you like rice pudding, Hanan?

Hanan : ❶ ....

Sahar : ❷ ....?

Hanan : Yes, I can cook it.

Sahar : ❸ ....?

Hanan : My mother showed me how to cook it.

Sahar : Is it easy?

Hanan : ❹ ....

Sahar : Can you give me the recipe?

Hanan : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. All of us liked eating the pizza. It was ....
   a low b bad c delicious d horrible
2. Milk and butter are dairy ....
   a shops b products c liquids d screens
3. To have strong ...., drink a lot of milk.
   a bones b boats c poems d parks
4. Meat, eggs and beans have .... in them.
   a air b soil c sugar d protein
5. I like to eat three .... eggs every morning.
   a old b fresh c young d dirty
6. It is .... for my kids to play in the street. They always play in the nearby park.
   a usual b local c unusual d famous
7. When the omelette is ready, ... it out of the frying pan.
   a take b not take c takes d taking

8. .... the olives on top of my pizza. I like them so much.
   a Puts b Don't put c Doesn't put d Put
9. .... the vegetables into small pieces.
   a Chop b Doesn't chop c Chopped d Chopping
10. .... the eggs into the frying pan. They aren't ready.
   a Pour b Don't pour c Pours d Pouring

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. .... (Not touch) the hot frying pan.
2. Ali, ... (doing) your homework.
3. .... (Don't wear) gloves when you cook. They are really useful.
4. Don't .... (to be) late again for work.
5. .... (Heats) some water now, Hossam.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Healthy food"

....

Lessons 5, 6 & 7

جائع	نوم
كعكة/تورتة	بطاطا
مدينة طوكيو	نظام غذائي
دولة اليابان	نبات السبانخ
فلفل أصفر	طعام
تمارين	متعب
نادى ألعاب القوى	لسوء الحظ
يضايق/يزعج - متضايق	يعالج
ربما	علاوة على ذلك
كمية/مقدار	ما نوع...؟
الرسم بالرصاص/بالفحم	يملك
موقف	مدرسة لتعليم الرسم
خاتمة	الرسم بالألوان/لوحة فنية
جزيرة	يختتم (كلامه)
يسترخي	بسكويت
طباخ	زيت الزيتون
متوازن	يقدم
يراجع	

موقع التفوق

Dictation and Homework Exercises

Homework Exercises Language Functions & Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue: WB

Leila is talking to her grandma.

Grandma : Would you like some cake, Leila?
Leila : ❶ ....
Grandma : Why do you want a little?
Leila : ❷ ....
Grandma : ❸ ....?
Leila : Thank you, I like tea.
Grandma : ❹ ....?
Leila : Yes, please, but that's enough. I only like a little sugar.
Grandma : Here you are, tea with cake!
Leila : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You should get enough .... That can keep you healthy.
   a job b illness c work d sleep
2. The man was really .... because he had no food for a day.
   a anxious b hungry c happy d cheerful
3. A sweet .... is a vegetable that looks like a potato and has purple, yellow or white flesh and a sweet taste.
   a potato b juice c milk d jam
4. Mum always adds yellow .... to the food she makes.
   a air b peppers c tea d salt
5. The Japanese .... that consists of rice, vegetables and fish is really healthy.
   a work b job c education d diet
6. People usually eat .... between meals.
   a dinner b lunch c snacks d breakfast
7. Omar would like to sleep or rest because he is really ....
   a active b tired c famous d careful
8. We can depend .... Ali. He is such a clever man.
   a on b at c of d at
9. The sailors lived on the .... for a month until another ship arrived.
   a air b liquid c island d desert
10. A: Who is .... salad in the kitchen?
    B: Mum.
    a doing b building c making d cooking

Unit 9 Watch, listen and make

Lessons 1 & 2

رائعا ____	عرض (مسرحي مثلا) ____
وجهة نظر/ رأي ____	رسام/ فنان ____
تصوير فوتوغرافي ____	قرن (١٠٠ عام) ____
الرسم بالقلم ____	رسم كاريكاتيري (ساخر) ____
مفضل ____	صورة فوتوغرافية ____
لوحة فنية (لوجه إنسان) ____	فكرة ____
مجاني ____	الفن ____
أواني فخارية ____	يعتقد ____
يوصي بـ/ يرشح ____	تمثال منحوت/ فن النحت ____

عزف على آلات موسيقية ____

كتابة نص (سيناريو) ____

خياطة أزياء (ملابس) ____

رسم (خلفية لخشبة المسرح) ____

عمل تجميل (مكياج) ____

تمثيل في مسرحية ____

ينحت تماثيل ____

يصنع أواني فُخَّار ____

يلتقط صور ____

يدرس فن الخط ____

Homework Exercises Language Functions, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Menna and Shaza are talking about hobbies.

Menna : What hobby do you do, Shaza?

Shaza : ❶ ....

Menna : ❷ ....?

Shaza : Yes I have a modern camera.

Menna : ❸ ....?

Shaza : My father bought it for my birthday.

Menna : Do you do any other hobbies?

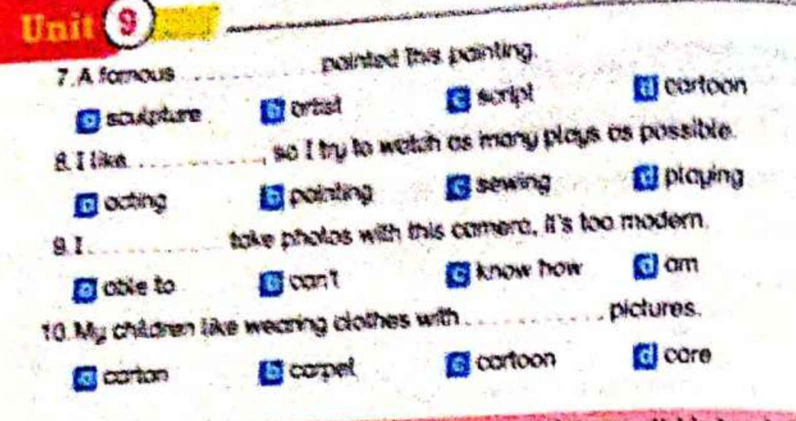
Shaza : ❹ ....

Menna : What is it?

Shaza : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Soha is good at using colours. She .... beautiful portraits.
   a plays b paints c sews d writes
2. My new camera takes wonderful ....
   a photographs b paintings c drawings d sculptures
3. .... this weak man able to work?
   a Can b Are c Does d Is
4. Does your uncle know how .... your car?
   a repairs b to repairing c to repair d repair
5. **A:** I can play the piano.
   B: ....! I can play it, too.
   a Call b Cool c Cold d Coal
6. I .... able to write stories, but I like reading them.
   a can't b don't c am not d am



7. A famous .... painted this painting.
a sculpture b artist c script d cartoon

8. I like ...., so I try to watch as many plays as possible.
a acting b painting c sewing d playing

9. I .... take photos with this camera, it's too modern.
a able to b can't c know how d am

10. My children like wearing clothes with .... pictures.
a carton b carpet c cartoon d care

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Does your mother know how .... (sew) clothes for you?
2. Fish .... (can) live outside water.
3. .... (Are) Samir able to make friends on the internet?
4. Ziad .... (can) swim, but he can fish.
5. Policemen .... (am) able to catch robbers.



Lessons (3) & (4)

جريدة	يمارس ....
يبكي	كفيف (أعمى) ....
منافس / ند	فرقة موسيقية (أوركسترا) ....
رسام	أصم (أطرش) ....
غريب	حديثاً - مؤخراً ....
فخور	معاق ....
صعوبات	شيء ....
إشارة المرور	آلة التشيللو ....
يصيح/يصرخ	يعانق (يحضن) / عناق ....
موسيقار	درجات السلم ....
آلة الكمان	خاص / مميز ....
آلة المزمار	شخصية (فى رواية) ....
آلة البيانو	كرسى متحرك (للمعاقين) ....
آلة الناي	يخفى / يختفى ....
آلة البوق	آلة الجيتار ....
حفل موسيقى	آلة الترمبون ....
كلاسيكى	يتساءل - يتعجب ....
مراسل إذاعى	علاقة ....
يرد	ينضم إلى / يلتحق بـ ....

Homework Exercises — Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. As a great ...., his music is played all over the world.
   a mechanic b engineer c musician d teacher
2. .... people can read with their hands in Braille.
   a Blind b Dumb c Deaf d Strange
3. The mouse was frightened and .... from the cat.
   a covered b hid c cried d hugged
4. The .... is a musical instrument.
   a knife b vase c fork d violin
5. I .... where my father will take us for the holiday.
   a wonder b work c wander d wave
6. My children always .... their mother when they come back from school.
   a harm b hit c hug d hide
7. The little boy fell over and started to ....
   a carry b cry c try d care
8. Deaf people and dumb people are .... people.
   a interested b wondered c printed d disabled
9. The .... played an amazing piece of music.
   a orchestra b character c reporter d actor
10. This man can't hear me, is he ....?
   a blind b dumb c deaf d healthy

2 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

to your friend Sameh telling him about your favourite musician.

- **Your name is Tamer and your email address is tamer11@yahoo.com**
- **Your friend's email address is sameh55@gmail.com**

....

....

....

....

Lessons 5 6 7

دقيقى / واقعى	دعوة (المناسبة) ....
بريطاني	طلب ....
يدعو (المناسبة)	عرض ....
يهرب	أرض العجائب ....
ديناصور	طلاب مدرسة ....
رئيسي	معلومات ....
منظر	حدث هام ....
مقال نقدي	حريق ....
لعبة تنس الطاولة	ناقد ....
يعيد استخدام / يعيد تدوير	تقريبا ....
نجم (سينما) / ممثل مشهور	نجم (فى السماء) ....
يهبط	مثير ....
نزهة فى الهواء الطلق	يموت ....
أحداث (فيلم / رواية)	ممثل ....
متنزه / موقف سيارات	يركن سيارة ....
مخيف	فظيع / سيئ جدًا ....
فيلم / قصة مغامرات	وجهة نظر / رأي ....
....	
متنزه ترفيهى (مدينة ملاهى)	العالم الجوارسى (زمن وجود الديناصورات) ....

Homework Exercises Language Functions & Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Emad is asking Tamer about music.

Emad : Hello, Tamer. I want to ask you about music.
Tamer : 1 ....
Emad : 2 .... ?
Tamer : Yes, I can play the guitar.
Emad : 3 .... ?
Tamer : I think the piano is a wonderful instrument.
Emad : 4 ....
Tamer : I'd love to come to your birthday party.
Emad : Could you bring your guitar with you?
Tamer : 5 ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The policeman caught the robber when he was trying to ....
   a invite b hug c wonder d escape
2. This star is famous for acting .... films.
   a action b event c park d gold
3. Two million visitors visit this .... park every year.
   a thin b theme c machine d review
4. A reviewer wrote a good .... of this writer's last book.
   a offer b picnic c dream d review
5. You can't .... your car in a "No Parking" area.
   a escape b hide c park d land
6. Look! There are so many bright .... in the sky.
   a stars b suns c stops d seats
7. Who should we .... to the party?
   a invent b invite c discover d review
8. There is a wonderful .... film on TV tonight. I recommend it.
   a patient b invitation c metal d adventure
9. .... lived on Earth but died out millions of years ago.
   a Crocodiles b Dinosaurs c Whales d Elephants
10. This company .... different types of films every year.
   a does b comes c makes d sees

Unit 10 We are what we wear

Lessons 1 & 2

شقة	فضفاض / واسع ....
مشابه / متشابه	مريح / مستريح ....
شال / وشاح	جميل ....
جيبة	القطن ....
قميص	بلوفر ....
لطيف	بسيط ....
حذاء	أنيق ....
ملاءة	الصوف ....
الزجاج	حقيبة يد (حريمي) ....
الكتان	غير رسمي ....
مقلم / مخطط	غالي الثمن ....
حذاء برقبة	ثقيل ....
الجلد المدبوغ	عقد ....
الذهب	مادة خام ....
قرط (حلق)	غريب ....
غطاء للرأس (حجاب)	مجوهرات ....
حذاء رياضي	جلباب ....
نظارة شمس	مناخ ....
البلاستيك	تقليدي ....
صندل	رخيص ....
حزام	المعدن ....
شعبي / محبوب	زاهي الألوان / ذو ملابس زاهية
غير مريح	....
	غريب ....
	مجوهرات ....

Homework Exercises Language Functions, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hussein is asking Ayman about his new T-shirt.

Hussein : Hello, Ayman! Your T-shirt is very smart.

Ayman : ❶ ....

Hussein : ❷ ....?

Ayman : I bought it yesterday.

Hussein : ❸ ....?

Ayman : It is made of cotton. Do you want to buy one?

Hussein : ❹ ....

Ayman : No problem. There are many colours of it.

Hussein : Great! Where is the shop?

Ayman : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB

1. It's a/an .... necklace.
   a short, old, gold b old, short, gold
   c gold, old, short d short, gold, old
2. The film star is wearing huge round ....
   a cameras b shirts c sunglasses d galabeyas
3. I couldn't sleep last night because the bed was ....
   a smart b pretty c comfortable d uncomfortable
4. There was a cheerful, ... picture on the wall.
   a careful b colourful c comfortable d useless

5. They are .... shoes.

SB

   a strange, big, leather b leather, big, strange
   c big, leather, strange d big, strange, leather
6. The queen is wearing an expensive gold .... around her neck.
   a scarf b earrings c sandals d necklace
7. Amany's handbag is full of many things. It is so ....
   a heavy b casual c relaxed d warm
8. Hany usually wears shirts .... with thick lines.
   a wooden b striped c electric d interested
9. Mona usually wears .... casual clothes.
   a lazy b deep c smart d careless
10. These are the .... boots in the shop.
   a smartest b smart c more smart d smarter

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Which skirt is .... (small); the red one or the green one?
2. Fady borrowed my .... (black, new, linen) trousers.
3. I think my earrings are .... (heaviest) than yours, Huda.
4. Why don't you buy this .... (cotton, red, big) scarf, Nada? It's beautiful.
5. I spent a .... (nicer) weekend in Alexandria.

Lessons 3 & 4

يتسوق	محل ملابس
الطبيعة	مادة كيميائية
التلوث	يستعير/يستلف
زى مدرسى موحد	نبات الخيزران (البامبو)
محصول	جهاز
يمتلك	فرد فى العائلة
يغير/يتغير	يوم دراسى
صناعة	شئ فخم/فاخر
يقطف (نبات)/يلتقط	هواية
يسبب	مقاس/حجم
تربة زراعية	أقارب
حديث	مصنع
سلة	مثالى (فى احسن حال)
مناسبة خاصة	مشهور
يفضل	ناعم/لين
البيئة	يحمى
حفل زفاف	مستقبل أكثر حماية للبيئة

Homework Exercises Language Functions, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Khaled and Nasser are talking about their clothes.

Khaled : Hello, Nasser. What do you think of my new shoes?

Nasser : ❶ ....

Khaled : ❷ ....?

Nasser : I have three pairs of shoes. Do you have boots?

Khaled : ❸ ....

Nasser : ❹ ....?

Khaled : Yes, I want to buy two new shirts.

Nasser : ❺ ....

Khaled : OK. Let's go shopping tomorrow.

Nasser : That's a good idea.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Cotton clothes are comfortable because they are ....
   a hard b rough c expensive d soft
2. This rich family lives in a .... big house.
   a nature b luxury c member d industry
3. Plastic bottles are lighter than glass ....
   a one b once c none d ones
4. I like taking selfies with.......... people.
   a famous b soft c polluted d rough
5. .... boys over there are my brother and my cousin.
   a This b These c Those d That
6. The farmer .... the crop and put it in large bags to sell it in the market.
   a picked b changed c borrowed d threw

7. Samar returned the book to the library and borrowed another ....

a once b one c ones d only

8. This player is wearing an expensive .... of trainers.

a bear b ball c bar d pair

9. Can you get .... book on that high shelf, I can't reach it.

a that b these c this d those

10. We can wear each other's clothes because we are the same ....

a price b size c colour d occasion

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Take .... (these) juice, it's yours.
2. This camera doesn't work. I want another .... (ones), please.
3. Where did you buy .... (that) shoes? They look wonderful.
4. I chose these earrings from so many different .... (one).
5. I'll pick .... (these) dates over there soon.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Something you have bought from a clothes shop". WB

Lessons 5, 6 & 7

سعر ______	بائع في محل ______
زي ______	خزانة ذات أدراج ______
مفيد ______	زائد/إضافي ______
عبر الانترنت ______	يقيس ملابس ______
أداة (يدوية) ______	سماعات الرأس ______
زبون ______	مهتم ______
يتأكد من/يتفحص ______	ممل ______
يساعد ______	ما لون..؟ ______
جاكيت ______	بشكل متقن ______
يناقش ______	الجد الأكبر ______
يرسل رسالة بريد الكتروني ______	يناسب/يلائم ______
صناعة القطن ______	إعلان ______
حفلة عيد ميلاد ______	هدية ______
فاترينة عرض فى محل ______	جورب (شراب) ______
مناسبة خاصة ______	يتضمن/يشتمل على ______
	حجرة تغيير الملابس ______

Homework Exercises Language Functions & Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mrs Wafaa is at a clothes shop.

Assistant : Can I help you?
Mrs Wafaa : Yes, please. ❶ ....
Assistant : ❷ ....?
Mrs Wafaa : 48, please.
Assistant : ❸ ....?
Mrs Wafaa : Black, please.
Assistant : Here's a nice one. ❹ ....
Mrs Wafaa : Where's the changing room, please?
Assistant : It's over there.
Mrs Wafaa : It fits me perfectly. ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I keep my clothes in that .... of drawers.
   a sheet b chest c check d shop
2. I .... many dresses on at the shop to choose one.
   a tried b trained c fitted d discussed
3. A: What .... would you like the T-shirt? B: Green, please.
   a size b weight c colour d price
4. .... shop did you buy these trousers at?
   a Where b Which c When d Who
5. I want to buy a new jacket .... your new one.
   a as b such c like d that
6. That shop gives its .... presents for free.
   a customers b drawers c concerts d clothes
7. If these sandals don't .... you, you can choose another pair.
   a hurt b fit c hit d beat
8. Look at this .... It shows a good handbag for sale.
   a advert b tool c party d room
9. Customers can try clothes on in that .... room.
   a charging b changing c managing d finishing
10. Carpenters always use ....
   a pens b knives c tools d brushes

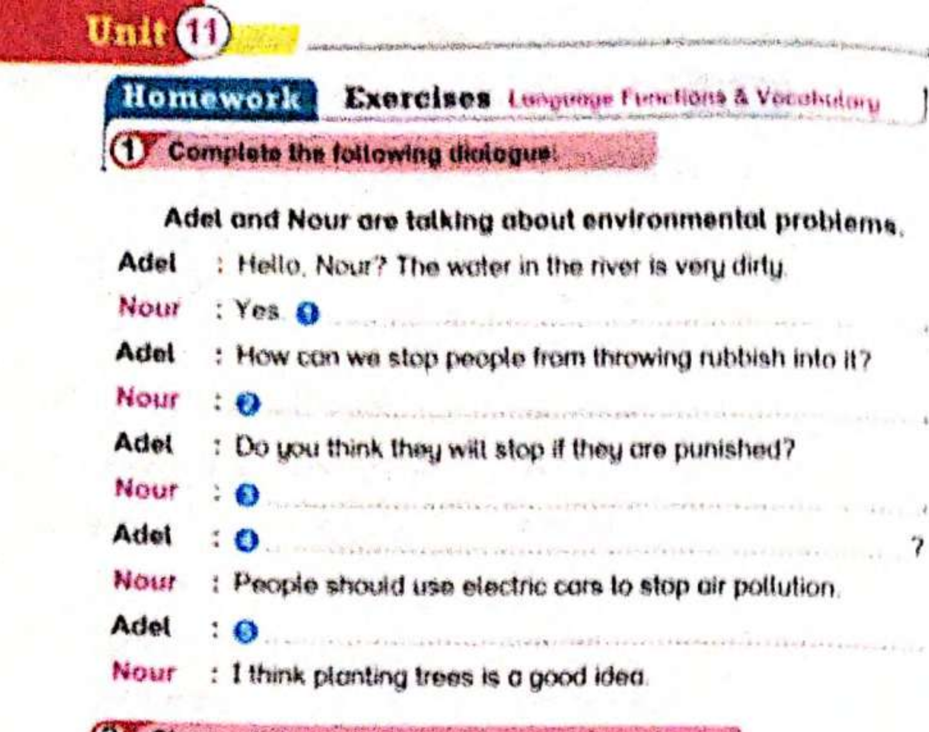
Unit 11 The future of our planet

Lessons 1 & 2

ينقذ / يوفر ....
يعيد استخدام ....
يقلل ....
يعيد تدوير (تصنيع) ....
يركب / يثبت جهاز أو تطبيق ....
ينتج ....
يبث ....
تقليدي ....
يذوب / ينصهر ....
معلق التلفاز ....
يلتقط ....
موسيقى ....
سكان محتملون ....
طبيعي ....
البيئة ....
تقليد ....
الصيغة ....
معدات ....
ألواح الطاقة الشمسية ....

أشجار ....
زجاجات بلاستيكية ....
سطح المنزل ....
هواتف محمولة ....
قمامة ....
الحياة البرية ....
المركبات في حركة المرور/ المرور ....
تلوث الهواء ....
حديقة فوق السطح ....
منشور على الانترنت ....
عاصفة ....
جفاف ....
ممر ....
كوكب ....
سباق ....
منبه ....
وقت الغداء ....
نصلح ....
توربينات الرياح ....

Homework Exercises Language Functions & Vocabulary



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Adel and Nour are talking about environmental problems.

Adel : Hello, Nour? The water in the river is very dirty.

Nour : Yes. ❶ ....

Adel : How can we stop people from throwing rubbish into it?

Nour : ❷ ....

Adel : Do you think they will stop if they are punished?

Nour : ❸ ....

Adel : ❹ ....?

Nour : People should use electric cars to stop air pollution.

Adel : ❺ ....

Nour : I think planting trees is a good idea.

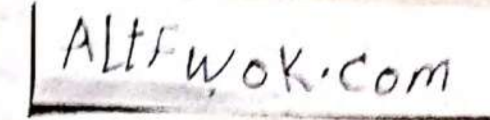
2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Stopping smoking can .... your risk of having lung diseases.
   a reduce b recycle c gain d repair
2. Salma uses her .... to text her friends and to send emails.
   a smoking b mobile phone c music d environment
3. Cars in the desert can cause .... problems. WB
   a environmental b environment c music d musical
4. I'm going to .... my maths lesson. SB
   a doing b do c did d done
5. Recycle your glass, paper, metal, and plastic products to reduce pollution and save ....
   a problems b wildlife c sports d music

6. The teacher is going to .... angry when he knows about the result.
   a be b is c does d has SB
7. Lamia's family are learning to speak Japanese. They .... to Japan next month. WB
   a are travelling b are going to travel c travelled d travel
8. We called someone to .... our TV. There is a problem with the sound system.
   a give b make c do d repair
9. When we .... materials, we can help the environment, earn money and find jobs for many people.
   a reread b repaint c reprint d recycle

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. Mr Muhammad .... (ask) you a few questions when he arrives.
2. Let's run because the bus .... (leave) in ten minutes. WB
3. A: Why do you want to sell your flat?
   B: Because I .... (move) to the countryside.
4. They .... (come) for a meal tomorrow.
5. I .... (play) football tonight with my friends.



Lessons 3 & 4

اختراع	غابة استوائية
مناسب	طاقة الرياح
شجرة المانجروف	يروي
يتحكم في	محيط
حماية	موقع
طائرة بدون طيار	مواد كيميائية
يقرض/يسلف	بكتيريا
نظام	الشعاب المرجانية
متطوع	رحلات الغطس
يحل	أراضي زراعية
تطبيق ذكي	كائنات بحرية
قبعة للوقاية من الشمس	منتصف النهار
يفلتر/يصفي	استمارة
فصل من فصول السنة	مياه جوفية
بوابة	قناة مائية
بذور	شاشة
غابة	يشارك
حقيبة سفر	يلقي/يُسقط
صديق للبيئة	جهاز تحكم عن بعد

Homework Exercises Language Functions & Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Magy and Leila are talking about future arrangements.

Magy : Hi Leila.

Leila : Hi Magy. ❶ ....?

Magy : Tomorrow, I'm going on a boat trip with my family.

❷ ....?

Leila : I'm going to visit some relatives with my family.

Magy : Are you travelling to visit them?

Leila : ❸ ....

Magy : What arrangements have you made?

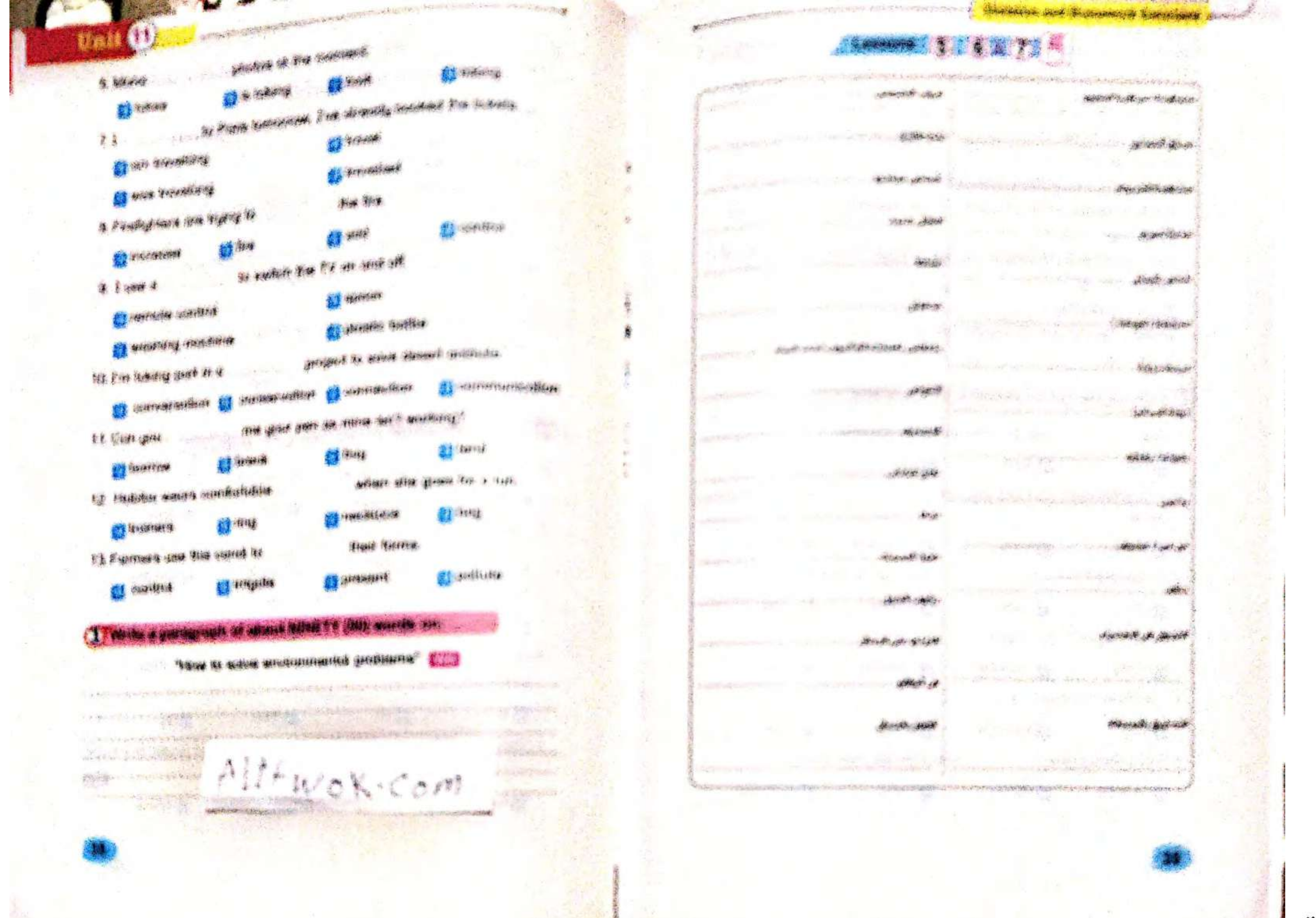
Leila : ❹ ....

Magy : I hope you will enjoy your time there.

Leila : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is difficult about Japanese is the writing ....
   a sound b system c stars d store
2. These toys are .... for girls.
   a suitcase b suit c sweet d suitable
3. You must wear gloves before using these ....
   a chemicals b sports c news d ideas
4. My friends and I are going .... a trip to Al Azhar Park tomorrow.
   a in b on c from d by
5. They are .... part in a nature conservation project in a forest. SB
   a take b took c takes d taking


Alltwok.com

Homework Exercises Language Functions & Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Omar is talking to Tarek about going to the desert.

Omar : Hi, Tarek. What about going to the desert tomorrow?

Tarek : ❶ ....?

Omar : We can do many activities.

Tarek : What activities can we do in the desert?

Omar : ❷ ....

Tarek : But rock climbing is very dangerous.

Omar : No. ❸ ....

Tarek : Really! ❹ ....?

Omar : We can also go sandboarding.

Tarek : ❺ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We .... a picnic in the park last weekend.
   a did b gave c were d had
2. During the week, my sister and I take .... to set the table before meals.
   a trains b turns c directions d trainers
3. I'm looking forward to .... the Egyptian Museum.
   a visit b visited c visiting d visits
4. Maged wants to try bungee ....
   a riding b jumping c climbing d fishing
5. I don't like this black cat. It is ....
   a nice b beautiful c scary d lovely
6. Ramy always goes .... and catches a lot of fish.
   a jumping b fishing c riding d climbing



7. We went diving in the coral .... in the Red Sea.
   a roofs b reefs c beef d leaf
8. I went to the .... as I had a bad toothache.
   a artist b scientist c pianist d dentist
9. When you see the .... it starts to be dark.
   a sunrise b morning c sunset d midday

3 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"A school trip"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Unit 12 Languages and learning

Lessons 1 & 2

عمل الأشياء	لغة ....
مشاكل بيئية	قائمة طعام ....
أثناء	اختبار القيادة ....
القراءة	يلخص ....
الاستماع	يتبع ....
يُصلح	رسم توضيحي / رسم بياني ....
يفشل / يرسب	ينجز / يحقق ....
ينجح / يجتاز	تجربة عملية ....
يقرر	معمل تحاليل ....
متعلم (في مرحلة التعلم)	غير منتظم ....
غالبًا / في الأغلب	يمثل ....
يسجل ملاحظات	يناقش ....
مُحبط	عرض تليفزيوني ....
ممتع	علوم ....
مادة دراسية	المجالات ....
ممل	قاموس ....
فصل دراسي	نتيجة ....
نشرة صوتية	مدير ....
الكتابة	علامة ....
رؤية الأشياء	....

Homework Exercises — Language Functions & Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Magdy is talking about his favourite subjects.

Hazem : What is your favourite subjects, Magdy?

Magdy : ❶ ....

Hazem : Why do you like history?

Magdy : ❷ ....

Hazem : ❸ ....?

Magdy : Because it helps me talk to tourists when I go to the Pyramids.

Hazem : Why do you like maths?

Magdy : ❹ ....

Hazem : ❺ ....?

Magdy : No, I don't like science.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He was .... an interesting story.
   - a speaking b listening c cooking d reading
2. When Tamer failed the exam, his parents were ....
   - a disappointed b interested c delighted d excited
3. The dessert .... consists of cake and chocolate.
   - a slowly b sadly c mostly d quietly
4. Leila is a quick .... Her English is getting better all the time.
   - a learn b learns c learning d learner
5. A: Did you .... all your exams?
   B: Yes, this made me happy.
   - a fail b pass c succeed d fall
6. A: What .... these days?
   B: An adventure story.
   - a you are reading b are you reading
   - c you read d did you read

7. How much will it cost to .... the TV?

a destroy   b repeat   c repair   d reread

8. I think it .... hard to pass this difficult exam.

a is going to be   b will be   c is being   d has been

9. The teacher .... the lesson to the class clearly.

a trained   b gained   c decided   d explained

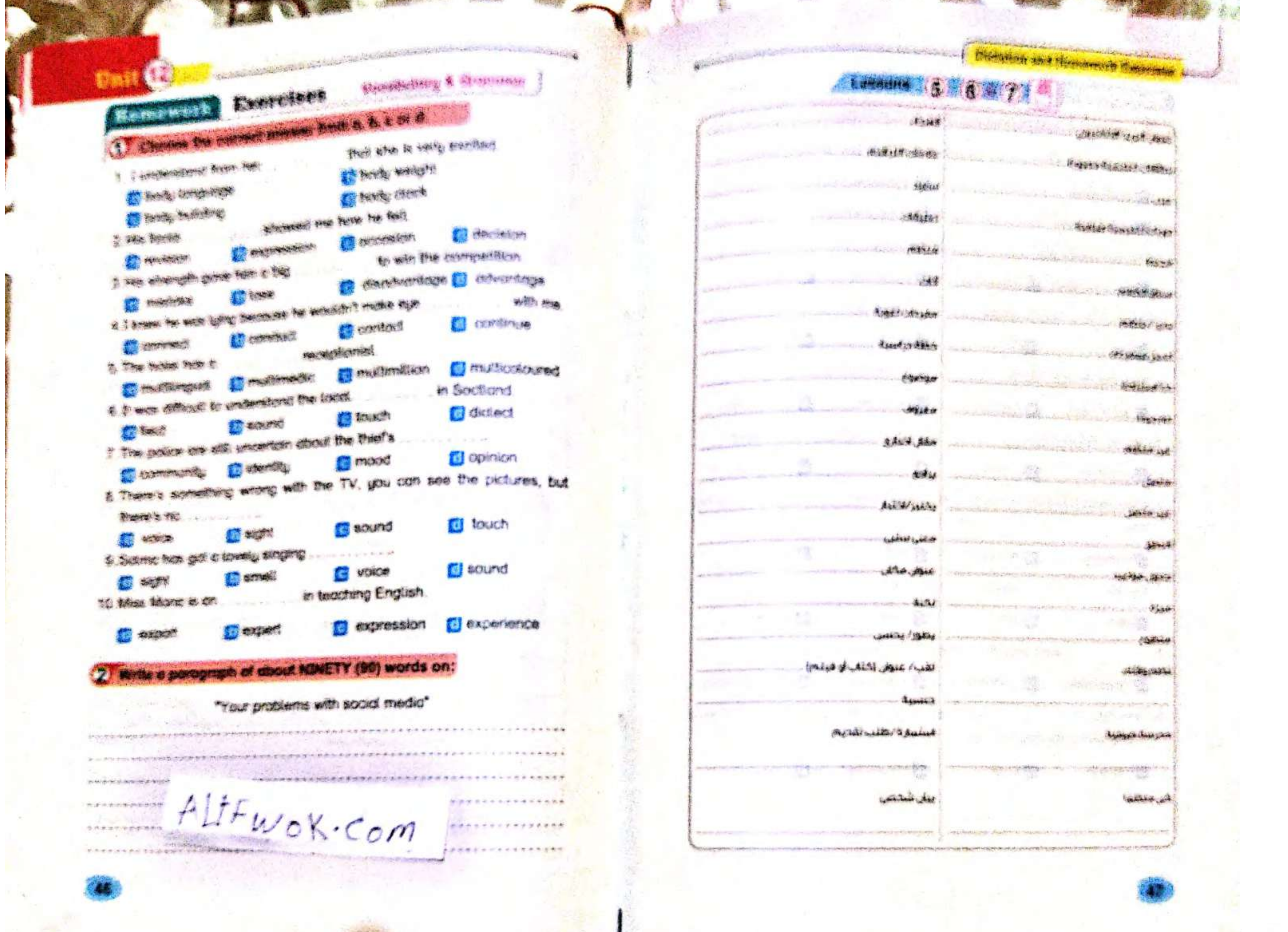
3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Look outside! It .... (rain) at the moment.
2. Mona usually .... (walk) to school, but today she came by bus.
3. In the future, I think we .... (have) more lessons online.
4. Osama is running fast. He .... (fall).



Lessons 3 & 4

خائف / مرعوب	وطن ....
جميل / فاتن	ينتظر ....
ملعب / حقل	التحدث ....
جنوب غرب	مجتمع ....
صوت (شئ)	أوروبى ....
متعدد اللغات	يعتقد/يصدق ....
لغة الجسد	يقلد / ينسخ ....
خبير	اتصال / تواصل ....
قومى/محلى	استاذ جامعى ....
لهجة	يتواصل ....
ميزة	اختلاف ....
هوية	يفتقد / يفوته ....
يصل / يربط	براق / ذكى ....
اللمس / يلمس	حاد/خطير ....
تواصل بصرى (بالنظر)	منطوقة/مُتحدث بها (لغة) ....
تعبيرات الوجه	أفريقى ....
صوت (بشرى)	بشكل طبيعى ....
عالمى / دولى	الباب الأمامى ....
	صوت رقيق ....



Unit 12

Homework **Exercises** Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I understood from her .... that she is very excited.
   a) body language b) body weight c) body clock d) body building
2. His facial .... showed me how he felt.
   a) revision b) expression c) occasion d) decision
3. His strength gave him a big .... to win the competition.
   a) mistake b) loss c) disadvantage d) advantage
4. I knew he was lying because he wouldn't make eye .... with me.
   a) connect b) contact c) contact d) continue
5. The hotel has a .... receptionist.
   a) multilingual b) multimedia c) multimillion d) multicoloured
6. It was difficult to understand the local .... in Scotland.
   a) fact b) sound c) touch d) dialect
7. The police are still uncertain about the thief's ....
   a) community b) identity c) mood d) opinion
8. There's something wrong with the TV, you can see the pictures, but there's no ....
   a) voice b) sight c) sound d) touch
9. Salma has got a lovely singing ....
   a) sight b) smell c) voice d) sound
10. Miss Mona is an .... in teaching English.
    a) export b) expert c) expression d) experience

2 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Your problems with social media"

AltFwoK.com

Homework **Exercises** Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A plan is a set of .... ideas that help you reach a goal.
   a organised   b disconnected
   c disorganised   d disappointed
2. The two towns are .... by a railway.
   a disorganised   b connected   c contacted   d called
3. Do you find it hard to study .... exams?
   a from   b for   c of   d above
4. The oragnisation wants .... to teach blind girls.
   a volunteers   b opposites   c accents   d flashcards
5. Our country always .... its relations with other countries.
   a smokes   b proves   c improves   d teaches
6. A successful person is the one who knows how to .... his/her time.
   a manage   b damage   c test   d waste
7. Try to .... breaks not to be tired.
   a give   b make   c take   d come
8. .... work usually doesn't lead to success.
   a Organised   b Connected   c Developed   d Disorganised
9. Don't try to .... too many words at the same time: find how many words are best for you.
   a remind   b forget   c remember   d lose